

GAGE & CO'S
EDUCATIONAL SERIES.

✱
CÆSAR
BELLUM GALLICUM
BOOKS V. AND VI.

ROBERTSON



LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO




Lucas, Peter 513
532 1/2

LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO

Lillian G. Baker
Form 5A

22 24 30 47



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

(From a Bust in the Paris Louvre.)

The W. J. Gage Co.'s High School Classics.

CÆSAR, DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOKS V. AND VI.

WITH

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS, APPENDICES
WITH HINTS AND EXERCISES ON TRANSLATION AT SIGHT
AND ON RE-TRANSLATION INTO LATIN, AND A
COMPLETE VOCABULARY TO CÆSAR.

BY

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Principal, Toronto Junction High School.

TORONTO :

THE W. J. GAGE CO'Y (LTD.)

1894

Entered according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the office of the
Minister of Agriculture, by THE W. J. GAGE COMPANY (LTD.), in the
year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-four.



PREFACE.

THIS present edition follows in the main the lines of the edition of Books III. and IV. To quote from the preface to that book :

“In the editor's opinion, the first aim of a teacher of Latin is to enable the student to *read* Latin with accuracy, appreciation and speed, as the only means of reaching the higher ideals of classical study. In this edition therefore the constant aim has been to further the intelligent translation of the text into idiomatic English, and to build up a sound knowledge of Latin as a language to be read.

“In the annotations of the earlier chapters, the editor has recognized the fact that the student of Latin meets his greatest difficulties when he comes for the first time to read a Latin author. In later chapters the amount of help given is gradually reduced. While unnecessary help has been avoided, no difficulty has been left without an explanation as simple as could be framed ; and in estimating difficulties the standpoint of the young student, not of the advanced scholar, has been taken.”

It will be observed that, even where the notes are fullest, the student is left to do the real work of translation himself. To render passage after passage for the student is by no means a real help or a kindness to him. As one means of setting him in the way of getting the translation for himself, frequent

reference is made to the 'hints and suggestions for the translation of Caesar's Latin.' To these have been added in this edition suggestions for retranslation of English into Caesarean Latin, that will be found, perhaps, still more useful.

Other new features are an adaption of the first chapter, rewritten in simpler and shorter sentences, to make the introduction to Caesar's connected prose more gradual for those who have as yet had to do only with detached sentences; a list of the words most commonly used by Caesar; a running analysis of the story in the notes; and an entirely new, and it is believed, full and accurate vocabulary to the whole of Caesar's *Bellum Gallicum*.

The notes of a more advanced character added to each chapter have been continued, at much cost of time and labor, in the belief that the close study, by teachers or advanced pupils, of the Latinity of even a portion of a single author is a great help to the ready and full appreciation of the meaning and style of all other Latin authors.

TORONTO, April 12, 1894.



Caesars Feldzüge

	J.Roms	Chr
I	696	58
II	697	57
III	698	56
IV	699	55
V	700	54
VI	701	53
VII	702	52
VIII	703	51





INTRODUCTION.

- § I. LIFE OF CÆSAR.
 - § II. GAUL AND THE GAULS.
 - § III. CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.
 - § IV. THE COMMENTARIES OF CÆSAR.
 - § V. THE ARMY AND METHODS OF WARFARE.
-

I.—LIFE OF CÆSAR.

AT the time of Cæsar's birth Rome had become mistress of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean, so that foreign wars of conquest had virtually ceased, and during his boyhood commenced that struggle for supremacy in the State called the civil wars. This was at first a contest between the aristocratic and the popular party, but, as time went on, it became practically a struggle between individuals for personal supremacy.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born in 100 B.C. (or, as the historian

Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest of the patrician or aristocratic families of Rome. The family was, however, closely connected by marriage with the great popular leader Marius, and Cæsar himself in 83 married the daughter of Cinna, Marius' leading supporter. His sympathies were thus from the first with the popular party, and on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82, he barely escaped with his life.

For several years after this Cæsar served in the Roman army in Asia Minor, returning to Rome after Sulla's death in 78. At first he devoted himself to public oratory in the law courts, and in 76 went to Rhodes to study rhetoric under the famous teacher Molo. For several years after his return to Rome in 74 he busied himself in strengthening his position with his party, and soon came to be looked on as one of its leaders. The senatorial party was at this time supreme, and Cæsar had to win his way to power gradually. He went through the various grades of office by which Roman citizens rose to the rank of Consul, being in succession Quaestor, Curule Aedile, and Praetor. In 63 he was elected Pontifex Maximus, becoming technically the head of the Roman religion. This success over the aristocratic party showed clearly that its power was waning, and that Cæsar was now one of the leaders of the Roman state.

In 61, immediately after his Praetorship, he went to Spain as Propraetor or Military Governor. Here, in his first command, he at once showed his ability as a general, in quelling the rebellious native tribes. His manner of living at Rome (for he was not only one of the ablest but one of the most dissolute of men during the earlier period of his manhood), and the means by which he had obtained office and ingratiated himself with the people, had plunged him heavily into debt. But the Governor of a Roman province had plenty of opportunities for enriching himself at the expense of the provincials, and one year in Spain freed him from all his debts, as well as making him known as a brilliant commander.

In 60 he returned to the city and was elected Consul for 59, with a colleague of the aristocratic party, who was, however, too weak and insignificant to be able to thwart his measures.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles; Cæsar, the leader of the popular party; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. Cæsar persuaded the other two to form a coalition with him, and thus get the practical supremacy of the state in their own hands. In the end this bargain proved to be entirely to Cæsar's advantage, as it prevented any active opposition to him during the next few years while he was absent from Rome securing for himself experience, prestige, and a veteran army to assist him when the final struggle for supremacy came. For one of the results of the coalition was that Cæsar was appointed for five years (58 to 54) governor of Illyricum and the two Gauls, Cisalpine and Transalpine, (the former being the northern part of Italy above the peninsula proper, and the latter the southern part of France). In 55 this command was extended for another period of five years, by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who were consuls that year.

For eight years (58 to 51) he was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. At the end of that time the whole of Gaul, from the Rhine to the Pyrenees, had been subjugated and made part of the Roman empire, and Cæsar had an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman state had never before witnessed. Crassus had fallen in battle in the far East, and Cæsar and Pompey remained to compete for absolute supremacy in Rome, Pompey having the somewhat lukewarm support of the Senate and the aristocratical party.

Civil war soon arose from the jealousy between these two rivals, and in 49 Cæsar advanced with his legions into Italy. Pompey was not ready to oppose him, and crossed to Greece where the Senatorial party gathered its forces. Meanwhile Cæsar hastened to Spain, where Pompey had strong supporters,

and quickly reduced them to submission. Returning to Rome he was made Consul for 48 and then crossed over to Greece. After a short summer campaign Pompey was decisively defeated at Pharsalia, and fleeing to Egypt was assassinated there.

After short campaigns in Syria and Asia Minor (47) and Africa (46), in which all remaining opposition was crushed, Cæsar returned to Rome and occupied himself in securing his power and settling affairs of state, surprising many by the clemency he showed to those who had lately opposed him.

Pompey's sons meanwhile had raised a revolt in Spain, but this was speedily crushed in the spring of 45.

Cæsar was now practically (though not nominally) supreme ruler of the Roman world, and it seemed as though under the absolute rule of so brilliant an administrator there would now be lasting peace and prosperity. But a conspiracy to assassinate him was formed by a number of eminent Romans, actuated some by jealousy, others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom, and in 44 B.C., on the 15th (the Ides) of March, he fell, pierced with the daggers of his murderers, at the base of Pompey's statue.

The result was that the struggle for supremacy was soon renewed, and terminated only when, fourteen years later, Cæsar's nephew (Octavianus, or Augustus) became sole ruler of the Roman world and established the empire of the Cæsars.

"In person, Cæsar was tall and slenderly built, his face rather long and thin, his eyes black, vivacious, and keen, his nose prominent, of the Roman type, his head somewhat bald in later life."—*Allen and Greenough*.

"His powers and genius were simply astonishing, a brilliant leader, a skilful engineer, a profound jurist, a scientific astronomer, an eloquent orator and accomplished poet—there was no region, practical or theoretical, in which he did not travel with the greatest success."—*Walpole*.

II.—GAUL AND THE GAULS.

LONG before Cæsar's time the Gauls had come into collision with the Romans. Before Rome's power extended over more than the immediate neighborhood of the city, large numbers of Gauls had crossed the Alps and occupied the whole of the northern portion of Italy. By the beginning of the fourth century B.C. they had made their way down into Central Italy, and in 390 laid Rome in ashes. For more than a century Rome was almost constantly engaged in wars with the neighboring tribes and states of Italy, and in many of these wars the Gauls of Central and Northern Italy, either alone or in alliance with the Etruscans and Samnites, were opposed to Rome. In 283 a crushing defeat was inflicted on the Gauls, and until 225 there was no more trouble with them. By that time Rome had gained secure possession of the whole peninsula. By the end of 224 she had conquered the country of the Gauls south of the river Po, and in two years more had extended her power to the Alps. The district extending from the Alps to the peninsula was formed into a province called Gallia Citerior, or Cisalpina, being politically quite distinct from the peninsula, Italy proper.

The first steps towards the conquest of Transalpine Gaul were taken in 154, when a Roman army crossed the Alps to repel an attack by the Gauls on two coast-settlements subject to Massilia (Marseilles), a city which had been founded near the mouth of the Rhone by Greek traders, and which had formed an alliance with Rome. In 125 these attacks were again renewed, and again the Romans interfered, and after several years fighting, in which the Romans defeated the leading tribes of the southern part of Gaul, they became masters of the whole territory extending from the eastern end of the Pyrenees to the Alps, with the exception of Massilia, which still remained independent but in alliance with the Romans. Colonies were planted and the district organized into a pro-

vince,—the 'Provincia' of Cæsar—called Gallia Transalpina, or at a later period Gallia Narbonensis.

Until Cæsar's time no further extension of territory was made by the Romans. The rest of Gaul was inhabited by a large number of independent tribes of similar origin and language, with the exception of the south-western part inhabited by the Aquitani, who were of a different race and akin to the Spaniards, and the north-eastern portion belonging to the Belgæ, who were largely of German extraction.

In 113 an invading host of Cimbri entered Gaul from the east. These fierce warriors swept everything before them in Gaul, and in 109 came in collision with the Romans, completely defeating their forces under the Consul Silanus. A portion of the Helvetians, called the Tigurini, pressed southward to join the invasion, and in 107 defeated the Consul Lucius Cassius, and in 105 a third defeat was sustained by the Consul Mallius. There was great alarm in Rome, for the barbarian hordes were threatening Italy, and another host, of Teutoni, had also appeared on the scene. These latter were, however, defeated in 102 by Marius in the province, and the next year the Cimbri, who had crossed the Alps into Cisalpine Gaul, were completely routed by Catulus.

This invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri and Teutoni seems to have paved the way for Cæsar's conquest, by weakening the tribes and breaking up the strong confederacies that had existed.

For some years the only disturbance that arose in Gaul was the revolt, quickly suppressed, of the Allobroges, a tribe in the north of the province. This was in 61, and about that time there came other disquieting news.

The independent tribes of Gauls, lying to the north of the province, were divided into two leagues, headed, the one by the Ædui, the other by the Arverni and Sequani. The former were in alliance with Rome, and to offset this the Arverni and Sequani had a few years before invoked the aid of some of the German tribes living just across the Rhine. These were only too ready

to get a footing in Gaul, and soon the Sequani found that their new allies were fast becoming their masters. Further, in 60 the Helvetii, living in what is now known as Switzerland, began to prepare for a wholesale emigration into the more pleasant country of south-western Gaul.

The Romans' experience of the Gauls in Italy, and the more recent terror caused by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni made them feel alarm at these extensive and threatening movements of population. The Helvetians' route would lie close to the province, and it was hazardous to allow the Germans to become firmly established in Gaul. The Romans did not at once, however, respond to the Ædui's request for aid, but seem to have preferred to keep on good terms with Ariovistus, the German leader, till the moment for action came.

Matters were in this position when Cæsar in 58 assumed the governorship of the three Roman provinces, Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina (or *Provincia* as he generally calls it), and Illyricum.

Of these he depended mainly on the first for troops and supplies. It was practically part of Italy, as populous and nearly as wealthy and prosperous as the peninsula to the south. Gallia Transalpina had not yet been so thoroughly assimilated, and, with the exception of the neighborhood of the colonies and trading cities on the coasts, doubtless differed little from "Free Gaul" to the north and west.

"The Gauls were an intellectual and prosperous people, far more civilized than either Germans or Britons. The country, though extensively covered with forests, especially towards the north, was well provided with roads and bridges. The entire population has been reckoned at about seven millions. The people of the Gallie race were tall, fair-complexioned, of restless sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting, but skilled in many arts. . . . They had numerous flourishing cities, which, however, had no political or corporate character like those of

Greece and Italy, but were merely places of residence and trade.

"The Gauls were not a nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, . . . the smaller ones often maintaining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate, while sometimes an ambitious leader succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power.

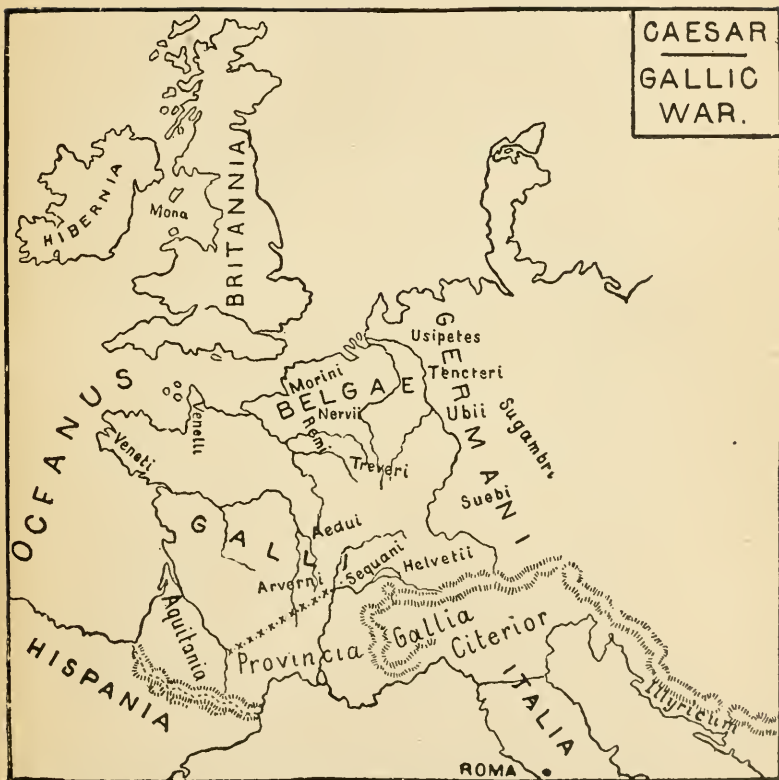
"The Britons were, like the Gauls, of Celtic race, and resembling them in every respect, except that living further from the civilized world, they were ruder, freer, and more warlike.

"The Germans, less advanced in civilization than the Gauls, were still far from being savages. They appear to have been just emerging from what is known as the barbarous state,—beginning to acquire fixed habitations, and to cultivate the ground; they had no cities."—*Allen and Greenough*.

III.—CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL*

I.—B.C. 58. Cæsar, hearing in Rome that the Helvetii are on the eve of setting out on their projected emigration (see page ix), hastens to Transalpine Gaul and there takes measures to prevent them from going through the province. They at first ask his permission to take this route, but failing to get it, try to force their way over the Rhone into the province. Cæsar repels them and they decide to take a more northerly and more difficult route. Cæsar at once obtains five legions from Cisalpine Gaul (there was but one in the Province), and follows them up on the ground that they were likely in their new home to prove dangerous neighbors to the province. He surprised and overcame one of their four divisions at the river

* On the large map of Gaul, the route taken in each campaign is indicated by a line marked with the numbers I, II, etc.



Arar, and soon after near Bibraete inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder, and orders the survivors to return to the homes they had abandoned.

The presence of so large a body of troops and so successful a commander causes the leading men of several of the Gallic tribes to ask his assistance against Ariovistus and his German followers (see page viii.) Caesar undertakes the task, and at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain. The Roman soldiers are afraid to venture into unknown lands against so formidable an enemy as the Germans were reported to be, but Caesar calms their fears, and as soon as he can come to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

By this campaign the Roman influence was extended over the territory to the north of the province as far as the Treveri.

II.—B.C. 57. Caesar advances into the territory of the Belgae, who, with the exception of the Remi (who form an alliance with the Romans), combine to resist any attack on their country.

The combined forces meeting a repulse disband and Caesar advances farther into the country. Here he is surprised by the Nervii with some other tribes, and after a most desperate engagement, in which Caesar's inspiring example alone rallies the troops, the Nervii are driven back with immense loss.

After the siege of an important town in this neighborhood, which capitulates when the enemy perceive the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, several other tribes submit, and as a result of this second campaign Caesar's power extended from the Province northward to the English Channel and along the whole northern coast of Gaul as far as the Veneti.

III.—B.C. 56. During the winter Caesar sends one of his lieutenants to open up a new route between Italy and Gaul over the Alps, near the northern part of the Province, but the hill tribes offer such a resistance that the Romans are forced to retire. The tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed

by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty. The campaign is carried on along the coast, both by land and sea, and the Romans at last conquer the Veneti in a sea fight by a combination of ingenuity and good fortune.

Meanwhile Sabinus, a lieutenant of Cæsar, succeeded in quelling the revolt among the Venelli, and about the same time another lieutenant, Crassus, advanced southward into Aquitania, and after a hard fight against overwhelming odds came off victorious, and the different tribes of the Aquitani submitted to the Romans.

This campaign secured the results of the second year's work in the north-west of Gaul, while by the conquest of Aquitania the entire south from the Atlantic to the Alps acknowledged the Roman sway.

IV.—B.C. 55. For some time the growing power of the Suebi, a German tribe, had been oppressing the neighboring tribes, and at last the Usipetes and Teneteri resolve to cross the Rhine into Gaul. Cæsar advances to the Rhine, and after several conferences fights two battles with the invading Germans and repulses them. To prevent any further inroad, Cæsar builds a bridge across the Rhine, lays waste the lands of the Germans, and thus at once punishes and intimidates them.

He then resolves on making an expedition to Britain, which had close relations with the Belgæ, and for this purpose collects a fleet and sets sail in the early autumn. In the face of a stubborn resistance he effects a landing, and receives the submission of a few states. Heavy losses to the Roman fleet, caused by a storm and high tides, encourage these states to revolt again. A Roman legion is surprised, but the attack is repelled and soon after, owing the lateness of the season, Cæsar returns to Gaul without having ventured inland. On his return he puts down a rising of the Morini.

No new territory was added by this campaign, but the north-east of Gaul was rendered secure from German invasion and the sphere of Roman influence was extended to Britain.

V.—B.C. 54. With a larger fleet and stronger army than before, Cæsar again invades Britain and advances into the interior a little beyond the Thames. The native tribes combine against him, but are defeated and compelled to promise tribute. In the autumn Cæsar returns to Gaul, having made a display of his power and enterprise, but without adding any new territory.

On account of a drought and consequent scarcity of supplies in Gaul, the forces are divided for the winter into several portions and quartered among various tribes. The Gauls, who had been beaten but not subdued, take advantage of this to attack three of the camps. The garrison (a legion and a half) of one is lured from the camp, falls into an ambush and is annihilated. Another camp is besieged by the Nervii, but when reduced to the last extremity relieved by Cæsar. A third is attacked by the Treveri, who are however beaten back with severe loss. Affairs are in so desperate a condition that for the first time Cæsar spends the winter in Gaul instead of Italy.

VI.—B.C. 53. Cæsar, with three additional legions, sets about crushing out all resistance in Northern and North-eastern Gaul. A brief expedition is made across the Rhine into Germany to stop all interference with Gaul. The extreme north-east, where the legion and a half had been cut off the year before, is completely devastated and an invasion by the Sugambri (a German tribe) is repelled. This portion, at least, of Gaul has been now pretty effectually subdued.

VII.—B.C. 52. A general uprising of the central tribes of Gaul, joined even by the hitherto faithful Ædui, is headed by Vercingetorix, who on several occasions gains some advantage over Cæsar but is in the end overcome. The greater part of the fighting (including three noteworthy sieges) takes place in the country of the Arverni and the Ædui and the districts to the north. After the defeat and capture of Vercingetorix the different tribes are speedily reduced to submission.

VIII.—B.C. 51. (The story of this campaign is told by Aulus Hirtius). A few risings in various parts of Gaul are quelled, and Cæsar, having by the middle of 50 completed the conquest of Gaul, proceeds soon after to Italy and becomes engaged in civil war with Pompey.

IV.—THE COMMENTARIES OF CÆSAR.

Commentarii means sketches, jottings, memoirs, and 'Cæsar's Commentaries are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns, in which he treats of himself in the third person, and tells his story as it might have been told by some accompanying scribe or secretary.' That Cæsar himself was the author, is amply proved by the fact that his contemporaries ascribed it to him. It is uncertain whether it was written as the war went on and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war.

Each book contains the history of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Cæsar's death by Aulus Hirtius, Cæsar being doubtless too busy preparing for the coming war with Pompey to find time for literary work.

As for the literary style of the Commentaries, the best judges among Cæsar's contemporaries praised it for its purity of diction and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, writes of Cæsar's Commentaries, "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable: for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments;" and while speaking of them as intended not for a history but as materials for a history, says that their purity, brilliance and conciseness are such as to deter any man in his senses from attempting a history based on these materials.

Hirtius also bears witness to the ease and speed with which Cæsar wrote these books.

It should be borne in mind that Cæsar was one of the most

eloquent and polished orators of his day, and that he also gave attention to the rhetorical study of language, having written a work on the Latin language, from which Gellius quotes the advice, 'to shun an uncommon or out of the way word as a ship would a rock.'

An eminent modern writer says, "To us who love to make our language clear by the number of words used, and who in writing rarely give ourselves time for condensation, the closely-packed style of Cæsar is at first somewhat difficult of comprehension. It cannot be read otherwise than slowly till the reader's mind is trained by practice to Cæsarean expressions, and then not with rapidity.... Skipping is out of the question."

The only other work of Cæsar which has survived to us is a history of the war between him and Pompey, *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books.

V.—THE ARMY AND METHODS OF WARFARE.

(*a*) **The Roman Forces.** Cæsar's army consisted of (*a*) several legions of Roman soldiers, mostly enlisted in Gallia Cisalpina, (*b*) light-armed troops (slingers and archers), levied in some of the Roman provinces (Numidia, Crete and the Balearic islands are mentioned), and (*c*) auxiliary cavalry furnished by or levied from the native tribes in alliance with the Romans.

The legion (*legio*) consisted nominally of 5,000 or 6,000 men, in reality of about 3,000 or 4,000. Losses incurred in a campaign were not made up by adding recruits to the legion, thus impairing its efficiency, but when necessary, new legions were levied. Each legion was made up of ten cohorts (*cohors*), each cohort of three maniples or companies (*manipulus*), each maniple of two centuries (*centuria* or *ordo*), but the division into cohorts is the important one in Cæsar's time, the cohort being thus the unit of his army. The cavalry were divided

into squadrons (*turma*) and *decuriae*, each of uncertain size, the latter being the smaller.



(b) **Arms and Equipments.** The heavy armed soldier of the legion (*miles legionarius*), was equipped as follows :

Defensive armor. 1. The helmet (*galea*), of leather, to which were attached crests (*insignia*) to distinguish the soldiers of the different legions. 2. The cuirass (*lorica*), of leather with a small iron breast-plate. 3. The shield (*scutum*), oblong, 4 feet by $2\frac{1}{2}$, and half cylindrical, of wood covered with leather, with metal rims at the top and bottom. [N.B. —The round shield (*clipeus*) shown in the preceding cut had long before Cæsar's time been discarded for the oblong *scutum* shown in the accompanying cut.]*



* At an earlier time greaves (*ocreae*) had been worn, but they seem not to have been used in Cæsar's time.



Offensive armor. 1. The sword (*gladius*), about two feet long, straight and two-edged, for thrusting not for cutting down. It hung in a sheath (*vagina*) by a belt (*baltus*) on the right side, that the shield might not interfere with its being drawn. 2. The javelin (*pilum*), always used as a missile, not for thrusting, about six feet long with a wooden shaft and iron head.

The clothing of the soldier was a cloak (*sagum* or *sagulum*) reaching to the knee, under which was a tunic or shirt (*tunica*). A girdle or belt, and boots reaching half way to the knee completed the dress.

The light-armed soldiers (*miles levis armaturae*) had for their weapons of offense the bow and arrow (archers, *sagittarii*) or the sling (slingers, *funditores*). As a defense they seem to have used a small round shield.

(c) **Officers of the Army.** 1. The Commander-in-chief (*imperator*), who was at the same time governor of the province which formed the army's headquarters. 2. The staff officers, adjutants or lieutenants (*legatus*), appointed by the Roman senate, but practically chosen by the commander. Cæsar had ten *legati*, who were often assigned to the temporary command of troops either in an engagement, in winter-quarters, or on expeditions sent out by him. 3. The paymaster-general (*quaestor*), who managed the finances of the province, and in war the payment of the soldiers and the sale of booty and prisoners of war. There was but one quaestor with the commander-in-chief, and he was now and then entrusted with a command. 4. The tribunes of the soldiers (*tribunus militum*), of whom there were six belonging to each legion. They were chosen probably by Cæsar himself (though at an earlier period elected by the people) from young men of good birth (they belonged to the equestrian order), but generally of little military ability or experience. As a consequence they do not occupy a prominent position in the cam-

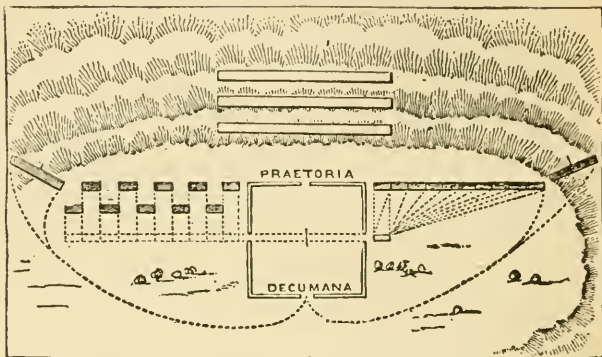
paign, being entrusted with the occasional command of small detachments or with some administrative duties. 5. The prefects or commanders (*praefectus*) were also of equestrian rank and were placed in command of the allied troops, for as a general thing the cavalry contributed by the native tribes was officered by Romans. 6. The centurions (*centurio*) were chosen from among the regular troops, there being 60 to each legion and six to each cohort. The centurions of a legion were not all of the same rank. There was a regular grade of promotion by which a centurion was advanced until he became the senior centurion of the legion (called *primipilus* or *primi pili centurio*.)^{*} The centurions were the ordinary officers of the legion upon whom depended mainly the efficiency of the troops. 7. The decurion or sub-commander of cavalry (*decurio*), occupying a position inferior to the *praefectus* and commanding a small detachment of cavalry.

(d) **The Camp.** "A Roman army never halted for the night without entrenching itself. Towards the end of the day's march a detachment was sent out in front to select a spot for encampment. A favorite site was the slope of a hill, especially if wood, water and grass were abundant in its neighborhood." The camp was square, the defenses consisting of a wall or rampart (*vallum*), and outside of this a trench or moat (*fossa*), from which much of the material for the wall was obtained. The tents (*tentoria*) of the soldiers were of skins (*pelles*). The camp had four gates (*porta*), those at the side being a little forward of the centre, and those in front (*i. e.* facing the enemy) and rear in the centre.[†] Before each gate

^{*} The name was given at an earlier period when the army was divided into maniples rather than cohorts, and into three ranks (*hastati*, *principes* and *triarii*, the last being the veterans.) Each maniple had two centurions (senior and junior, *prior* and *posterior*) and the chief centurion was the senior centurion of the first maniple of the *triarii*. The name *pilus* was given to a maniple of the *triarii*.

[†] This last mentioned gate, on the side most remote from the enemy, was called the *porta decumana*.

a picket or outpost (*statio*) was placed to guard against surprise.†



(e) **Baggage and Standards.** The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*), including the tents, hand mills for grinding corn and engines of war, were carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. Besides this each soldier had his pack (*sarcinae*) to carry. Besides his heavy armor (of which the helmet for convenience was hung round his neck) he carried provisions for two or three weeks, a vessel for cooking his grain when ground into meal, and some of the implements used in throwing up entrenchments—such as stakes, saws, spades, hatchets, and baskets. This pack he would carry upon one of the stakes over his left shoulder, the left arm bearing the shield and the right grasping his javelin. The weight of the pack would be as much as 45



† Other names given to these guards by Caesar are *excubitores* (night guards), and *custodiae*, or *custodes* (watches).

pounds. Hence the soldier in this heavy marching order is called *impeditus*, when freed from his pack and in light marching order, *expeditus*.

The standards of the army included (1) the eagle (*aquila*), one to each legion, borne by the standard bearer of the legion (*aquilifer*) who was under the immediate command of the first centurion of the legion ; (2) the standard or ensign



(*signum*), of which each *manipulus* had one, borne by a *signifer*, of different devices, to enable the soldier to distinguish his own place ; and (3) the banner (*vexillum*), a square piece of colored cloth attached by a crosspiece to a pole, and serving as the standard for the cavalry and perhaps also

for the auxiliaries, being also used for detachments of legionary soldiers sent out for special duties. A red *vexillum* was displayed from the general's quarters as a signal for battle. For this same purpose, as well as for other signals, a straight trumpet (*tuba*) was also used.

(f) **The Army on the March and in Action.** The army on the march (*agmen*) advanced in a single column, with the baggage of each legion immediately behind it. When near the enemy, the baggage of all the legions was thrown together along with the packs of the soldiers, who thus marched in fighting order. The vanguard is called *primum agmen*, the rear *novissimum agmen*.

When drawn up in line of battle (*acies*), each legion was generally arranged in three lines (*triplex acies*), four cohorts (the pick of the legion) in the first line, and three in each of the others. These were stationed something like the following order, so that the second line could come into action without



interfering with the first. The men stood 10 deep in the

cohort. Occasionally other arrangements are mentioned—the single line, the double line (*acies duplex*) the wedge-shaped (*cuneus*), and the square (*orbis*).

The right wing is called *dextrum cornu*, the left *sinistrum cornu*, the centre *media acies*. The cavalry and light-armed troops were stationed generally on the wings.

The place for drawing up the line of battle was by preference sloping ground, that the soldiers might have the advantage in making the charge and might throw their weapons down, not up.

In attacking a town three methods were employed. If weakly fortified, it might be taken by a sudden rush, the trench being filled up, the gates broken in, the walls undermined or torn down, and scaling ladders (*scalae*) brought up to the walls. At other times it was completely surrounded and the garrison starved out. The third method is the regular siege, carried on by means of certain siege works and engines (the artillery of the Romans). Of these siege works the chief one is the mound (*agger*), raised near the town and gradually growing higher and nearer the wall until it was on a level with it. The side remote from the town formed an inclined slope up which towers (*turres*) could be rolled, from the shelter of which missiles were hurled at the defenders until men working beneath could undermine or batter down the walls, or others could place bridges from the mound to the wall and rush across.

To protect those who were building the mound or battering down the wall various devices were used—the screen (*pluteus*), the shed or mantlet (*testudo* § lit. tortoise shell, *vinea* lit. vine-arbor.)

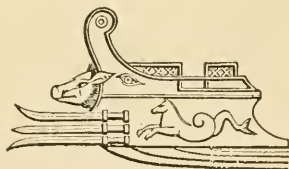
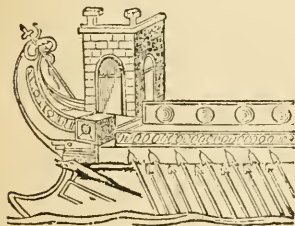
The battering ram (*aries*) was a huge beam tipped with iron, suspended from above, and set in motion from behind by pulling

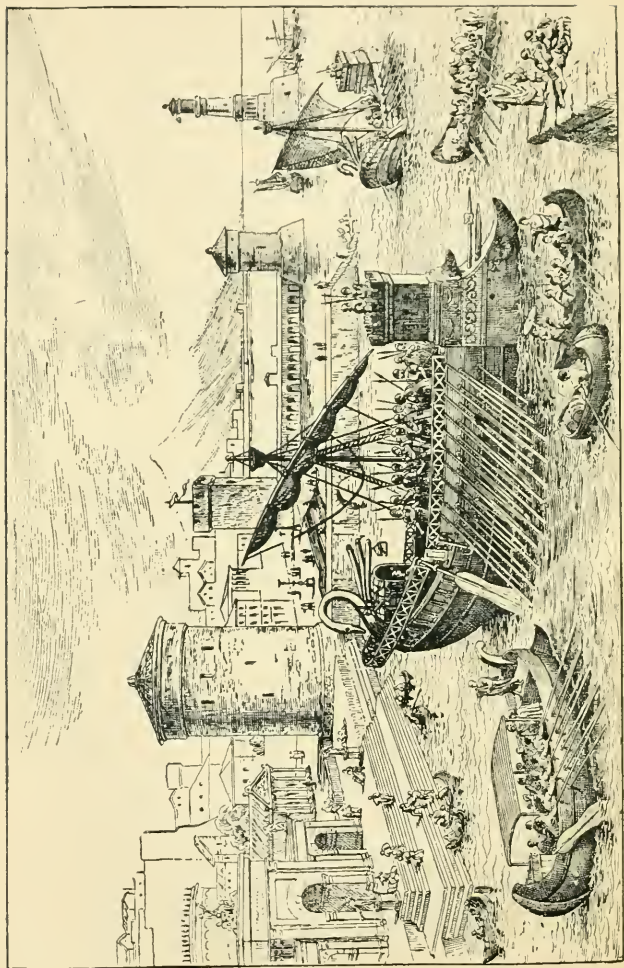
§ The term *testudo* was also used to describe a peculiar shelter formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads, thus forming a continuous cover, sloping towards the rear, so as to shed all missiles hurled down at the soldiers beneath.

it back, and then letting it swing forward with all the impetus it could be given.

Engines (*tormenta*) for hurling huge stones or darts were also employed.

(g) **Roman Vessels.** Those used in war were of two kinds, the ship of war or galley (*navis longa*) and the transport (*navis oneraria*). The former were long and narrow, rigged with sails, but at the same time equipped with rowers. A special feature was the beak (*rostrum*), a sharp projection at the bow covered with metal for running down an enemy's ship. We also read of towers being built on the decks from which missiles could be hurled on the enemy.





A SEA-PORT TOWN.

C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUINTUS.

1. L. DOMITIO, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab¹ hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consue-² rat, legatis imperat, quos ^{des. Rom.} legionibus prae-³ fecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque ⁴ reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demon-² strat. Ad celeritatem ⁵ onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consue-⁶ vimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commuta-⁷ tiones aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat, ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam ⁸ paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem ⁹ humilitas ¹⁰ multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ¹¹ ad armandas naves, ¹² 4 ex Hispania apportari jubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae ¹³ 5 citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam ¹⁴ partem provinciae incursionibus vastari ¹⁵ 3 audiebat. Eo cum ¹⁶ venisset, ¹⁷ 6 civitatibus ¹⁸ milites imperat ¹⁹ 6 certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re nuntiata ²⁰ 7 Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum

rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demon-
 strant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Percepta
 oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam
 diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem
 persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut im-
 peraverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment
 poenamque constituent.

2. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeri-
 orem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficis-
 citur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singu-
 lari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia
 circiter sescentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus.
 naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas neque multum
 abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collau-
 datis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri
velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire
 jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajec-
 tum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta
 a continenti; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum
 reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equiti-
 bus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi
 neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Ger-
 manosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

3. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu
 valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut
 supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de
 principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cinge-
 torix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque
 adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in
 officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos

confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At ⁴ Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit, sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, [Indutiomarus] legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laboraretur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, 1
quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne
aetatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad
Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad
se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in 2
iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim
evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti
in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus 3
Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi
conciliavit, ^{vid. sup.} ~~quod cum~~ merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat.
tum magni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctoritatem inter
suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se
voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indu- 4
tiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et qui jam ante

inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

1 5. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2 legionibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit sexaginta naves, quae
in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere
non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse;
reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus
3 instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus tōtius Galliae con-
venit numero millium quattuor principesque ex omnibus
4 civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem
perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco
secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum
Galliae verebatur.

1 6. Erat ^{slong} una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante
ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habēre in primis
constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum
imperii, magni animi, ^{mag} magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis
2 cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aednorum
Dumnōrix dixerat sibi, a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri;
quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut
deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant.
3 Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille
omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia
relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare
timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret.
4 Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe
impetrandi adempta principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare
singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent:
5 metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni
nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos
in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in

Britanniam tractos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, 6
 jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intel-
 lexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a
compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

7. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae 1
 dignitatis tribuebat, coërcendum atque deterrendum,
quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod 2
 longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum,
 ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies 3
 circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus
 ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis
 temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in
 officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia
 ejus consilia cognosceret: tandem idoneam nactus tem- 4
 pestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet.
 At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus 5
 Aeduum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere
 coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectione 6
 atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus
 ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim 7
 faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc se absente
 pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium
 neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manus
 defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clamitans
 "liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis." Illi, ut erat imperatum 9
 circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt: at equites
 Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum tribus 1
 legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus
 tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia
 gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro ro

gradior (no. 10. 11. 12.)

2 caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo proventus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam, ^{esse} conspexit.

3 Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse

4 egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravi-
 5 busque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum

navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britan-

6 niam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in

eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine

navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

Constructa...

1 9. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae

consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad

hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et prae-

2 sidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium

3 copias conspiciat^{ide}us est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et

4 proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum ^{oblatum et vel} nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa jam



TESTUDO. (From Trajan's Column.

[Baumeister.]

ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes 5
 introitus erant praeclusi. ^{many} Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant 6
 nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites 7
 legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones
 adjecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis
 vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar 8
 prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod
 magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus
 relinqui volebat. ^{to be left}

10. Postridie ejus diei mane tripertito milites equitesque 1
 in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. 2
 His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi 3
 essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem
 venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta
 tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore
 ejectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, 4
 neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati pos-
 sent: itaque ex eo concursu navium, magnum esse incom- 5
 modum acceptum.

11. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque 1
 revocari atque itinere desistere jubet, ipse ad naves
 revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cogno- 2
 verat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta
 navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio videren- 3
 tur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios 4
 arcessi jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, 5
 iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, 6
 etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodis-
 simum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris
 una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem 6
 consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem

7 militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie
 munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus
 8 reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum
 venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae
 Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellicae admini-
 strandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cujus
 fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appel-
 latur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta.
 9 Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia
 bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni
 hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

1 **12.** Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos
 2 in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab
 iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio trans-
 ierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appel-
 lantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello
 illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt.
 3 Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia
 fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus.
 4 Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad
 5 certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi
 plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis
 ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato.
 Materia cujusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagnum
 6 atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare
 fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque
 causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissiori-
 bus frigoribus.

1 **13.** Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra
 Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium,
 quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem

^{latus} solem, inferior ^{facies} ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter
 millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam²
 atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia,
 dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari
 spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In³
 hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona: com-
 plures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur;
 de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos trigin-
 ta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de ^{inter} eo ^{with the water} percontationibus⁴
 reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua ^{in the} mensuris breviores esse
 quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longi-
 tudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium.
 Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta⁶
terra, sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam
 spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem
 esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vices⁷
 centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Can-¹
 tium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque
 multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores²
 plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt
 pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro
 inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horri-
 diores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso,³
 atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum
 superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se com-⁴
 munes et ^{e. f. p. a. l.} maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum
 liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi,⁵
 quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariiue acriter proelio cum¹
 equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri

omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas
 2 collesque compulerint ; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius
 3 insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso
 spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione
 castrorum subito se ex silvis ejecerunt impetuque in eos
 4 facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter
 pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a
 Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, (cum hae
 perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent,)
 5 novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacis-
 sime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo
 die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur.
 Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

1 16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae cum sub oculis omnium
 ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter
 gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent,
 neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad
 2 hujus generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo
 proelio dimicare, propterea, quod illi etiam consulto
 plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros
 3 removerent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio
 contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus
 4 et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat.
 Accedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque
 intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent,
 atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes
 defatigatis succederent.

1 17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus
 constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie
 2 nostros equites proelio lacerare coeperunt. Sed meridie
 cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnen.

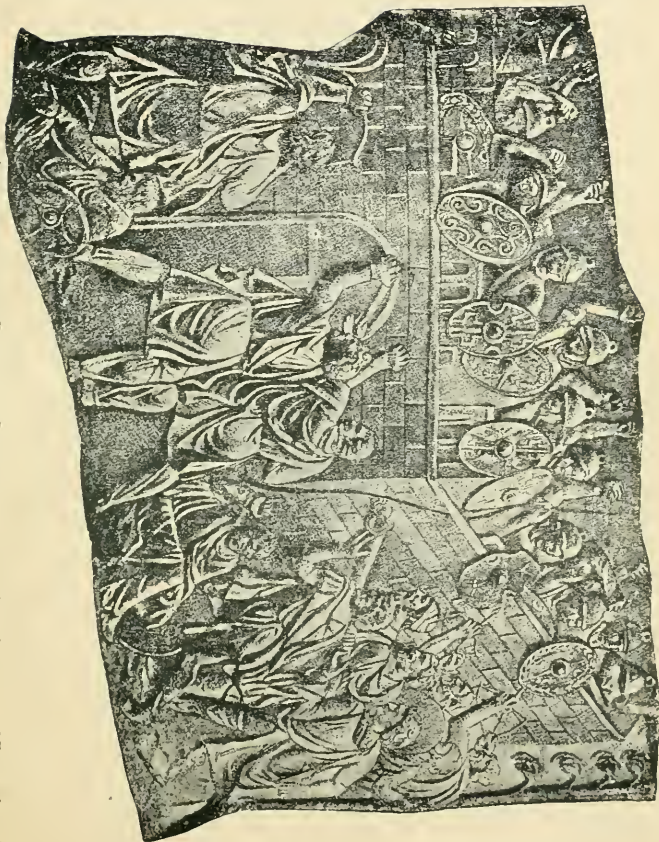
equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in 3 eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio ^{repperit} confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum 4 numero interfecto neque sui ^{prole} colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac 5 fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia disces-
serunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

18. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim 1 in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; ^{ut} quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo 2 cum venisset, ^{ad} animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat 3 acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis 4 a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu 5 milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni 1 deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque 2 impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus 3 noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros

scatte
 7
 16
 17
 18
 19
 20
 21
 22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65
 66
 67
 68
 69
 70
 71
 72
 73
 74
 75
 76
 77
 78
 79
 80
 81
 82
 83
 84
 85
 86
 87
 88
 89
 90
 91
 92
 93
 94
 95
 96
 97
 98
 99
 100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525
 526
 527
 528
 529
 530
 531
 532
 533
 534
 535
 536
 537
 538
 539
 540
 541
 542
 543
 544
 545
 546
 547
 548
 549
 550
 551
 552
 553
 554
 555
 556
 557
 558
 559
 560
 561
 562
 563
 564
 565
 566
 567
 568
 569
 570
 571
 572
 573
 574
 575
 576
 577
 578
 579
 580
 581
 582
 583
 584
 585
 586
 587
 588
 589
 590
 591
 592
 593
 594
 595
 596
 597
 598
 599
 600
 601
 602
 603
 604
 605
 606
 607
 608
 609
 610
 611
 612
 613
 614
 615
 616
 617
 618
 619
 620
 621
 622
 623
 624
 625
 626
 627
 628
 629
 630
 631
 632
 633
 634
 635
 636
 637
 638
 639
 640
 641
 642
 643
 644
 645
 646
 647
 648
 649
 650
 651
 652
 653
 654
 655
 656
 657
 658
 659
 660
 661
 662
 663
 664
 665
 666
 667
 668
 669
 670
 671
 672
 673
 674
 675
 676
 677
 678
 679
 680
 681
 682
 683
 684
 685
 686
 687
 688
 689
 690
 691
 692
 693
 694
 695
 696
 697
 698
 699
 700
 701
 702
 703
 704
 705
 706
 707
 708
 709
 710
 711
 712
 713
 714
 715
 716
 717
 718
 719
 720
 721
 722
 723
 724
 725
 726
 727
 728
 729
 730
 731
 732
 733
 734
 735
 736
 737
 738
 739
 740
 741
 742
 743
 744
 745
 746
 747
 748
 749
 750
 751
 752
 753
 754
 755
 756
 757
 758
 759
 760
 761
 762
 763
 764
 765
 766
 767
 768
 769
 770
 771
 772
 773
 774
 775
 776
 777
 778
 779
 780
 781
 782
 783
 784
 785
 786
 787
 788
 789
 790
 791
 792
 793
 794
 795
 796
 797
 798
 799
 800
 801
 802
 803
 804
 805
 806
 807
 808
 809
 810
 811
 812
 813
 814
 815
 816
 817
 818
 819
 820
 821
 822
 823
 824
 825
 826
 827
 828
 829
 830
 831
 832
 833
 834
 835
 836
 837
 838
 839
 840
 841
 842
 843
 844
 845
 846
 847
 848
 849
 850
 851
 852
 853
 854
 855
 856
 857
 858
 859
 860
 861
 862
 863
 864
 865
 866
 867
 868
 869
 870
 871
 872
 873
 874
 875
 876
 877
 878
 879
 880
 881
 882
 883
 884
 885
 886
 887
 888
 889
 890
 891
 892
 893
 894
 895
 896
 897
 898
 899
 900
 901
 902
 903
 904
 905
 906
 907
 908
 909
 910
 911
 912
 913
 914
 915
 916
 917
 918
 919
 920
 921
 922
 923
 924
 925
 926
 927
 928
 929
 930
 931
 932
 933
 934
 935
 936
 937
 938
 939
 940
 941
 942
 943
 944
 945
 946
 947
 948
 949
 950
 951
 952
 953
 954
 955
 956
 957
 958
 959
 960
 961
 962
 963
 964
 965
 966
 967
 968
 969
 970
 971
 972
 973
 974
 975
 976
 977
 978
 979
 980
 981
 982
 983
 984
 985
 986
 987
 988
 989
 990
 991
 992
 993
 994
 995
 996
 997
 998
 999
 1000

A SIEGE-FIGHT WITH BATTERING-RAM. (From Trajan's Column.) [Baumeister.]



tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvviso adorian^{tu} atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentin^{os} Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdic^{it} atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta perpauc^{ae} locum

5 caperent, reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. ^{et eas} Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinotium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit carnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

1 24. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samaro-
 2 brivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter
 siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac
 superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legio-
 3 nesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in
 Morinos ducendam C. Fabio legato dedit, alteram in
 Nervios Q. Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios L. Roscio; quar-
 4 tam in Remis cum T. Labieno in confinio Treverorum
 5 hiemare jussit; tres in Bellovacis collocavit; his M.
 Crassum quaestorem et L. Munatium Plancum et Gai-
 6 Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam
 proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque
 in Eburones, quorum pars maxima ^{erat} est inter Mosam ac
 Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant,
 7 misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurun-
 8 culeium Cottam legatos praeesse jussit. Ad hunc modum
 distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese
 9 mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium
 legionum hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Roscio in
 pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat,
 10 millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea,
 quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset,
 in Gallia morari constituit.

1 25. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius,
 2 cujus majores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic

Caesar pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari ejus operā fuerat usus, majorum locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare, quorumque operā cognoverat Tagetium interfectum, hos (comprehensos) ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus [legatis quaestoreque], quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque [hibernis] esse munitum.

26. Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsus concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodiret: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa C. Arpineius, eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam, qui jam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem venitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se bene-

ficiis plurimum ei confiteri ^{et} debere, quod ejus operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero ^{missos} apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed ^{coactu} civitatis, suaeque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet juris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum conjurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat.

Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum ^{videretur}. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et jurejurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro ejus meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quae audierunt, ad legatos de-1
ferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dice-
bantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque
hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque
humilem Eburorum sua sponte populo Romano bellum
facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium²
rem deferunt, magnaue inter eos existit controversia.

L. Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et pri-³
morum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque
ex hibernis injussu Caesaris discedendum existima-
bant: quantavis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri⁴
posse munitis hibernis docebant; rem esse testimonio
quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus
illatis fortissime sustinuerint: re frumentaria non premi;⁵
interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura
subsidia: postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam⁶
auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

✓ 29. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum¹
maiores manus hostium adjunctis Germanis convenissent,
aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset
acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem²
arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes
interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque
Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contempione nostri ad
castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem³
spectare: subesse Rhenum: magno esse Germanis dolori
Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere⁴
Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis, sub populi Romani im-
perium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta.
Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambi-⁵
origem ad ejusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sen-⁶

tentiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quoniam habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

1 30. Hāc in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur: 'Vincite,' inquit, 'si ita vultis,' Sābinus, et id clariore voce, ut 2 magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear; hi 3 sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent, qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non rejecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

1 31. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum 2 periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; 3 contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat 4 Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum 5 relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum 6 augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine

amicissimo [Ambiorige] consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliis-¹ que de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a millibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum expectabant, et cum se major pars agminis in magnam convallem ² demisisset, ex utraque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, ¹ trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset haec ² posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitu-³ dinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, jusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem ⁴ consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et ⁵ nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere

atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia comple-
rentur.

1 34. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces
eorum tota acie promuntiare jusserunt, ne quis ab loco
discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari,
quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in
2 victoria posita ^{esse} existimarent. Erant et virtute et studio
pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna dese-
rebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant,
et quoties quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus
3 numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix
promuntiari jubet, ut procul tela conijciant neu propius
4 accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint,
cedant (levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil
iis noceri posse), rursus se ad signa recipientes inse-
quantur.

1 35. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum
quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat,
2 hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem
3 nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto, tela recipi. Rursus,
cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti coeperant,
et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant.
4 circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec
virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine
5 conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incom-
modis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant, et
magna parte diei consumpta, cum ^{adhuc} a prima luce ad horam
6 octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum,
^{indignum} committebant. Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno
primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis,
7 utrumque femur tragula trajicitur; Q. Lucanius, ejus-

dem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta legatus omnes cohortes et ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

36. His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, cum procul Amborigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Amborige una colloquantur: sperare ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

37. Sabinus quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubet et, cum propius Amborigem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Amborige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam clamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis

itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque cum de rebus gestis certiores faciunt.

1 38. Hac victoria sublatu^s Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit pediatumque sese
2 subsequi jubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis,
3 quas acceperint, injuriis occasionem dimittant; interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse
4 demonstrat; nihil esse negotii subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nervii persuadet.

1 39. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Centrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt cogunt et de improvise ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant,
2 nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent,
3 repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum
4 conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

1 40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Ciceror litterae magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent: obses

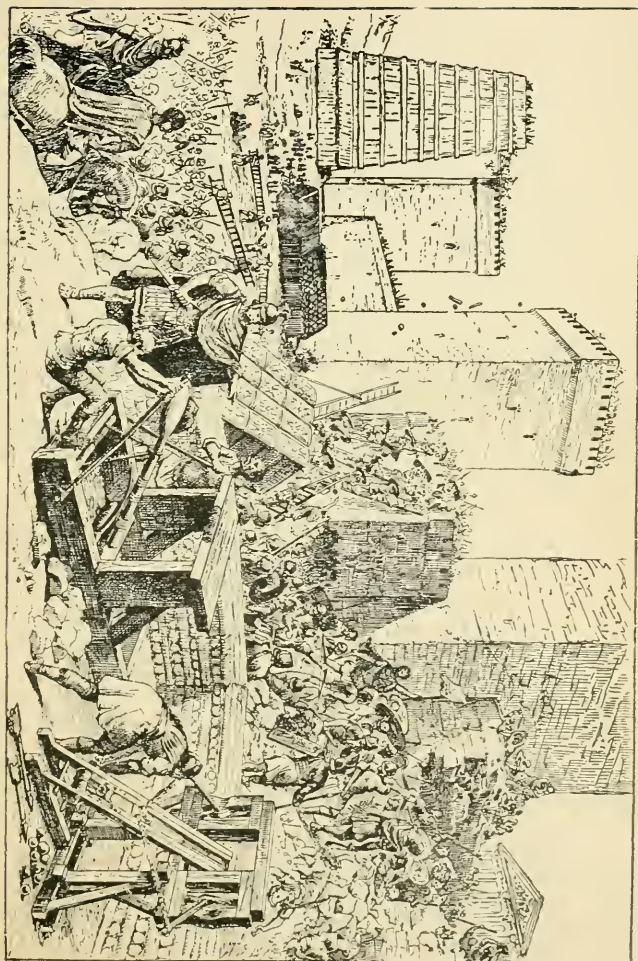
omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, 2
 quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum
 centum viginti excitantur, incredibili celeritate; quae deesse
 operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multos
 majoribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam com-
 plent. Eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. 4
 Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturnis
 temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vul-
 neratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximis
 diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae
 praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus
 instituitur: turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex
 cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima vale- 7
 tudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem
 relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi
 parcere cogeretur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem 1
 sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habe-
 bant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem 2
 quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem
 esse in armis Galliam: Germanos Rhenum transisse; 3
 Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam
 de Sabini morte: Ambiorigem ostendant fidei faciundae
 causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidiis
 sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in
 Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi
 hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem
 nolint: licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere
 et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci.
 Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consue- 7
 tudinem populi Romani accipere ab hoste armato condi-

scionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro ejus justitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

1 42. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossa
2 pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum
annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quos de
3 exercitu habebant captivos, ab iis docebantur; sed nullā
ferramentorum copiā, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea,
gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram
4 exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multi-
5 tudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus millium
passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt,
reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testu-
dinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere
coeperunt.

1 43. Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento
ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta
jacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tecta
2 jacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderun
et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distule
3 runt. Hostes maximo clamore sicuti parta jam atque
explorata victoria turres testudinesque agere et scalis
4 vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque
ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torre-
rentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque
omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare
intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo
decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam,
5 ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic
dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc
habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium



A BESIEGED CITY.

vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ^{ut} se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turriculada et contingente vallum tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, 1 qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, T. Pulio et L. Vorenius. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, 2 quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simulatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'Quid dubitas,' inquit, 3 'Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit.' Haec 4 cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaque pars hostium confertissima est visa, irrumpit. Ne Vorenius 5 quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Tum mediocri spatio relicto Pulio 6 pilum in hostes inmittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem trajicit; quo percusso et exanimato hunc scutis protegent, in hostem tela universi conjiiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et 7 verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam 8 et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi 9 Vorenius et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a 10 Pulione omnis multitudo convertit: illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenius 11 atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupi- 12

agrees with Pulio

13 dius instat, in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic
rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo
incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese
14 intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et
certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus
auxilio salutique esset neque dijudicari posset, uter utri
virtute antefendus videretur.

1 45. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppug-
natio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta
vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto
crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur;
quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum
2 cum cruciatus necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine
Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad
3 Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic
servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut
4 litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas
effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspitione versatus
5 ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis
legionisque cognoscitur.

1 46. Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei
statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem
mittit, ^{ut} ejus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum viginti
2 quinque; jubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque
3 ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad C.
Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem
4 adducat, ^{ut} qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si
reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines
Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam ^{adde} partem exercitus, quod
paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites
circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

47. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi
 adventu certior factus, eo die millia passuum viginti
 procedit. Crassum Samarobriuae praeficit legionemque 2
 attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civita-
 tum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tole-
 randae hiemis causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut 3
 imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum
 legione occurrit. Labienus interitu Sabini et caede 4
 cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae
 venissent, veritus si ex hibernis fugae similem profec-
 tionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum sustinere posset,
 praesertim quos ^{esse} recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras 5
 Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis
 educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit,
 docet omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Treverorum
 tria millia passuum longe ab suis castris consedis-
 se.

48. Caesar consilio ejus probato, etsi opinione trium 1
 legionum dejectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum com-
 munis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit 2
 magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis
 cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in
 periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis 3
 praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat.
 Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta 4
 epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si 5
 adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistola ad
 amentum deligata intra munitionem castrorum abjiciat. In
 litteris scribit se cum legionibus profectum ^{esse} celeriter 6
 affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus 7
 periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit.
 Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduos

animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur,
9 dempta ad Ciceronem deferitur. Ille perlectam in conventu
10 militum recitat maximaque omnes laetitia afficit. Tum
fumi incendiorum procul videbantur; quae res omnem
dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

1 49. Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relin-
quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec
2 erant armata circiter millia sexaginta. Cicero data facul-
tate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravi-
mus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc ad-
3 monet, iter caute diligenterque faciat: perscribit in litteris
hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem
4 convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar
allatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo
5 confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter
millia passuum quattuor progressus, trans vallem et rivum
6 multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi
res tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; ^{atque} tum quoniam
obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, ^{atque} aequo animo
remittendum de celeritate existimabat: consedit et, quam
7 aequissimo loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi
erant exigua per se, vix hominum millium septem
praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis
viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in
8 summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim specu-
latoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commo-
dissime itinere valles transiri possit.

1 50. Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis
2 utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores
3 copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar,
si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere

posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium 4 equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque 5 in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris jubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias tra-1 ducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam 2 de vallo deductis propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt praeconibusque circum-3 missis pronuntiari jubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit aut horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros 4 contempserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta 5 equitatuque emissio celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

52. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque 1 intercedebant (neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinquere videbat) omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, 2 testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione producta cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus judicat rebus, 3 quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint ad-

perf after
primary sequ

ministratae: Ciceronem pro ejus merito legionemque collaudat: centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius sex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo neque hostibus diutina lactatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

53. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis millia passuum abesset circiter sexaginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treveros perlata Indutimarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit.
- Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinīs hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit.
- Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaue in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum

nuntium acciperet. In his ab L. Roscio, quem legionis tertiae decimae praefecerat, certior factus est magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse neque longius 7 millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

54. At Caesar principibus cujusque civitatis ad se 1 evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent; denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma 2 et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cujus frater Moritagus adventu in Galliam Caesaris cujusque majores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum illes praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire 3 jussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud 4 homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit. 5 cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se ejus opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

1 55. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis
nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos
mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur,
magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem
2 superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati
Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum
se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Teneterorum
3 transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac
spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exer-
cere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota
4 Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam
sibi jam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat,
ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque
amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

1 56. Ubi intellexit ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte
Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera
Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi
voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi
2 coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum
est initium belli: quo lege communi omnes puberes armati
convenire consuerunt: qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in
conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus
3 necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem
factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus
Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse. hostem
4 judicat bonaque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis in
concilio pronuntiat arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnuti-
5 bus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus: huc iturum
per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac,
priusquam id faciat. castra Labieni oppugnaturum.
Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

57. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis¹ castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus pro-² pinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat; his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus³ sub castris ejus vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciebant. Labienus⁴ suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem,^{ad} quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

58. Cum majore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad¹ castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus² ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit: equites tela conjiciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato re-³ sponso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equita-⁴ tum emittit: praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat: magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit⁵ cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis con-

silium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado prehensus Indutiomarus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburorum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

as they return



C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER SEXTUS.

1. MULTIS de causis Caesar majorem Galliae motum¹ exspectans per M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium legatos delectum habere instituit: simul ab Cn. 2 Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicae causa remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet, magni interesse etiam in reli-³ quum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrim⁴ menti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam majoribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pom-⁴ peius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoquo earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent. *p. 21*

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus pro-¹ pinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos

Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt.
 2 Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ultiores
 temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus jurejurando inter
 se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiori-
 3 gem sibi societate et foedere adjungunt. Quibus rebus
 cognitis Caesar cum undique bellum parari videret,
 Nervios Aduatucos, [ac] Menapios adjunctis Cisrhenanis
 omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum
 non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus
e concerting consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris lega-
 tionibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum
 putavit.

1 3. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor
 coactis legionibus de improvviso in fines Nerviorum con-
 2 tendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere
 possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto
 atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris in
 3 deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo
 celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones
so baffant 4 reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, ut instituerat,
 indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Trever-
 osque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbi-
 5 tratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam
 Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civi-
 tatemque patrum memoria conjunxerant, sed ab hoc
 6 consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu
 pronuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficis-
 citur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

1 4. Cognito ejus adventu Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii
 fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conan-
all *dictor* tibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur,

Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi² causa ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aeduos, quorum ^{est un} antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus ^{inter} Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. ^{im} Obsidibus imperatis centum hos Aeduis custodiendos⁴ tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt usi⁵ deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque⁶ imperat civitatibus.

5. Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in¹ bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum² cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci jubet, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis ^{est} motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato³ ^{deserved} habebat Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua ejus consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Me-⁴ napii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum ^{hunc} his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros⁵ ^{well known} venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda⁵ ^{well known} auxilia existimabat quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne desperata salute aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congregari cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio⁶ totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nulla coacta manu loci praesidio freti in silvas palu-⁷ desque confugiunt suaque eodem conferunt.

6. Caesar partitis copiis cum C. Fabio legato et M. 1

Since. Cum inter. Sed
inter. - inter. Sed

Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit triper-
tito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque
2 hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii
3 legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille obsidi-
bus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si
aut Ambiorigem aut ejus legatos finibus suis recepissent.
4 His confirmatis rebus Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu
custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros
proficiscitur.

1 7. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis
peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione,
quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant,
2 jamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas
3 venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis
castris a millibus passuum quindecim auxilia Germanorum
4 expectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito con-
silio sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi
facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis
relieto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu
contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso
5 spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque
hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc
neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transi-
6 turos existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes.
Loquitur in concilio palam, quoniam Germani appropin-
quare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium
non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra
7 moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex
magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus
8 favere natura cogeat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum
primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii,



1. SLINGER.

2. LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

3. SOLDIERS OF THE LEGION.

4. CAVALRY.

proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, majore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri jubet. His rebus fugae similem⁹ profectionem effecit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat,¹ cum Galli cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent: longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium expectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguum manum praesertim fugientem atque impeditam adoriri non audeant, flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen² eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in³ tumultu quodam collocatis, 'Habetis,' inquit, 'milites. 4 quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.' Simul signa ad⁵ hostem converti aciemque dirigi jubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in⁶ hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petierunt. Quos Labienus equitatu con-⁷ sectatus magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga sese domum

receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidis relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum vellet, dare pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit aditus viasque in Suebos perquiri.

10. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros

exploratores in Suebos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus inter-⁴ missis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coegissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magni-⁵ tudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro objectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis injuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad ejus initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

✓ 11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum¹ esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Gallia² non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam³ auctoritatem eorum judicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Itaque ejus rei causa antiquitus institu-⁴ tum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiores auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, ^{ita ut} aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius⁵ Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

✓ 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis¹ principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se² minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant eosque ad se magnis jacturis

3 pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus
factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta
4 tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clien-
tium ab Aeduis ad se traducerent obsidesque ab iis princi-
pum filios acciperent et publice jurare cogerent, nihil se
contra Sequanos consilii inituros et partem finitimi agri
per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius princi-
5 patum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus
auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imper-
6fecta re redierat. Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione
rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis
restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi. qui se
ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione
atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus
eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum
7 dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant: quos
quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii,
qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis
8 conjungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos
illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam
9 auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe
principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis
Remi obtinerent.

1 13. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt
numero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam plebes
paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se,
2 nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno
aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuria potentiorum
premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus, quibus in
3 hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quae dominis in servos. Sed
de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum

equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica 4
 ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos
 magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa con-
 currit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de 5
 omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt et,
 si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de here-
 ditate, de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt,
 praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut 6
 populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt.
 Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est 7
 interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur,
 his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt,
 ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his
 petentibus jus redditur neque honos ullus communicatur.
 His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam 8
 inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo aut si qui ex 9
 reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures
 pares, suffragio druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis de
 principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus 10
 Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, con-
 sidunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui con-
 troversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque
 parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in 11
 Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius 12
 eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa
 proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una 1
 cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque
 rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et 2
 sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus
 propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum 3

ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicanos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juventuti tradunt.

1 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

1 16. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus, atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolatuos vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent,



1.
SOLDIER
OF GAUL.

2.
STANDARD BEARER
OF GAUL.

3.
CAPTAIN
OF A GALLIC TROOP.

From the Triumphal Arch in Orange (Arausio). [A.D. 21.]

quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ejus generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Jovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent: cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatio constitutum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint,

duty

palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili aetate in publice in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

- ¹ 19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum ² dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur: uter eorum vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt.
- ⁴ Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

- ¹ 20. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama ² acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de ³ summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

- ¹ 21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint

neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos² ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis³ rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maxi-⁴ mam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. Intra annum vero vicesi-⁵ mum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis rhenonum tegimentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

22. Agriculturae non student, majorque pars eorum¹ victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam² agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt causas: ne assidua³ consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant, potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum⁴ suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum¹ se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium² virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fortiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato.

4 Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magis-
tratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant
5 potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis
magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter
6 suos jus dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia
nullam habent infamiam, quæ extra fines cujusque civi-
tatis fiunt, atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidia
7 minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex
principibus in concilio dixit se ducem fore, qui sequi velint,
profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem
probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab mult-
8 tudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, in deser-
torum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his
9 rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non
putant; qui quaque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab injuria
prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent
victusque communicatur.

1 24. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute
superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multi-
tudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent.
2 Itaque ea, quæ fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum
Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam
Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appel-
lant, Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consede-
3 runt; quæ gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet
summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem.
4 Nunc, quod in eadem inopia, egestate patientiaque
Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis
5 utuntur, Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et trans-
marinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus

largetur, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victis proeliis ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

25. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauricorum finibus rectaque fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, cum dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit; multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bos cervi figura, cujus a media fronte inter aures unum cornu existit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus: ab ejus summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictas casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadvertum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes

eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt arbores,
tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur.
5 Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores
pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

1 28. Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi
sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore
2 et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas,
neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcut.
3 Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt; hoc se labore
durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent,
et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum
cornibus quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem.
4 Sed assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli
5 quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et
6 species multum a nostrorum bouum cornibus differt. Haec
studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcladunt atque
in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur

1 29. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit
Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus,
quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani
2 agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed
ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut
eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam
pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem
3 pedum ducentorum rescindit, atque in extremo ponte
turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque
cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque
eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque
4 C. Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum
maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis

profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet millibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere posset, monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

30. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantesprehendit; eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque ejus adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redisque equisque comprehensis ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, comites familiaresque ejus angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimavit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est; sed

certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere jussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in 3 continentibus paludes profugit : qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consueverunt : multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia 4 alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidia partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate jam confectus cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Amborigem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, ejus magna in Gallia Germanique copia est, se exanimavit.

1 32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam judicaret ; nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla 2 Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit : si ita fecissent, fines 3 eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam 4 contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius 5 hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartamdecimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia 6 traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Q. Tullium Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu T. Labienum cum legionibus tribus¹ ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet; C. Trebonium cum pari legionum² numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adjacet, depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen³ Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Amborigem audiebat. Discedens post diem⁴ septimum sese reversurum confirmat: quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae⁵ commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud initium belli capere possint.

34. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla,¹ non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed in omnes partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut² vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec³ loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam⁴ et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum secleratorum⁵ interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut⁶ instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidi-

andi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia.
i Ut in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia pro-
videri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid
praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum
ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur.
8 Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: omnes
evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in
silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur,
simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore
9 stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique
numerus celeriter convenit.

1 **35.** Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur,
diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad
2 impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic,
quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus,
3 cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut
demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo
4 causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos
pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad
5 praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo millia Sugambri,
qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga
6 Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt
Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta millibus passuum
infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque
ab Caesar relictum: primos Eburonum fines adeunt:
multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero,
7 cujus sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda
longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniisque
natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar,
ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnem-
8 que exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex

captivis: 'Quid vos,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam. quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit: praesidii tantum⁹ est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.' Oblata spe Germani¹⁰ quam nacti erant praedam in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce, cujus haec indicio cognoverant.

36. Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris¹ summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum. quod longius progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebatur, simul² eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relict; ex quibus qui³ hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter trecenti sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis jumentorum, quae in castris subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites inter-¹veniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec prius²

sunt visi objectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius jam castra capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt. Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

38. Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesaris duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem jam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffusus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis, quae in statione erat: paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.



1. IMPERATOR.
2. LEGATUS.
3. CENTURIO.

4. LICTOR.
5. SIGNIFERI.
6. BUCINATOR.

7. TUBICEN.
8. VEXILLUM.
9. AQUILA.

39. Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt : praecurrunt equites ; quanto res sit in periculo cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat : modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt : quid ab his praecipiat exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt : redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant : postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

40. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt ; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt ; alii, ut in jugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati duce C. Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsequuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constituerant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant imitari potuerant, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines hujus legionis

traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars horum virtute submotis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

1 41. Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod
nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea
praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese
2 receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium
terror, ut ea nocte, cum C. Volusenus missus cum equitatu
ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi
3 Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccu-
paverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis
equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi
exercitu Germanos castra oppugnatuuros fuisse conten-
4 derent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

1 42. Reversus ille eventus belli non ignorans unum,
quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae,
questus—ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse
—multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse
2 judicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo
3 portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium
rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani,
qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines
depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum
Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

1 43. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno
coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes
2 dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque
3 conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis
agebatur; frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine

jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non majore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de conjuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit, et de Accone, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata more majorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli judicium veriti profugerunt. Quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

IN THE NOTES THE FOLLOWING ABBREVIATIONS
ARE USED :

App.—The sections of Appendix I. following the Vocabulary and entitled
'Hints and Suggestions for the Translation of Caesar's Latin.'

RC.—The sections of Part III. of Robertson and Carruthers' Primary
Latin Book.

BA.—Bradley's Arnold's Latin Prose Composition.

HF.—The pages and sections of Henderson and Fletcher's First Latin
Book.

H.—Harkness' Standard Latin Grammar.

AG.—Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar (Revised Edition).

c.—Chapter (of the same book unless otherwise stated).

trans.—translate or translation.

lit.?—where a free rendering has been given, to call attention to the
literal translation.

fn.—footnote.

p.—page.

cf.—compare.

Where Caesar's style or usage is referred to, the *De Bello Gallico* alone
is meant.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

For the events described in the four preceding books, see Introduction, § III., p. x.

Chap. 1-23.—Caesar's second expedition to Britain.

1. *Caesar orders vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his provinces of Cisalpine Gaul and of Illyricum.*

CAP. I. *

1. **L. Domitio...consulibus**,—freely, 'in the consulship of...'; lit.? App.5.*a.n.* (RC.p.133.50. HF.102.3.N.) The Romans regularly indicated the year by the names of the chief magistrates. Caesar left Gaul late in B.C. 55, and these were the consuls for B.C. 54, but the calendar was so deranged that the official year began some weeks before the solar year.

discedens,—App.38. **hibernis**,—at the end of the fourth campaign 'Caesar established winter camps for all the legions, among the Belgae.' **Italiam**,—by this is meant the province of *Gallia Cisalpina*, in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. See Introduction, p. ix. **consue-**
rat,—for *consueverat*. (RC.66.) Note that *consuevi*=*I have become* (hence *I am*) *accustomed*.

imperat...uti...curarent,—App.29.*b.* (RC.99.*a.*2. HF.181.
3.) **quam plurimas possent**,—'as many as possible or as

* This chapter is given in a simplified form in App. III., with notes of a more elementary nature than those given above.

they could'; for mood of *possent* see RC.99.e. HF.206.4.
hieme,—time within which. **aedificandas**...**curarent**,—
 'have built.' (RC.104.c. HF.173.7.)

Earum,—referring only to the new vessels.

2. **Ad**,—'for.' **onerandi**,—App.39: trans. gen. by 'in,'
 App.2.c.

quam quibus,—'than those which,' supplying *eas* before
quibus. **nostro mari**,—the name Mediterranean was not
 given till a much later time. **id eo magis**,—'all the more so,'
 lit. '(he does) that the more because of this.' **minus mag-**
nos,—'smaller.' Caesar's statement seems incorrect, unless
 he has in mind the 'choppy' waves of the channel; he seems
 too to confound the tides with the conflicting currents from
 the Atlantic and the German Ocean.

ad...transportandam.—App. 40, the gerundive construc-
 tion. (RC.104.b. HF.170.3.) Connect *onera* as well as *multi-*
tudinem with *transportandam*. **reliquis maribus**,—the
 various parts of the Mediterranean, each having its own name
 among the Romans.

3. **actuarias**,—swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by
 sails; the ships usually built by the Gauls had sails only.
quam ad rem,—'for which.' **humilitas adjuvat**,—because
 of the greater ease in rowing.

4. **Ea quae**,—App.12.b. **usui**,—trans. dat. by 'of'; (RC.
 82.c. HF.134.1.) **ad armandas**,—like *ad transportandam*,
 § 2. **Hispania**,—Spain was rich in iron and in material for
 ropes.

5. **Ipsē**,—App.17; Caesar's movements are contrasted with
 the doings of the *legati*. **conventibus**,—the governor of a
 province acted also as its judge. **Galliae citerioris, Illyri-**
cum,—two of the three provinces in Caesar's jurisdiction; see
 Introduction, p.ix., and the map on p.xi.

finitimam,—next, that is, to the *Pirustae*, who lived on the
 borders of Illyricum. **audiebat**,—'he heard'; the imperfect
 shows that the news came to him more than once.

6. **Eo**,—adverb; *i.e.* to Illyricum. **eum venisse**,—App. 31; trans. 'on coming.' **imperat**,—'demands, requires,' with dat. of person of whom the demand is made (*i.e.* to whom the order is given), acc. of that which is demanded.

7. **Qua re**,—'this,' App. 11. *b.* **qui doceant**,—'to inform (him),' App. 11. *c.*; for subjunctive see RC. 99. *a.* 1. HF. 18. 1. **nihil**,—'none,' lit.? **earum rerum**,—*i.e.* the raids. **publico consilio**,—implying that the raids were the work of irresponsible individuals. **seseque...demonstrant**,—*que* couples *mittunt* (not *doceant*) and *demonstrant*; *i.e.* the Pirustae, by their ambassadors, state, etc.: for *sese*,—App. 14. *c.* **omnibus rationibus**,—'in every way,' lit.?

8. **eorum**,—App. 12. *b.*; the ambassadors; **eos**,—the hostages. **ad**,—'by.' **fecerint**,—'they do'; perf. subj.; perf. because their failure would precede their punishment; for the subj. see RC. 99. *h.* iii. HF. 206. 4. **civitatem**,—as if the *state* would be held responsible, in spite of the explanation in § 7, *nihil...consilio*.

9. **ad diem**,—'at the (appointed) day.' **inter**,—'between.' **dat**,—'appoints.' **qui aestiment...constituant**,—compare on *qui doceant*, § 7.

N.B.—Choice of opening words of each section. [Generally in Caesar, the first words of a sentence form a connecting link, by beginning the new sentence with something known to us from the preceding one.] Method of dating years among the Romans. Caesar's

jurisdiction and duties. Various uses of *impero* and *jubeo*. [Note especially the infin. w. *impero* in § 3. This in Caesar and Cicero is found only w. the pass. or depon. infin.] *Quam possum* w. the

superlative. [In this idiom *possum* is as often omitted by Caesar as expressed.] Syntax of *curo* and gerundive. The various uses

of the relative. [In § 1 the relative clause is farther from the antecedent than usual. Omission of antecedent, § 2, but not § 4. Co-ordinating relative, § 7. With subjunctive of purpose, §§ 7 and 9.]

Use of *eo* anticipating a *quod* clause, § 2. [So *hoc*. This is found chiefly with comparatives or words implying a comparison; it seems in such cases to be an abl. of measure of difference, approaching, it not finally identical with, the abl. of cause.] *Paratus* w. infin.

§ 7. [Less common than with *ad* and gerund or gerundive. Caesar

has it also w. *ut* and subj.] *Maribus*, § 2. [This form is nowhere else found except from *mas*.] *Ut* w. indic. *Nihil earum rerum*, where *nullam* might have been expected. [Probably due to the habitual use in Latin of the neuter = *res* especially in nom. and acc.]) *Dies*, feminine, § 8. Various uses of *ad*. Agreement of attribute with words of different gender and number, *transportandam*. § 2 [RC.p.118.c.1. HF.p.253.x.4.]

2-5. *The fleet and the army are gathered for the passage. Caesar goes to the country of the Treveri and prevents a revolt by Indutiomarus and his party.*

CAP II.

1. *confectis, peractis*,—App.5.a. *ad exercitum*,—in the country of the Belgae. *proficiscitur*,—This was in the spring.

2. *circuitis*,—trans. as in App.5.a.iii., 'he visits...and finds.' *studio*,—belongs to *instructas*; trans. after *invenit*, which is pres. not perf. *in summa inopia*,—('although) amidst, etc.,' or freely 'although there was.' *sescentas*,—with *naves*, which is to be repeated with *longas*. *cujus*,—'which,' ignoring the case, for which see N. B. below.

neque multum, etc.,—lit. 'and that it is not far from this point that they cannot, etc.,' there being a redundant negative; freely 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; for *abesse* see App.34.a. *diebus*,—time within which.

3. *Collandatis*,—more emphatic than *laudatis*; to be taken also w. *iis*. *praefnerant*,—from *praesum*. *quid fieri velit*,—'what he wishes done,' lit. 'to be done.' For *quid fieri seu* App.34.a; for *velit* (from *volo*) App.31. (RC.99.d. HF.176.2.)

omnes,—understand *naves*. *portum Itium*,—the exact locality is unknown; probably it was Boulogne. *quo ex portu*,—App.11.d.ii. *esse*,—'that there was,' App.34. *millium passuum*,—lit. 'thousands of paces'; the words are not in agreement, App.2.d. *continenti*,—abl. (RC.p.41. note.)

huic rei,—‘for this purpose,’ *i.e.* for ensuring the safe-bringing of the fleet to the appointed place. **quod militum**,—‘what force,’ *lit.*? App.2.*d.*

4. **neque...veniebant**,—‘did not come.’ **concilia**,—from several passages it seems that Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. **imperio**,—App.3.*b.*

N.B.—Various ways of rendering the abl. absol. The syntax of *cujus*, § 2. [Two explanations are given: one that it is for *quod*, but attracted by the case of the antecedent *generis*; the other, the more likely, that there is an ellipse of *generis naves*. Attraction of the case of a relative is very rare in Latin, and is found nowhere else in Caesar.] The phrase *neque multum abesse ab eo quin*, § 2. [The chief peculiarity of the phrase is the repetition of the negative idea. The phrase, without *ab eo*, occurs also in Bk.III.18.4, and is not uncommon in Latin; but the addition of *ab eo* makes the use of *quin*, not *ut*, seem unusually irregular.] Repetition of *portu* in § 3. [A sacrifice of elegance to clearness. RC.93.vi.] Partitive gen. with neuters, *passuum, militum*, § 3. [RC.81.b. BA.294.] Genitive of characteristic, *generis* § 2, *millium* § 3. Use of tenses. [Historical present throughout, interrupted by perfect *reliquit*, § 3. Imperfect for habitual action, § 4.] Difference in the nature and syntax of the two clauses, *quid velit, quod visum est*, § 3. [RC.99.*d.e.* BA.176. H.529.II.5.1.]

CAP. III.

1. **Haec**,—*i.e.* of the Treveri, just mentioned. **plurimum**, adverb. **equitatu**,—RC.85.*d.* **supra**,—Bk.III.11.1. speaks of the ‘Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.’ The last words of c.2. show why this closeness to the Rhine was of importance.

2. **inter se**,—‘with each other.’ *lit.*?

3. **e**,—App.6. **alter**,—freely ‘the latter,’ *lit.*? Cingetorix was his rival’s son-in-law. **de...adventu cognitum est**,—‘the approach...was learned,’ *lit.*? App.24. **se futuros**,—App.31.*a.c.*; so *defectos*. **in officio**,—‘true to their

allegiance,' lit.? *amicitia*, etc.—'friendship with' not 'of.' *quaque*,—two words; *quae*= 'what,' lit.? *gererentur*,—App.31. (RC.99.d. HF.176.2.)

4. *cogere*,—depending on *instituit*, and connected by *-que* with *parare*. *per*,—'by reason of.' *in*,—'in,' lit.? *his abditis*,—App.5.a.

ingenti magnitudine,—' (was) of vast extent (and)'; (RC. 85.c. HF.131.9.) *medios*,—trans. by 'midst of.'

5. *ex*,—see on *e*, § 3. *et...et*,—'both...and,' or 'partly... partly.' *familiaritate*,—compare on *amicitia*, § 3. *de suis rebus petere*,—'seek their own advantage,' lit.? *privatim*,—the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. *civitati*,—trans. by 'for'; opposed to *suis privatim rebus*. *possent*,—App.31. (RC.99.g.i.)

veritus,—'fearing,' App.37.a. end. *ne...desereretur*,—'lest he should,' or 'that he might,' etc. (RC.II.154. HF.185. 3.4.)

6. *Sese*,—with *noluisse*; App.34. Supply 'saying' or 'who say' before these words. *ideirco*,—explained by *quo... laberetur*.

quo,—'that,' w. clause of purpose, App.29.a. (RC.II.26. HF.183.5.) *discessu*,—'on the departure.' Abl. of time when (with causal idea also). *ne...laberetur*,—'lest...should, etc.'

7. *si...permitteret*,—App.32. (RC.99.h.iii. HF.209.2.) *venturum*, *permissurum*,—App.34.c. *suas*, *civitatis*,—both modify *fortunas*. *ejus*,—App.12.b.N.B. *fildei*,—dat.

N.B.—Abl. of specification, § 1, and of characteristic, § 4. Use of *ex* for partitive gen. §§ 3.5. *Simul atque* and *posteaquam* w. perf. indic. *Abdere* with *in* and *aeus*. [The *aeus*. is due to the implied idea of motion towards (in order to hide).] *Quoniam* and subj. [The reason is regarded as one existing in the minds of the leading men.] Subj. of purpose, w. *ne*, *quo*, and verbs of fearing, §§ 5.6.

Abrupt introduction of indirect narration, § 6. [It is felt that sufficient indication is given by *legatos mittit*.] Indirect narration, §§ 6.7. [Use of *se*, *suis* and *is*: direct form of *si permitteret... venturum*; compare conditional clauses in c.1 § 8.] Inelegant repetition of *permitteret...permissurum* with different meanings, § 7.

CAP. IV.

1. **qua de causa**,—‘for what reason.’ **dicerentur**,—App. 31. (RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.), so *deterreret*. **quaeque**,—two words, *quae* agreeing with *res*. **instituto**,—‘original,’ lit.?

comparatis,—w. preceding clause; App.5.*a.*; trans. by ‘when.’

2. **in iis**,—‘among them.’ **filio**,—in apposition with *his*. **evocaverat**,—*i.e.* Caesar. **consolatus** (*est*),—because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen. **uti maneret**,—App.29.*b.* (RC.99.*a.*2. HF.181.3.)

3. **hos**,—*i.e.* the *principibus*, who had previously favored Indutiomarus. **quod**,—conj. **eum...tum**,—‘not only... but also.’ **merito...fieri**,—‘that he (Caesar) was doing as he (Cingetorix) deserved,’ lit. ‘that it was being done by him according to his desert.’

magni interesse,—‘that it was of great importance.’ **ejus...ejus**,—‘of one whose’; trans. relative clause immediately after *ejus*. **suos**,—referring to *ejus*, not to *se*. **auctoritatem valere**,—‘that the influence should be great,’ an infin. clause subject of *interesse*. **tam**,—better omitted in trans., lit.? **perspexisset**,—App.31. (RC.99.*g.*iii. HF.198.4.)

4. **Id factum**,—explained by *suam...minui*, ‘that...should be lessened.’ **qui faisset**,—‘whereas (or while) he had been.’ (RC.99.*g.*iii. HF.198.4.) **animo**,—trans. by ‘of.’ (RC.85.*c.* HF.131.9.) **hoc dolore**,—‘at this grievance.’ (RC.85.*m.* HF.71.3.)

N.B.—Position of the word *Caesar*. [The choice of introductory words is in Caesar determined by principles of clearness and continuity rather than of emphasis. When there is a change of subject, the reader is made aware of it from the first, even if the verb comes quite late in the sentence.] Position of abl. absol. clause. [Generally these precede as in §§2 and 3; the arrangement in §1, *omnibus...comparatis* is very rare.] Use of *res* in §1. [*Omnibus rebus* is the regular abl. of *omnia*; *quae res* for neut. *quae* seems intended for greater clearness after *qua de causa*.] Various phrases with *in officio*, [w. *manere* §1, *continere* c.3. §6, *esse* c.3. §3; also *permanere*, VI.8.9.]

The abl. absol. and the accus. in the same sentence referring to the same persons, § 3. [This rare construction is not to be imitated in prose composition (RC.II.52.c. BA.422.b.), although it occurs not infrequently in Caesar; cf. c.41.6, VI.4.4. and 43.1. Often added emphasis is gained by this construction.] Use of *cum...tum*, =

'both...and,' or 'not only...but also.' [In this usage *cum* has no effect on the mood of the verb.] Impersonal use of verbs, *fieri*, *interesse*, § 3.

Use of pronouns in § 3, [especially *suos* referring to *ejus*.] Gen. of price, *magnū*. [The gen. is used only where the value is given generally, the abl. where it is specified; the gen. also is used more freely with verbs of valuing than with verbs of buying, etc.]

Substantival use of infin. [*valere* § 3, *minui* § 4.] *Quam plurimum*. [See N.B. to c.1.] Causal relative clauses. [*perspexisset* § 3, *fuisse* § 4. In the former case the subj. seems to be quite independent of the connection with *arbitratur*.]

CAP. V.

2. **rejectas**,—trans. as if it were *rejectas esse et*, see App.37. N.B. **atque**,—in Eng. 'but' might be used, lit.? **eodem**,—adverb; so in § 3. **erant profectae**=*profectae erant*. **ad**,—'for'; App.39.a. **omnibus rebus**,—'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. **numero**,—abl., 'in number.' (RC.85.d.) **millium quattuor**,—depending on *equitatus*; trans. as if in agreement; (RC.81.e. HF.130.8.) **principes**,—subject of *convenerunt* understood.

4. **relinquere**,—with *decreverat*. **obsidum loco**,—'as hostages,' lit.? **cum abesset**,—'while he was absent,' or 'in his absence'; lit. 'when he should be absent.'

N.B.—The indic. in relative clauses dependent on acc. and infin. [*factae erant*, *erant profectae*, § 2; these are explanatory additions of the writer, not given as part of the information obtained by Caesar.]

Asyndeton with *reliqui*, §§ 2.4. [This is quite common in cases of contrast].

Loco and gen. to express capacity or character or purpose. [The dat. of purpose has a very similar force, but is used with semi-abstract nouns (chiefly in sing.) not with personal nouns. *Numero*, *nomine*, *modo*, with the gen. are also used in much the same way.]

Imperf. subj. used of future time viewed from the past, *abesset* § 4.

6, 7. *Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, refuses to accompany Caesar to Britain, and tries to keep other Gauls from going. Failing in this, he leaves the camp secretly, but is overtaken and slain.*

CAP. VI.

1. **Erat**,—App.1. N.B. **ante**,—in Bk.I. c.3. and 16–20. Dumnorix had four years before aroused hostility to Caesar among the Aedui, but had been pardoned for his brother's sake. He had however been warned to avoid all suspicion for the future and had been since carefully watched by Caesar's agents. **dictum est**,—impersonal use, 'mention has been made'; or freely 'we have spoken.'

eum,—supply *esse*, depending on *cognoverat* : App.34. **animi**,—'of pride' ; (RC.81.e. HF.130.7.8.)

2. **Accedebat huc quod**,—'besides this' ; lit. 'to this there came also (was added) the fact that' ; (RC.109.i. HF.181.2.) **sibi**,—'on him.' **deferri**,—notice the tense ; App.34.d.

quod dictum,—'this statement.' App.11.b. **neque**,—'but yet...not.' **recusandi...causa**,—App.39.

3. **Id**,—both the statement of Dumnorix and its effect upon the Aedui. **factum**,—supply *esse*.

Ille,—i.e. Dumnorix ; for trans. see App.18.b. **omnibus**,—'all manner of.' **petere contendit**,—'sought earnestly,' lit. ? **ut...relinqueretur**,—App.29.b. **insuetus**,—'being unaccustomed to, etc.' **timeret, diceret**,—App.31. (RC.99 g.i. HF.193.2.) **sese**,—subject of *impediri*.

4. **id**,—his request. **sibi**,—'him,' indirect obj. **spe adempta**,—trans. by clause with 'as.' **uti...remanerent**,—App.29.b.

5. **territare**,—the historical infin. ; App.36. (RC.101.d. HF.216.3.n.2) **fieri**,—depending on the idea of saying implied in *metu territare*, so *esse* ; in trans. supply 'saying.' **nobilitate**,—trans. abl. by 'of.' (RC.85.h. HF.158.2.) **ut...spoliaretur**,—App.30.a.

quos...vereretur,—to be rendered after the clause beginning with *hos*, to which *quos* refers; for subj. see RC.99.e. HF. 206.4. **ut...traductos necaret**,—‘to carry over...and kill’; lit.? (RC.II.52.c. HF.219.2.a.e.)

6. **reliquis**,—i.e. all others but himself. **interponere, poscere**,—historical infin.; see on *territare* § 5. **quod**,—rel. pron. **ut...administrarent**,—App.29.b. **intellexissent**,—App.31.

N.B.—Repetition in climax, *cupidum* and *magni* § 1. Position of *in primis* § 1. [It evidently modifies *constituerat* not *hunc* or the *quod* clause.] The impersonal use of *accedebat*. [Virtually *accedo* is the passive of *addo*. Its subject is the *quod* clause following.] Use of *ille* to indicate a change of subject, § 3. Relative and *quod* clauses in indirect or virtual indirect narrations, §§ 3.5.6. [The subj. *diceret* is very peculiar; see RC.II.216, and 220.b. BA.448.] Various uses of infin. in §§ 4.5. [The historical infin. which generally describes rapid or excited movements, is here quite proper in view of the vehement energy of Dumnorix; generally several such infinitives occur together. For the infin. *esse* and *fieri*, cf. N.B. to c.3. § 6.] Litotes or understatement in *non sine causa*, § 5. [Two negatives are often more forcible than a single affirmative.] The circumlocution *fieri ut spoliaretur*. [This differs somewhat from *spoliari* in that it refers more directly to the way in which events were shaping.] Explanatory *ut* clause, *ut...necaret*, § 5. Position of relative clause *quos...hos omnes*, § 6. [The relative clause usually precedes in similar cases, where emphasis is desired.] *Vereor* w. infin. [In c.3. § 5. *ne* w. subj. is used. Notice the difference of meaning.] Clause with *ut* and subj., after *jusjurandum poscere*. [The subj. not the acc. and infin. is used, because the writer has in view that this is a demand for a pledge, not the statement of a pledge.] Tense of *deferabantur*. [He was not merely informed from different sources, but was given this information repeatedly.]

CAP. VII.

1. **tantum dignitatis**,—App.2.d. **Aeduae**,—adj. with *civitati*. **coercendum**,—supply *esse*; App.41. **rebus**,—trans. ‘by...means.’ **posset**,—App.31; the subject is Caesar. For the mood see RC.99.e. HF.203.4.

2. **longius**,—‘still farther,’ i.e. that had yet appeared.

ejus,—App.12.*b*. N.B.; referring to Dumnorix. **prospiciendum**,—depending on *statuebat*, understood; here used impersonally, see App.24. **quid nocere**,—‘do any harm’; for accus. *quid*, see RC.83.*e*. **sibi**,—refers to Cæsar; **posset**,—the subj. is Dumnorix (or possibly *amentia*); for the mood see RC.99.*a*. HF.183.2.

3. **commoratus**,—‘while waiting,’ or ‘as he was waiting.’ **partem**,—App.4.*c*. **ut contineret**,—App.29.*b*: so *cognosceret*.

4. **milites**,—here meaning the infantry alone.

5. **impeditis**,—‘while...were occupied’; (RC.85.*a*.) **insciente Cæsare**,—‘without Caesar’s knowledge,’ lit.? App.5.*a*.N. **domum**,—‘(for) home’; for acc. see RC.II.93.*a*. HF.85.1.

6. **omnibus rebus**,—‘everything (else)’; lit.? **insequendum**,—App.40; trans. by Eng. infin.

7. **faciat**,—‘offers,’ or ‘should offer.’ **nihil**,—object of *facturum*; **hunc**,—‘he.’ subj. of *facturum*. **se absente**,—‘in his (*i.e.* Caesar’s) absence.’ For construction see App.5.*a*.N. **qui**,—‘seeing that he’; compare on *perspexisset*, c.4 § 3. **praesentis**,—‘in his presence,’ lit., ‘(of him) while being present,’ depending on *imperium*.

8. **Ille**,—as in c.6. § 3. **enim**,—‘now,’ or ‘in fact.’ **manu**,—*i.e.* with the weapon in his hand. **liberum liberaeque civitatis**,—two predicates to *se esse*; with the gen. may be supplied in trans. ‘a citizen.’

9. **ut**,—‘as.’ **erat imperatum**,—impersonally, App.24. **omnes**,—predicatively, ‘all together,’ ‘in a body.’

N.B.—*Tantum*, used, like *tam* c.4. § 3., absolutely, without *ut* clause following. Various uses of gerundive, §§ 1.2.6. Impersonal passive, [*prospiciendum* § 2, *erat imperatum* § 9.] The use of the indefinite *quis* [§ 2, here in the adverbial accus.] Perf. partic. of certain deponent verbs with the force of a present partic.; [*arbitratus* § 7 is very common and may perhaps be held to have a true perfect force; *commoratus* § 3 is a much more peculiar example. See RC.102.*c*.vi.] Use of *milites* in sense of *pedites*. [*Exercitus* and *legiones* are used in the same way. The abl. absol. construction, [With an adj. § 5; with the pres. part. § 7; in § 6 an abl. absol. is

separated by the subject of the sentence, *Caesar*, from two other abl. absol. phrases which are co-ordinate with each other, but which form the beginning of the set of consequences flowing from the first clause. This passage illustrates too the custom in Latin of expressing the first of a series of actions by participial phrases, only the last of the series being expressed by principal verbs.] *Impero* w. infin.: [see N.B. to c.1.] Pres. subj. in indirect narration for fut. ind. of direct conditional clause, § 7. *Qui* and causal subjunctive; [see N.B. to *perspexisset*, c.4. § 3.] Force of frequentative, *clamitans* § 8. [The addition of *saepe* shows that it is not always *oft-repeated* action that is expressed by a frequentative; here as in c.6. § 4, *territare*, it is *vehement* action.] Predicative partitive gen. *civitatis*, § 8. Use of *ille*; [see N.B. to c.6.] *Statuo* and gerundive. [This is rather commoner in Caesar than the infin.; with *constituo* however the infin. is almost invariably used.] Comparative with standard of comparison to be supplied from the context; [*longius* § 2; farther (than had yet been the case).]

8. *The passage to Britain and the landing*

CAP. VIII.

1. **Labieno**,—Labienus, Caesar's chief officer, was chosen because of the dangerous condition of affairs in Gaul. **ut tueretur**,—App. 29. *b.* **quaque**,—two words. **pro tempore et pro re**,—‘as time and circumstances suggested,’ lit. ‘in accordance with, etc.’

2. **ipse**,—as opposed to Labienus. **pari...quem**,—‘the same...as.’ **ad**,—‘about.’

provectus,—trans. as if *provectus est*, supplying ‘but’ before the next clause. **intermisso**,—‘having fallen.’ **longius**,—‘too far.’ **orta luce**,—‘at sunrise,’ lit.? **sub sinistra**,—‘on the left hand.’ He set out with a light S.W. wind, but a current from the N.E. changed his course to the N.W. When the wind died the current had also changed to one setting N.E., so that in the night the ships drifted out of the Channel into the North Sea.

3. **aestus**, etc.,—in the morning the current shifted to the

S.W. Caesar took advantage of this, and as the tide would not carry him quite to his landing place, he had the sailors take to the oars as well.

qua,—adverb. **superiore aestate**,—with *cognoverat*. This landing place is described in Bk.IV.23. as on a clear and open shore.

4. **Qua**,—App.11.*b.*; with *re*. **laudanda**,—‘deserving of praise’; (RC.104. HF.172.2.) **vectoriis**,—an adj. with *navigiis*; abl. of means. **gravibusque**,—‘and that too (*or* and besides) heavily-laden’; the transports would always be slow, but more so when heavily laden.

non intermisso,—freely, ‘without relaxing’; App.5.*a.*end. **adaequarunt**,=*adaequaverunt*. (RC.66.)

5. **Accessum est...navibus**,—freely, ‘the ships drew near (or reached)’; lit.? App.24. **navibus**,—abl. of means. **meridiano tempore**,—express by one word in English. **neque hostis**,—‘but no enemy.’ **loco**,—referring to *eam partem insulae*, § 3. **est visus**,—‘was in sight’; so in § 6.

6. **ut**,—‘as.’ **cum**,—‘although.’ (RC.99.*i.iii.* HF.204.5.) **perterritae...discesserant**,—trans. as in App.37. N.B. **quae cum annotinis**,—‘of which, including those of the previous year’; *annotinis* (*navibus*) are the same as those called *veteres* in c.1. §1; *quae* is really nomin.

quisque,—‘each,’ probably restricted to rich officers and Gallic nobles. **sui commodi**,—‘for his own convenience.’ (RC.II.117.*c.*) **amplius**,—‘more than.’ **in loca**,—see on c.3. §4.

N.B.—Two successive abl. absol. phrases unconnected, § 1. [This is the regular arrangement where the phrases refer to different times. Contrast c.7 §6.] Variation in form of abl. of *contineus*, §§ 1.2. [Elsewhere Caesar has always *-i*.] *Par qui=idem qui*, § 2. [The usual construction is with *atque*, as in c.13. § 2.] Intensive *-que* [=and that too, § 4.] Impersonal passive construction. [*accessum est*, § 5. RC.96.*b.* BA.217.218.] *Cum* concessive. The phrase *suus quisque*. [This is the regular order; cf.c.31. § 4.] The phrase *sui commodi*. [The gen. in the sense of *as regards*, with

regard to, is common enough with nouns, but the use with a verb, as here, is very irregular. Some editions have *causa* also, but it must not be supposed that with the simple gen. any such ellipse is to be supplied.] The use of *amplius* with numerals, [§ 6. RC. II. 123. c. 2. BA. 318. Obs. H. 417. N. 2. AG. 247. c. So *plus*, *minus*, and *longius* are used.]

9-11. *Caesar advancing into the interior captures a stronghold of the Britons, but is compelled to return to the coast by the news of the serious damage caused to his fleet by a storm. After making necessary arrangements, he once more sets out against the enemy.*

CAP. IX.

1. *castris*,—‘for the camp.’ *ubi . . cognovit*,—freely, ‘and learning.’ *quo in loco*,—trans. by one word. *consediscent*,—RC. 99. d. HF. 176. 2. *cohortibus decem*,—doubtless chosen from different legions. *relictis*,—trans. by principal verb. App. 5. a. iii. *qui . . essent*,—‘to protect the ships,’ lit.? App. 3. c. (RC. 82. c. HF. 134. 1.) For the subjunctive see RC. 99. a. i. HF. 184. 1. *de tertia vigilia*,—‘early in the third watch,’ i. e. soon after midnight; *de* implies that a part of the watch has passed.

eo minus,—‘the less.’ *navibus*,—‘for, etc.’ (RC. 82. b.) *molli*,—‘easy’; some think this means ‘shingly,’ others ‘gently rising.’ *relinquebat*,—trans. the tense accurately. *praesidio navibusque*,—dat. of interest; see on *navibus* above. *praefecit*,—connected by *et* with *contendit* not with *relinquebat*; trans. as if it were a new sentence, omitting *et*.

3. *Illi*,—App. 18. b. *equitatu*,—‘with, etc.’; (RC. 85. e. i.) *ex loco superiore*,—giving their position and belonging to the whole clause, not with *prohibere*. The north bank of the river was higher than the south, and this gave the Britons an advantage.

4. *egregie*,—with *munitum*. *et...et*,—‘both....and.’
munitum,—‘fortified,’ used as an adj. with *locum*.

ut videbantur,—‘as it seemed,’ lit.?

6. *ingredi*,—‘from entering,’ lit.? *prohibebant*,—note the tense; App. 26. d. (RC. 97. b. ii. HF. 216. 3. x. 1.)

7. *testudine*,—the *testudo* was formed by the shields being held above the soldiers’ heads so as to overlap and form a continuous cover which received its name from its resemblance to a tortoise shell. In this case the *testudo* was formed to enable the materials for a mound to be brought up under shelter. *ad*,—‘by or close to.’ *paucis*,—‘but a few,’ emphatic from position.

8. *eos*,—i.e. the soldiers, object of *vetuit*. *fugientes*,—object of *prosequi*; freely, ‘the fugitives,’ lit. ‘those fleeing.’ *longius*,—as in c. 8. § 2. *et...et*,—as in § 4. *munitioni*,—trans. dat. by ‘for.’ See *Intro.* p. xix. d.

N.B.—The dative of purpose, [alone §§ 1. 8., and with the dat. of interest, § 1.] *Ubi* and perf. indic. = *cum* and pluperf. subj. [*Cum* is used far oftener than *ubi* by Caesar, while *postquam* he scarcely uses at all.] Position of *relictis*, § 1. [It is seldom that Caesar, as here, places a partic. agreeing with two nouns between them.] *Eo minus quod*. [See N.B. to c. 1. on *eo magis quod*.] Omission of *cum* with *equitatu*, § 3. [So generally only when a march (or similar movement) is mentioned, and when, as is not the case here, there is an adjectival modifier.] The personal construction with *videor*. [The Romans prefer in the pres. tenses to use this verb personally, where possible, though in many cases English would use the impersonal verb. RC. II. 14. BA. 43.] Construction of verbs with *prohibeo*. [Caesar has only the infin.] Conative imperfect, *prohibebant*, § 3. Position of abl. absol. [Like all participial phrases, the abl. absol. is usually at the beginning of a clause, expressing preliminary and generally subordinate ideas. The arrangement at the end of § 7 is unusual.] *Pauci* = only a few, § 7. [*Pauci* is regularly contrasted with *multi*.] The substantive use of the pres. partic., *fugientes*, § 8. [Latin does not in such cases use *is* with the partic., as the English equivalent might suggest. RC. II. 14. b. BA. 73. 74.] Comparative with standard of comparison to be supplied from the context; [*longius*, § 8 = farther (than was needed to ensure their being driven off or perhaps than was prudent); so *longius*, c. 8. § 2. = farther (than was desirable.)]

CAP. X.

1. **Postridie ejus diei**,—‘on the very next day,’ lit. ‘on the morrow of that day.’ (RC.81.i.) **in expeditionem**,—‘on (lit. for) an expedition’; strictly, a rapid march of troops in light marching order. **ut persequerentur**,—App.29.b.

2. **His progressis**,—trans. by ‘when’ clause, replacing *cum* of next clause by ‘and.’ **aliquantum itineris**,—App.2.d. **extremi**,—‘(only) the last,’ i.e. of the troops sent out, not of the enemy. The *cum* clause simply defines more exactly the previous abl. absol. clause.

qui nuntiarent,—App.29.b. **coorta**,—trans. as in App.5. a.iii. **neque...neque**,—‘not...and not,’ lit. ‘neither...nor.’ **subsisterent, possent**,—App.31. (RC.99.g.i. HF. 198.2.)

3. **eo concurso**,—‘the collision thus resulting,’ lit. ‘that collision’; *eo* refers to what is implied in the words *neque...possent*. **incommodum**,—a somewhat mild word is used, as is often the case where Caesar is speaking of Roman reverses.

N.B.—The redundant phrase, *postridie ejus diei*. *Milites* in sense of *pedites*, [cf.c.7. § 4.] The clause *eos qui fugerant* compared with *fugientes*, c.9. § 8. [An illustration of one effect of the absence of a perf. partic. act. in Latin.] Partitive gen. with neuter, [*aliquantum*, § 2. RC.81.b.1. BA.291.] Restrictive force of adjectives in emphatic position, [*extremi*, § 2; cf. *pauci*, c.9. § 7.] *Qui* with subj. of purpose. *Quod* with subj. of reported speech.

CAP. XI.

1. **in itinere resistere**,—‘to halt on their march.’ They were to give up the pursuit, but were not to return to the camp. [Another reading is *itinere desistere*.]

2. **quac**,—‘as,’ lit.? **coram**,—freely, ‘with his own eyes.’ **sic**,—‘of such a sort,’ summing up the idea of the previous words, *eadem*, etc.

amissis,—‘with the loss of, etc.’; lit.? **reliquae posse viderentur**,—‘it seemed that the rest could,’ lit. ‘the rest seemed to be able.’

3. **fabros**,—doubtless such skilled men as might happen to have enlisted into the legions.

4. **ut instituat**,—App.29.*b*. **quam plurimas posset**,—see on c.1. § 1. **iis legionibus**,—‘by means of,’ or ‘with the aid of,’ etc.

5. **laboris**,—stronger than *operae*, as *ac* shows. For the case see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7. **commodissimum**,—‘the best thing.’ **naves**,—acc. subject of *subduci* and *conjugi*; trans. by ‘for.’ App.35.*a*.

6. **ne nocturnis quidem**, etc.,—lit. ‘not even the night-time being given up for, etc.’; freely, ‘not allowing the labor to be given up even in the night-time.’

7. **quas**,—‘as.’ **praesidio navibus**,—as in c.9. § 1. **eodem**,—adv.; for the place meant see § 1.

8. **summa**,—a noun in abl. absol. with *permissa*. **summa imperii**, etc.,—‘the chief command and oversight of the war,’ lit. ‘the chief part of the command’; *administrandi* goes with *belli* only. **administrandi**,—App.40.

fluvius,—acc., obj. of *dividit*, whose subj. is *flumen*; trans. by change of voice, see App.23. **a mari**,—*i.e.* from the place where Caesar had landed.

9. **Huic cum reliquis**, etc.,—freely, ‘between this man and the other states there had arisen, etc.’; lit.? for case of *huic* see RC.82.*b*. **hunc**,—‘him’; App.13. **bello**,—dat. (RC.II.69. HF.120.1.)

N.B.—Use of *legiones* = *pedites*, § 1; [cf. *milites*, c.7. § 4. and c.10. § 1.]

Difference between *revocari* and *resistere*. [The former implies that they were to cease pursuing the enemy, the latter that they were to remain where they were instead of returning to the shore. Another common reading is *itinere desistere*, the abl. of separation.]

Revertor and *redeo*. [The distinction commonly made is certainly not observed in §§ 1. and 7.]

Use of *ipse*, § 1. [The contrast is peculiar as being between the subject of one clause and the object of

another which has the same subject ; so often, as in c.1. § 5., c.2. § 4. Notice also the asyndeton, or absence of connectives, common with *ipse*.] Personal construction with *viderentur*, § 2. [See N.B. to c.9. § 4.]

Abl. absol. with concessive force, *amissis*, § 2. Subjunctive of substantival clause of purpose, *instituat*, § 4 ; [a rare construction with *scribo*. RC.39.a.2. HF.181.3. IL.498.1. AG.331.]

Abl. of means, *legionibus*, [rare with personal nouns.] Mood and tense of *sunt*, § 4. [The mood shows that the words are not conceived as part of the instructions quoted ; the tense is due to the influence of the historical present, with which often, as here, both primary and secondary sequence are found combined.] Predicate gen. of characteristic, § 5.

Intensive force of *ac*, § 5, introducing a stronger word. Substantival use of infin., with subject accus.

[The infin. when so used in Eng. has no such subject.] Use of *ne quidem*, and position of the emphasized word. Position of *imperium* in §§ 8 and 9. [In § 8 it precedes, in § 9 it follows a more general term. The effect thus is, in § 8, 'the command and in general the oversight, etc.' ; in § 9, 'the whole war and in particular the command.']

Agreement of relative *quod*, § 8. [As a rule the relative agrees in gender with a predicate noun rather than with its antecedent.]

12-14. *Description of Britain and its inhabitants.*

CAP. XII.

1. **ab iis quos...dicunt**,—'by those of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born, etc.,' or 'who were born, etc., as they themselves state is the tradition' ; *quos* is the subject of *natos (esse)* depending on *proditum (esse)*, which is impersonal and depends on *dicunt*. App.34. [Another reading for *ipsi* is *ipsa*, agreeing with *insula*.] **memoria**,—abl. of means.

2. **maritima pars**,—subj. of *incolitur* understood ; so in English. **praedae**,—with *causa*. **inferendi**,—App.40.

qui omnes,—'all of whom' ; lit.? **iis**,—trans. as if it were *earum*, agreeing with *civitatum*. **quibus ex civitatibus**,—the noun may be omitted in trans. **erti**,—trans. part. as in App.37. N.B.

3. **est**,—App.1. N.B. **creberrima**,—supply *sunt* from *est*. **Gallicis**,—supply *aedificiis*; 'those of the Gauls.' All that Caesar tells us elsewhere of these is that they were thatched and generally closely surrounded by trees.

4. **aut...aut**,—'partly...partly,' lit. 'either...or.' **taleis**,—these were doubtless used as small change. For the abl. see RC.II.65. **HF.116**. **ad**,—'to' or 'according to.' **pro**,—'as.'

5. **plumbum album**,—the tin mines of Cornwall, which had been worked long before Caesar's time, are here referred to. Caesar, whose geographical statements are often astray, seems to have mistaken the distant west, of which he heard, for an inland district. **ferrum**,—iron was from an early time mined in the south of England, though now chiefly in the north. **ejus**,—referring to *ferrum*. Iron, the hardest metal to work, has always been the last to be mined. **importato**,—the emphatic word of the clause.

enjusque,—from *quisque*; freely, 'every.' **praeter**,—'except.' Caesar's statement here seems to be quite incorrect. To obviate this, some trans. *praeter* 'besides,' which seems unnatural.

6. **fas**,—supply *esse*. **haec**,—'these,' neut. plur., referring to the animals just mentioned. **animi**,—'amusement.' **Loca**,—freely, 'the climate.' **remissioribus**,—abl. absol. App. 5. a. N.

N.B.—Order of corresponding phrases, *pars interior, maritima pars*, § 1. [This inverted order or chiasmus is common in case of contrast, RC.110.k., though Caesar's simple style has few examples of rhetorical devices.]

Difference between Latin and English usage in parenthetical clauses like 'as they say.' [Latin avoids these. RC. II.18. BA.32.b.]

Participle carrying chief weight of sentence, [orti, § 2. This is quite unusual in Caesar's prose. The peculiarity consists chiefly in the relative being closely connected with the participle rather than with the main verb. It seems due to the Roman habit of expressing preliminary actions by the participle.]

The phrase *bello illato*. [It is only by inference that this case can be held to mean 'after the war was finished'; the phrase refers directly to *belli inferendi* and must have a similar meaning.]

Order of *aere utuntur importato*. [Latin has such freedom of arrangement by reason of its inflections that the order in which it is desirable to introduce ideas, has not as in English any bearing upon the syntactical form of expression. RC.110.*a*. The effect here is 'the bronze they used is imported.'] *Quisque* = *omnis*, § 5. [It is used with this force in this connection only. Elsewhere it regularly means 'each by himself, each taken separately.'] Neuter used to refer to nouns of different gender, [*haec*, § 6. This is common enough in the case of things without life, but here it is peculiarly used of living things.] -*Que* explanatory, [*animi voluptatisque*; where the first word is used in a rare sense and is made more definite by the addition by means of -*que*. *Animi causa* alone occurs in Bk. VII.77.10.] Repetition of antecedent in relative clause. [*quibus ex civitatibus*, § 2. Cf. c.2. § 3. and c.13. § 3. This repetition, which is most frequent with *pars*, *res*, *locus* and *dies*, is due to a desire for clearness, even at the expense of elegance.]

CAP. XIII.

1. *natura*,—'in shape,' lit. 'by nature.' *triquetra*,—with *insula*; supply *est*. *eujus*,—'and . . of it,' lit. 'of which.'

alter,—'one,' corresponding to *inferior*, and subject of *spectat*. *ad*,—'at.' *appelluntur*,—'land,' 'put in,' lit. 'are brought to land.'

2. *Alterum*,—supply *latus*, 'the second (side)'; referring to *unum latus* of § 1. *occidentem solem*,—'the west.' Tacitus, a century and a half later, actually states that Britain is between Gaul and Spain.

qua ex parte,—'in this (lit. which) direction.' *dimidio*,—'by half.' (RC.85.*g*. HF.58.6.) *pari spatio*, etc.,—lit. 'of the same interval of crossing as (the crossing) is from Gaul to Britain'; freely, 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain.' *Spatio*, for the abl. see RC.85.*c*. HF.131.9; *transmissus* is gen. depending on *spatio*. Supply *transmissus* as subj. of *est*.

3. *hoc medio cursu*,—'the middle of this passage,' referring to *pari spatio transmissus*. *Mona*,—probably the Isle of Man is meant, although the name afterwards was given to Anglesea.

subjectae,—supply *esse*; ‘to lie close by.’ The reference may be to the Hebrides, or to the Orkney islands. **nonnulli**,—though Caesar was the first Roman to visit Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub**,—‘at the time of.’ **esse**,—the subject is *noctem* not *dies*.

4. **Nos**,—contrasted with *nonnulli*, § 3. **de eo**,—‘about that matter,’ viz. the statement just made. **nisi**,—‘except that.’ **ex aqua**,—‘by water,’ i.e. with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, the only exact means of measuring time mechanically that the Romans had. It was on the principle of the hour glass.

5. **ut fert**, etc.,—‘as their belief goes’; freely, ‘as they believe’; *illorum*, which is emphatic, refers to *nonnulli*, § 3. **millium**,—‘miles’; *passuum* is understood; omit ‘of’ in trans. (RC.81.e.ii. HF.130.7.)

6. **Tertium**,—supply *latus*; see § 2. **est objecta**,—‘lies opposite.’ **angulus**,—the same as the *alter angulus* of § 1. **in longitudinem**,—‘in length.’

7. **vicies centum**,—‘two thousand’; lit.?

N.B.—The Geography of Britain according to Caesar. Prepositional adjectives phrases, rare in Latin. [*Ex Gallia naves*, § 1; *ex aqua mensuris*, § 4. Nouns are joined to each other by prepositions very seldom in Latin, and, as a rule, only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin.] The names of the points of the compass, §§ 1.2.6. Two uses of *alter*, §§ 1.2. [*Alter* means generally ‘one of two’; but it is also used, as in § 2, of the ‘second’ of a series, as here *unum, alterum, tertium*.] Ablative of characteristic, specification, measure of difference. *Par atque*. [See x.b. to c.8. § 2.] Predicate nomin. § 3, and predicate gen. of characteristic, §§ 5.7. *Nos* emphatic. § 4; [in contrast with *nonnulli*; its position gives it further force. RC.89.i. BA.11.a.b. II.446. AG.191.a.] Imperfect tense in § 4; [implying ‘during the whole stay,’ hence with a continuous force which is concealed by the negative.] *Nisi=nisi quod*, § 4. The syntax of *mille* and the phrase *millia passuum*. [The word *passuum* is seldom omitted by Caesar in this phrase, except after the gen. *millium*.]

CAP. XIV.

1. **qui**,—‘those who,’ App. 11 *d.i.*; this relative clause is the subject of *sunt*. **omnis**,—‘entirely,’ lit.?

2. **Interiores plerique**,—‘most of those, etc.’; *plerique* is adj. agreeing with *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte**,—‘on milk,’ lit. ‘by means of’; so *pellibus*, etc., ‘are clothed in.’

hoc,—‘thus,’ lit. ‘by means of this.’ **aspectu**,—‘in appearance.’ (RC. 85. *d.*)

3. **capillo sunt . . . atque omni parte**,—freely, ‘they have,’ etc., lit. ‘they are of long hair,’ etc.; for the abl. see RC. 85. *c.* HF. 131. 9.

4. **Uxores communes**,—accus., object of *habent*. **deni duodenique**,—‘in groups of ten or twelve,’ lit. ‘ten and (in other cases) twelve.’

5. **si qui**,—‘if any,’ the indefin. pron. **habentur liberi**,—‘they are regarded as the children’; *liberi*, predicate nomin. **quo**,—adverb; ‘to whom,’ referring to *eorum*.

N.B.—Emphatic position of *omnis*, § 1. [Cf. *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*, Bk. I. *c.* 1.] Abl. of means, § 2, characteristic, § 3.

• Use of distributive numerals. The phrase *inter se*. [This is the Latin substitute for a reciprocal pronoun. Generally, as here, *inter se* = ‘one another’ with some preposition; cf. *c.* 3. § 2.] *Quis* indefinite. [So in Caesar only after *si* and *ne*, (which include *seu* and *neu*), except that twice it follows *ubi* = whenever.] Use of relative adverbs in place of a relative pronoun with a preposition; [*quo*, § 5 = *ad quos*; so *c.* 13. § 1. and *c.* 21. §§ 2. 3.; cf. *qua*, *c.* 8. § 3 = *in qua*, *unde*, *c.* 35. § 3. = *ex quo*.] Force of *quisque* in § 5. [Here, as in *c.* 8. § 6, the persons referred to are tacitly limited to a certain number suggested by the context, *i.e.* *quisque* = each (of the persons concerned in the matter) not each (of all).]

15–17. *In spite of many losses in slight engagements, the Romans advance inland, and at last inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.*

CAP. XV.

1. *ut*,—here=*ita ut*, 'in such a way that,' or 'so that.' *omnibus partibus*,—'everywhere,' lit.? (RC.85.k.ii.) *fuerint*,—perf. subj; App.30.a.

2. *compluribus*,—*i.e.* of the Britons. *cupidius*,—trans. by 'too.' *ex suis*,—'of their (comrades)'; App.15.c.

3. *illi*,—App.18.b; the Britons. *intermisso spatio*,—'after an interval had elapsed.' *imprudenter*,—render by 'while' clause. *castrorum*,—A camp was made at the end of each day's march. *eos...qui*,—'those...who.' *erant*,—closely with *collocati*, forming pluperfect.

4. *duabusque*, etc.,—trans. by 'when' clause. *subsidio*,—dat. 'to their aid.' (RC.82.c. HF.134.1.) *atque his*,—'and these too.' From this it would appear that the first cohort of a legion was its best.

eum,—'although.' *intermisso*,—trans. by 'leaving.' *inter se*,—to be taken with *intermisso*. *novo*,—shows that these cohorts did not form part of the expedition the year before. *perterritis*,—trans. by 'as' or 'while' clause.

per medios,—'through the interval,' 'between them.' *perruperunt*,—the subj. of the leading verbs is the same throughout the sentence. *inde receperunt*,—the last words of the chapter are against taking this as meaning 'got away,' but seem rather to imply that the enemy was bold enough to charge back through the open space.

5. *Illi*,—as in § 3.

N.B.—*Ut=ita ut*, § 1. [It is very rarely that Caesar uses *ut* consecutive without some introductory word.] Perf. subj. in clause of result, § 1. [This is far rarer than the imperf. and is used chiefly to call attention to the independent fact rather than to dwell on the relation of cause and result. (RC.II.39. BA.113. AG.287.c.r.)] *Cupidius*—too eagerly. [Cf. N.B. to c.9.] Time-relation of participial phrases, § 2. [Generally where two quite unconnected participles are close together they express a succession of events; sometimes these events are related as cause and result as here, in which case 'and

so' may often be used in translating; sometimes they are merely details of acts having a common bearing.] Use of *ille* indicating a change of subject, [§§ 3.5. This is especially common with *illi*—the enemy. In all such cases of course the persons meant have already been mentioned. RC.92.c.] Dative of purpose, § 4. *Atque*, intensive, § 4. Heaping up of participles and dependent clauses in §§ 3.1. [The number of principal clauses will average far higher in English than in Latin. Hence come obvious rules for translation from either language to the other.]

CAP. XVI.

1. **sub oculis...pro castris**,—referring to the engagement described in c.15. §§ 3-5. **dimicaretur**,—‘they were fighting’; impersonal pass.; App.24. **intellectum est**,—on this depends all the rest of the sentence in §§ 1 and 2, through the two infinitive clauses *nostros...esse* and *equites...dimicare*. **nostros**,—as the contrasted *equites*, § 2, shows, this refers to the Roman legionaries. **armorum**,—see Introd. p.xvii.

cedentes,—acc., object of *insequi*; for trans. see App.38. **possent**,—for subj. see RC.99.g.i. HF.206.4.; so *auderent* and § 3 *cederent*, *desilirent*, *contenderent*. **auderent**,—they were used to fighting in solid ranks only, and this was here ineffective. **minus**,—‘not well.’ **ad**,—‘for.’

2. **autem**,—‘while,’ or ‘on the other hand.’ **illi**,—as in c.16. § 3.; App.18.b. **cum**,—‘whenever.’ **nostros**,—here the cavalry.

dispari proelio,—the inequality was not in armor (for the cavalry was composed of Gauls who were probably armed much like the Britons), but from the manner of fighting from chariots, as described more fully in Bk.IV.c.33. The charioteers dismounted and fought on foot among the cavalry; the chariots withdrew a little and, if the Britons were hard pressed, furnished them with a speedy and sure means of retreat. ‘Thus,’ Caesar says, ‘they display in battle the quickness of cavalry and the steadiness of infantry.’

3. **Equestris**,—genitive. **ratio**,—‘regular method.’ **cedentibus**,—as in § 1. Here probably dat. referring to the Romans. The previous words described the danger when the Romans were in pursuit; we are now told that there was as great danger (from the enemy’s chariots and cavalry) when the Romans were withdrawing or retreating as when they were pursuing. **inferebat**,—‘brought.’

4. **Accedebat huc ut**,—‘besides this’; cf. on c.6. § 2. All the following subjunctives depend on *ut*, (RC.99.b. HF.187.1.) **stationes**,—‘outposts,’ ‘relays.’ **alios alii**,—‘one another.’ **integrique**,—‘and so unwearied (men).’

N.B.—*Quod* and *propterea quod*. Substantival use of pres. and perf. participles, §§ 1.3.4. Construction of *cedentibus et insequentibus*, § 3. [A different explanation from that given above is preferred by some editors, viz. that these words refer to the Britons, and are in the abl. absol. (one member of the clause being omitted); i.e. ‘whether the enemy retreated or advanced.’] Construction with *aptus*. [It is generally stated that with persons *aptus* always takes the dat.; here however is an exception.] Use of *illi*, § 2. [Here a sense construction, for it refers to the preceding singular *hostem*.]

Cum, iterative (=whenever), in § 2. [The pluperf. indic. is the rule in classical Latin, the subj. here being due to the dependence on *intellectum est*.] The phrase *accedebat huc ut*. [Cf. N.B. to c.6. where *quod* not *ut* is used.] Difference between *dispositus habere* and *disposuisse*. [Such phrases as the former (from which arose the use of the modern auxiliary ‘have’) call special attention to the continuance of an act already past; they mark an accomplished condition not the act of attainment.] The idiom *alios alii*. [A less common substitute for a reciprocal pronoun than *inter se*, as in c.14. § 4.]

CAP. XVII.

1. **rari**,—‘here and there’; lit.? **ostendere**,—with *coeperunt*. **lenius**,—‘with less vigor’; referring to *acriter confluxerunt*, c.15. § 1. **proelio**,—abl. of means.

2. **pabulandi causa**,—App.39.b. **tres legiones**,—an unusually large force, showing what respect Caesar had for the enemy. **cum**,—freely, ‘under.’ **ad**,—‘upon.’

sic uti, etc.,—‘so as to attack even the standards and legions,’ lit. ‘so that they did not keep away from, etc.’ The enemy was not afraid to attack even the main body.

3. *neque*,—‘and not.’ *quoad*,—‘until,’ or freely, to bring out the idea more clearly, ‘until at last.’ *subsidio*,—trans. abl. by ‘in.’ (RC.85.k.iii.) *praecepites*,—acc. w. *hostes*.

4. *neque...neque...aut...facultatem*,—‘no opportunity either...or...or.’ *sui colligendi*,—‘of rallying,’ lit. ‘of collecting themselves.’

5. *Ex*,—‘after.’ *quae*,—the antecedent is *auxilia*, by which are meant the allied forces spoken of in c.11. §§8.9. *discesse-runt*,—‘disbanded.’ *summis copiis*,—‘with their full force.’

N.B.—The translation of *sic uti...absisterent*. [Another reading is *sicubi ab signis legionibusque absisterent*, wherever they (i.e. the foragers) left the standards and legions, implying that they were afraid to attack the legions themselves.] *Quoad* with the indie. [Elsewhere in Caesar *quoad*=‘until’ has the subj. of the end in view; here the indie. excludes this idea. Of course the other meaning of *quoad*, as long as, is out of the question here. It may be noticed that *sequendi* refers rather to pressing close on an enemy which was being forced to give way than to pursuing one in full retreat.] The local abl. [literally, *partibus*, c.15. §1; figuratively, *subsidio*, §4. RC.85.k. H.425. AG.258.f.] Expressions like *sui colligendi*. [Nothing like *sui colligendorum* ever occurs. RC.II.131. BA.399. Obs.1. H.542.I.X.1. AG.298.a.] The combination *neque...neque...aut*, §4. [There are really but two members of the clause, both introduced by *neque*; *aut* merely adds a further detail of the second of these.] *Ex*=after, §5. The relative clause preceding its antecedent. *Neque...umquam*. [Latin prefers *neque* followed by an affirmative to *et* or *atque* followed by a negative.]

18-20. *Caesar forces a passage across the Thames into the country of Cassivellaunus. The Trinobantes submit to him.*

CAP. XVIII.

1. *consilio*,—this, as we may gather from c.17. §5, was to avoid a pitched battle. It is set forth in detail in c.19. §1.

Tamesim,—accus. **quod**,—App.11.*b.* **hoc**,—‘in this’; agreeing with *loco* understood.

2. **Eo cum venisset**,—as in c.1. § 6. **animum advertit**,—trans. as if it were the compound *animadvertit*. **ad**,—‘on.’

3. **præfixis**,—driven into the bank, **defluxe**, driven into the bed of the stream. **erat . . . munita**,—to be taken together. **tegebantur**,—‘were covered.’

4. **præmisso**,—trans. as in App.5.*a.*iii. **confestim**,—with *subsequi*.

5. **ea, eo**,—‘such.’ **cum**,—‘although.’ **capite . . . exstarent**,—‘only their heads were above the water,’ lit.? This explains the statement of § 1, *atque hoc aegre*, for a ford is not now regarded practicable for infantry when the depth is greater than three feet. **possent**,—for mood see RC.99.*b.* HF.187.2.

N.B.—The accus. in *-im*. [RC.49.*c.*] *Atque*, intensive, § 1.

Animum adverto=*animadverto*. [The latter, which practically represents the common pronunciation of the former, is the spelling almost always found in Caesar and Cicero.] The tenses of § 3. [The variation from pluperf. to imperf. is peculiar; the former refers to the act, the latter to the condition resulting from a similar act.]

Position of *Caesar* between two unconnected abl. absol. clauses,

§ 4. [The main part of the sentence really begins at *Caesar*, as much so as if we had *Caesar præmisit et jussit*; cf. c.7. § 6.] Force of

sed, § 5. [It may mean that the speed of the soldiers even exceeded that called for by Caesar, or possibly there may be implied the thought, ‘that was to be sure a difficult thing to do.’] *Is*=such, with clause of result. [A fairly common usage. *Cum*, with concessive subj. Case of *capite*, § 5. [This illustrates how the

abl. of means becomes a measure of difference.]

CAP. XIX.

1. **ut . . . demonstravimus**,—belongs to the clause *omni . . . spe*. **supra**,—referring to the last words of c.17; *contentionis* is probably suggested by *contenderunt* there. **dimissis**,—may well be rendered by a principal clause. **amplioribus copiis**,

—‘the greater part of, etc.,’ lit.? It is explained by the following abl. absol. clause.

servabat,—for the trans. of this and the other imperfects in this chapter see App. 26. c. **locis, regionibus**,—trans. by ‘in.’ **quibus**,—‘where,’ or more lit. ‘through which.’ **nos facturos**,—App. 34.

2. **cum**,—‘whenever.’ **liberius**,—with *ejecerat*; trans. by ‘too’; so *latius* and *longius* below. **viis**,—‘by,’ etc.

periculo equitum,—‘danger to cavalry’; for gen. see App. 2. c. (RC. 81. d.) **iis**,—*i.e.* the cavalry. **hoc metu**,—‘through fear of this,’ lit.? **vagari prohibebat**,—trans. as in c. 9. § 6.

3. **Relinquebatur ut**, etc.,—‘the only course left was for Caesar not to allow, etc.,’ lit. there was left (or remained) that Caesar should, etc.’ **discedi pateretur**,—‘allow his men to depart’; lit. ‘allow that there be departing’; for the impersonal passive *discedi* see App. 24, so *noceretur*; for the subj. RC. 99. b. HF. 187. 2. **tantum . . noceretur**,—freely, ‘to do as much harm.’ **vastandis**,—App. 40.

N.B.—Relation of the three abl. absol. clauses in § 1. [The first gives the reason for the other two, between which we have the asyndeton common in adversative clauses.] Use of the imperf. tense of habitual or repeated action. Abl. of place where, and of the route by which. [The latter is strictly instrumental.] *Cum*, frequentative=‘whenever,’ with pluperf. indic. Comparative with standard of comparison omitted, [*liberius*, *latius*, § 2, *longius*, § 3. See N.B. to c. 9.] Gerund and gerundive construction, §§ 2. 3. The idiom *hoc metu*. [Cf. *hoc dolore*, c. 4. § 4. It is Latin usage to put a demonst. or rel. pron. referring to some previous noun or clause in agreement with a noun instead of in the objective genitive. As Eng. has practically the same idiom, the literal trans. is generally not harsh.] Clause of result with *relinquebatur*. [RC. II. 208. II. a. HF. 187. 2. BA. 125. H. 501. 1.] The impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs, [*discedi*, *noceretur*, § 3. RC. 96. b; II. 57. HF. 164. 1. 2. BA. 5. 217. H. 301. 1. AG. 146. c.] The combination *neque . . et*, § 3. Hendiadys in *labore atque itinere*, § 3. [This seems to be equivalent to ‘laborious marching’ as opposed to the easy dashing raids of the cavalry.]

CAP. XX.

. **earum regionum**,—*i.e.* of those banded together under Cassivellaunus. **ex qua . vitaverat**,—This part is parenthetical and is best translated after § 2, which gives the predicate of *Trinobantes*. Break up the parenthesis at *cujus pater*, making thus three sentences in all: The Trinobantes send, etc.; From this state, etc.; His father, etc.

fidem secutus,—‘attaching himself to,’ ‘embracing the alliance.’ **continentem Galliam**,—‘the mainland of Gaul’; lit. in apposition. **obtinnerat**,—be careful not to trans. by ‘obtain.’ **ipse**,—‘(while) he himself.’

2. **sese dedituros**,—supply *se* and *esse*, App. 34. ‘to surrender’: *sese* is object not subject of the infin.

3. **petunt ut defendat**,—‘they ask him to,’ etc., (RC. II. 27. HF. 181. 3.) **qui praesit**,—‘(some one) to lead it.’ (RC. II. 26. HF. 184. 1.) Mandubracius is of course the one meant.

4. **imperat**,—as in c. 1. § 6. **exercitui**,—trans. by ‘for.’ **III**,—*i.e.* the Trinobates. **imperata**,—‘what he demanded,’ ‘his bidding.’ **ad numerum**,—‘to the (required) number.’

N.B.—Apposition in Latin where Eng. uses ‘of.’ [*Continentem Galliam*.] Use of *ipse*, § 1. [As is the rule in Caesar, we have asyndeton with *ipse*; in English the sentence would be more closely connected with the preceding by a repetition of the relative (in the nom. of course).] Construction with verbs of promising. [The omission of the subject is here practically unavoidable on account of the necessity for expressing the object *sese*.] The subjunctive of purpose in substantival and relative clauses, § 3. Difference between *praesit* and *imperium obtineat*. [The former is not inconsistent with subordination to the controlling power of another as *e.g.* Cassivellaunus; cf. *praecerant*, c. 22. § 1.] The construction of *exercitui*. [This condensed expression for *quod daretur exercitui*, or something of the sort, is quite unusual.] The phrase *ad numerum*. [Cf. *ad diem*, c. 1. § 9. and *ad tempus*, Bk. IV. c. 23. § 5.] *His, eos* and *illi* of the same persons, § 4.

21. *Many other tribes now submit and Caesar takes the town of Cassivellaunus.*

CAP. XXI.

1. *defensis*,—*i.e.* against Cassivellaunus. *militum*,—‘on the part of, *or* at the hands of the soldiers’: subjective gen. (RC.81.c.) *missis*,—trans. as in App.5.a.iii.

2. *his*,—the *legati* implied in *legationibus*. *ex eo loco*,—the place where the embassies met him. *munitum*,—‘protected’; partic. with *oppidum*. *quo*,—adverb. *satis magnus*,—‘a considerable *or* very large.’ *convenerit*,—‘had been gathered,’ lit. ‘has come together.’ For the mood see RC.99.e. HF.206.4.

3. *Oppidum vocant*,—‘call (it) a town.’ The Gauls had regular towns in which they dwelt; the Britons resorted to these strongholds only when danger was threatened. *cum*,—‘when *or* whenever.’ *silvas impeditas*,—‘a piece of woods difficult of access.’ *vitandae*,—App.40. *consuerunt*,—see on c.1 § 1.

4. *hunc*,—‘it,’ lit. ‘this (place).’ *ex*,—trans. by ‘on.’

5. *morati*,—‘after holding out.’ *tulerunt*,—from *fero*.

6. *repertus*,—supply *est* from following *sunt*. *multi*,—‘many (of the enemy),’ as the gender clearly shows in Latin.

N.B.—Force of *atque*. [The intensive force is clear in §§ 1 and 4 and 6, but not in § 3. RC.109.a.] *Cum*, frequentative=whenever, with perf. indic. [Cf.c.19. § 2 with pluperf. Here the principal verb is pres., there it was imperfect.] Asyndeton in § 4, to secure rapidity. Difference between Eng. and Latin usage in the position of a verb or auxiliary common to two parallel clauses. [*Sunt*, § 6, from which *est* is to be supplied with *repertus* and *sunt* with *comprehensi*. In Eng. such a word is placed with the first clause and understood with the second; in Latin repeatedly, if not generally, placed with the second, the sense of the first being held in suspense until both can be completed at once.]

22, 23. *A surprise on the camp by the sea is repulsed and Cassivellaunus asks for peace. The Romans return to the mainland.*

CAP. XXII.

1. *ad Cantium*,—with *nuntios mittit*. *quod esse*,—App. 34; trans. freely ‘which as we have shown was by the sea,’ lit.? *supra*,—c. 14. § 1. *regionibus*,—for dat. see RC. 82. e. ii. HF. 120. 2. The word suggests that Kent was divided into regular military districts.

his,—the four *reges*. *nti..adoriantur*,—App. 29. b. *coactis*,—trans. by infin. coordinate with *adoriantur*, as in App. 5. a. iii. *castra navalia*,—see c. 11. § 5.

2. *II*,—the *reges*; trans. after *cum*. *interfectis*,—trans. by principal clause, App. 5. a. iii. *incolumes*,—acc. w. *suos*, for which see App. 15. c.

3. *nuntiatio*,—avoid translating all these abl. abs. clauses alike. *acceptis*,—trans. by ‘as’ clause; so *vastatis* and *permotus*. *per*,—‘through the mediation of.’

4. *repentinos motus*,—In Bk. III. 8. 3. we are told that the plans of the Gauls were formed rapidly and unexpectedly, and Caesar repeatedly speaks of their fickleness. *neque multum*,—‘and as little or and as not much.’ *id*,—i.e. the *neque multum aestatis*.

in annos singulos,—‘yearly,’ lit. ‘for the years one by one.’ *quid vectigalis*,—App. 2. d. *penderet*,—‘should pay.’

5. *interdicat atque imperat*,—the repetition has the effect of ‘he emphatically forbids.’ *ne noceat*,—App. 29. b., ‘not to,’ etc. (RC. 99. a. 2. HF. 181. 3.)

N.B.—*Dum* with pres. tense. [The time is thought of relatively to the main verb; cf. the use of the pres. partic.] Absence of connective before the second relative, *quibus*, § 1. [This is because the two relative clauses are not of the same value, the first being purely parenthetic. Similarly in Eng.] Various ways of translating the abl. absol. §§ 1. 2. 3. [Especially where groups of absolute phrases occur, the pupil should try all possible devices until he acquires skill

in rendering these neatly into Eng.] Subject of a *cum* clause preceding the conjunction. [Repeatedly in Latin an important word (such as a connecting link with the previous sentence, or the subject of the clause, where the previous clause had a different subject, or a word to be emphasized by contrast) is placed before the conjunction introducing the clause to which this word belongs. This of course we cannot imitate in Eng.]

Asyndeton in abl. absol. clauses, §§ 2.3; [cf. N.B. to c.19. § 1.]

Neque and *neu* as connectives, §§ 4.5. [With neither word is it necessary that the clause preceding have a negative; for *neu* see RC.II.30, HF.186.6. BA.103.]

The partitive genitive w. neuters, *multum, quid*, § 4. The imperf. subj. representing pres. subj. (deliberative) of direct, *penderet*, § 4.

CAP. XXIII.

1. *naves*,—see c.11. §§ 2.3.

2. *quod*,—giving the reason for *duobus...instituit*, not for *deductis. et...et*,—‘both...and,’ omit ‘both’ or trans. ‘both because...and because.’

3. *sic accidit*,—‘it so happened.’ *tanto numero*,—in the previous year he had about 100; for this year’s numbers see c.2. § 2. *tot navigationibus*,—abl. absol.; ‘although there were so many trips’; App.5.*a*. N. *portaret*,—‘had on board,’ lit.? *nti...desideraretur*,—App.30.*a*.; for the mood see RC.99.*b*. HF.182.4.

4. *ex iis*,—‘of those’; understand *navibus. et...et*,—‘both (those) of, etc...and (those) which, etc.’ He divides the ships coming empty from Gaul into two classes, those which he had had with him and which were now returning for their second load, and those which he had ordered to be built, c.11. § 4. Strictly *remitterentur* is inapplicable to the latter class. *commeatus*,—for gen. see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7. *postea*,—*i.e.* after he had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. *curaverat*,—cf. on c.1. § 1. *numero*,—is not dat.; cf.c.5. § 3. *sexaginta*,—acc. agreeing w. *quas*.

locum,—‘their destination.’ *caperent, rejicerentur*,—like *desideraretur*, depending on *accidit uti*, § 3.

5. *expectasset*=*expectavisset*; (RC.66); cf. *consuerat*, c.1. §1. *suberat*,—from *subsum*. The *quod* clause is explanatory of *ne...excluderetur*. *necessario*,—adv. w. *collocavit*

6. *consecuta*,—App.5.a. *cum*,—‘although.’ (RC.99.i.iii. HF.204.5.) *inita vigilia*,—‘at the beginning of, etc.’ lit. ‘the watch having been begun, (entered upon).’ App.5.a. About what hour would this be?

Caesar had been in Britain for nearly three months, having set out towards the end of June (or according to the incorrect calendar then in vogue the end of July) and returning towards the end of September.

N.B.—Abl. abs. without participle, *tot navigationibus*, §3. Subjunctive by attraction. [*portaret*, §3; *remitterentur*, §4. (RC.99.k. H. 529.II. and N.1. AG.342.) Here, as regularly, the relative clauses form an essential part of the thought. On the other hand the clause *quas...curaverat*, which is not so necessary to the sense has the indie. This construction (rare in Caesar) is sometimes difficult to distinguish from the subj. of virtual indirect narration, or (as here) the relative clause of characteristic.] Use of connectives in enumeration. [Eng. usually has ‘and’ between the two last of a series, Latin as in §2 (*unam, alteram, tertiam*) generally omits even this, or else gives the effect of checking off by inserting *et* between each two, as in §3. So c.12. §6; c.16. §2; c.19. §§1.2. See however N.B. to c.52.] *Zeugma* in *remitterentur*, [not due here to desire for forcible condensation; the number of ships to which the word is inapplicable is so small that they are overlooked.] Syncopated forms of the verb. [RC.66. H.235. AG.128.a.1.] Comparative with standard of comparison omitted; [*angustius*, §5, more closely (than was usual).] Abl. absol. of perf. part. of deponent verb, [*consecuta*, §6. This is seldom found.] Transitive use of *ineo*. [So always in Caesar in time phrases, e.g. *inita aestate*; but Cicero uses it intransitively, *ineunte aestate*.]

Chap. 24-37.—The revolt of the Eburones and the destruction of fifteen cohorts under Sabinus and Cotta.

24. *Distribution of the Roman legions in various winter camps in north-eastern Gaul.*

CAP. XXIV.

1. **concilio**,—see on c.2. § 4. **Samarobrivae**,—‘at S.’; for case see RC.86., II.125.*a.1.* HF.85 3. **quod**, etc.,—explanatory of *coactus est*, etc. **siccitates**,—Eng. would use the sing. **angustius**,—‘more sparingly (than usual).’

aliter ac,—freely, ‘in a different way from that adopted,’ lit. ‘otherwise than’; this different way is explained by *legionesque...distribuere*.

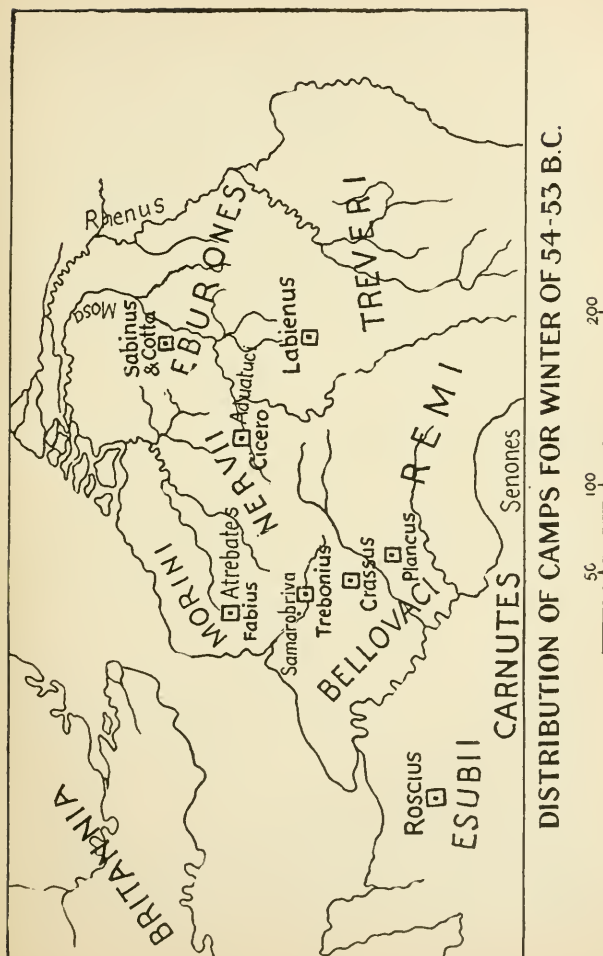
2. **ducendam**,—‘to lead,’ or more lit. ‘to be led.’ **alteram**,—as in c.13. § 2. **cum**,—‘with,’ or freely ‘under.’

4. **proxime**,—‘most recently.’ The last mention of a levy was in Bk. II.2.1., two and a half years before, at the beginning of the second campaign; some think however that a legion had been raised in the spring of this year; if so it is the only case where Caesar omits to tell us of a levy. Caesar seems by mentioning this fact, to imply that the legion in question had not the experience of the others. **trans Padum**,—the term is to be understood from the standpoint of Rome.

6. **Ad**,—‘in,’ lit. ‘according to.’ **distributis**,—trans. freely ‘by distributing, etc.’ **inopiae**,—for dat. with *medeor* see RC. II.55. HF.105.9.

7. **tamen**,—*i.e.* in spite of the wide distribution. **eam**,—understanding *legionem*. **continebantur**,—‘were contained in, etc.’; that is to say, the camps were in a territory 100 miles in radius.

8. **quoad...cognovisset**,—‘until he learned.’ (RC.99.*f.iii.*) **collocatas munitionaque**,—App.34.c.



DISTRIBUTION OF CAMPS FOR WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

N.B.—The locative case. The plural of an abstract noun, [*siccitates*, § 1. Here, as often in Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is used referring to the various instances or cases where the quality is manifested. Cf. *frigora*, c.12. § 6.] *Aliter ac*, § 1. [Caesar has *ac* or *atque* (= *as* or *than*) with *aliter*, *alius*, *idem*, *par* and *similis*.] The gerundive expressing the purpose or the object to be brought about, [*ducendum*, §§ 2.7. Cf. w. *curo*, c.1. § 1. and c.23. § 4. RC.10 t.c. HF. 173.7. BA.400. H.544.N.2. AG.294.d.] Abbreviations for personal names in Latin. [The significance is fixed in Latin.] Absence of connective before *qui*, § 4. [The *quorum* clause is added to define more exactly who are meant by the *Eburones*, and the second rel. clause refers to the whole phrase *Eburones quorum... Rhenum*. Cf. N.B. to c.22. § 1.] The tense of *existimavit*. [Verbs of thinking have in Latin the imperf. not the perf. for our simple past tense, except when expressing a decision to which one has come: cf. App. 26.a.1.] *Quoad*=until, with subj. [The usual construction; see however the indie. c.17. § 3.]

25. *Murder of Tasgetius, a dependant of Caesar, who orders the murderers to be seized.*

CAP. XXV.

1. *summo loco natus*,—‘(a man) of high birth,’ lit. ‘born of the highest rank.’ (RC.85.l.i. HF.156.1.)

2. *Huic*,—‘to him,’ w. *restituerat*. *pro*,—‘in view of.’ *ejus*, se,—App.12., 14.a. *fuerat usus*,—pluperf., almost equal to *usus erat*. (RC.97.g.iii.)

3. *hunc*,—i.e. *Tasgetius*. *tertium*, etc.,—‘when he was now in the third year of his reign,’ lit.? *inimici*,—these were his personal or private enemies; *multis ex civitate* refers to political opponents. *multis auctoribus*,—lit. many ‘being openly instigators,’ App.5.a.N.; freely, ‘at the open instigation of,’ etc.

4. *quod...pertinebat*,—the subj. is *ea res*; ‘because it concerned more’ (or perhaps ‘many’); freely, ‘because more were implicated’; *plures* seems to mean that more than the *inimici* were involved, namely the *multis auctoribus*, otherwise there would be no danger of revolt.

quorum,—trans. the rel. clause after the antecedent *hos...*
mittere. opera,—abl. **cognoverat**,—*i.e.* Caesar not Plancus.
comprehensus mittere,—trans. by two infinitives as in App.
 37. N.B.

5. **in hiberna perventum**,—supply *esse*; impersonal pass.,
 App.24. **hibernis**,—dat. of purpose if retained, but the repetition is awkward.

N.B.—Abl. of source. Reference of *suus, se* and *ejus*, §§ 1.2. [Notice that *sua*, § 1, refers to *maiores* not to *Tusgetius*.] Prepositional phrase with noun, [*in se benevolentia*, § 2. Cf. N.B. to c.13.] The force of *fuera*t *usus*. [Generally the pluperf. formed by *fuera*m does not differ appreciably from that formed by *era*m. Here it may be used because the time referred to is prior to that of another pluperf. *restituerat*.] The arrangement of words in *Tertium...regnantem*. [Caesar not infrequently has combinations (sometimes confusing) of words in the same case with different force; *e.g.* Bk.I.10.5; III.6.3; VII.73.2.] Position of the relative clause *quorum*, etc., § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.6. § 5.] The mood of *cognoverat*. [This clause is not part of Caesar's order, in which the persons meant must have been more definitely described. The subj. *cognovisset* (or *cognoverit* after the the pres. *jubet*) would be used if Plancus were commissioned to investigate and then act.] The use of the partic. *comprehensus*. [A good instance of the Latin fondness for using participles to express all the preliminary details of an action, or all but the last of a series of actions. RC.II.148.a. and 238.] The passive of intransitive verbs used impersonally, [*perventum esse*, § 5. RC.72.h. and N.B. HF.164.2. BA.217.Obs. H.301.1. AG.146.c.]

26, 27. *The Eburones revolt and their king Ambiorix, under the pretext of friendliness, tries to induce Sabinus and Cotta to abandon their winter-camp.*

CAP. XXVI.

1. **Diebus quindecim**, etc.,—‘within fifteen days after their coming, etc.,’ lit. ‘within the fifteen days, within which.’
ventum est,—App.24.; cf. *perventum esse*, c.25. § 5. **ortum est ab**,—‘arose with,’ lit. ‘from.’

2. *cum*,—‘although.’ *ad*,—‘at.’ *Sabino Cottaeque*,—for case see App. 3. *b. praesto fuissent*,—*i.e.* in order to welcome them officially. *Indutiomari*,—see c. 4. for his grievance against Caesar. *Treveri*,—gen. sing. w. *Indutiomari*. *suos*,—App. 15. c. *oppressis*,—‘falling upon.’ *mann*,—‘with a band.’ *oppugnatum*,—the supine; trans. by Eng. infin. supplying ‘it’ as obj.; (RC. 105. a. HF. 174. 3.)

3. *una ex parte*,—‘on one side,’ *i.e.* of the camp; to be taken with *emissis*. *Hispanis*,—Caesar does not elsewhere mention any but Gallic cavalry. *desperata re*,—‘despairing of the attempt,’ lit. ? App. 5. a. *hostes*,—nom. case.

4. *suo more*,—the usual method would have been to send envoys. *uti*, etc.,—‘for some one to come, etc.’ *habere sese*, etc.,—‘they had (something) which,’ etc.; for infin. App. 34. It might be well to insert ‘they said’ after ‘something.’ *quibus rebus*,—‘by which,’ referring to *quae*.

N.B.—The phrase *diebus quindecim quibus*. The two events mentioned come *within* the same period, at the beginning and end respectively.]

Pleonasm in *initium ortum est*, [doubtless for emphasis’ sake.]

Use of supine in *-um*, § 2. [Notice that here, as often with the supine, an object is to be supplied in thought from other words in the clause.] All actions but last of a series expressed by subordinate clauses, § 3. [RC. II. 238.]

Despero used as a transitive verb, § 3. [So by Caesar in the abl. absol. only.] *Hostes suos*, § 3.

[Notice that *hostes* and *suos* are exactly the same body of men; similar but more peculiar in *nostri...suos reduxerunt*, c. 22. § 2.]

Aliqui used substantively for *aliquis*. [Caesar does not have either word elsewhere in the masc. nom.]

The abrupt transition to indirect statements in § 4, *habere sese*. [This follows upon a substantial clause of purpose, which is practically an indirect command or request. It is not Latin usage to change the verb, as Eng. often does, according as a statement, question, request or command is to be introduced; any verb or phrase which virtually implies that something was said is sufficient for introducing any or all kinds of reported utterance. Cf. N.B. to c. 3. § 6.]

Relative clause of purpose w. *habere*. [In this idiom the relative has no antecedent. *Sperarent* is an ordinary relative clause with subj. because of the indirect form of narration.] *Quibus rebus*, abl. of *quae*.

Pres. infin. of *posse* after *spero*, § 4. [This is the regular usage. RC. 101. a. ii. BA. 37. N.B.]

CAP. XXVII.

1. **Mittitur**,—‘there is sent,’ keeping as far as possible the Latin order in Eng. **ex Hispania**,—freely, ‘a Spaniard’; lit.? **missu Caesaris**,—‘being sent by C.’; lit.? trans. after the rest of the sentence.

apud quos,—‘in their presence.’ **ad hunc modum**,—‘thus.’

2. **Sese**,—subj. of *confiteri* on which depends (*se*) *debere*. **pro benefeciis**,—cf. c. 25. § 2. **ei, ejus**,—*i.e.* Caesar; *ei* below after *quodque* is however Ambiorix. **quod**,—the first and third *quod* are the conj., between which we have the rel. pron. referring to *stipendio*. **stipendio**,—trans. by ‘from,’ (RC. 85. h. HF. 158. 2.) **consuesset**,—=*consuevisset*. (RC. 66.) **ei**,—dat. **obsidum numero**,—=*obsidum loco*, c. 5. § 4. **missos**,—‘when they were sent.’ **se**,—the Aduatuci.

3. **neque...aut...aut**,—‘and...neither...nor.’ **id quod**,—App. 12. N. B. **fecerit**,—trans. the perf. subjunctives in this speech as though they were pluperfects, (RC. 107. ii.) **de**,—‘in regard to.’ **coactu**,—‘being compelled by,’ etc., or literally.

imperia,—‘powers.’ **minus juris**,—App. 2. d; trans. *juris* ‘authority.’ **in**,—‘over.’

4. **Civitati**,—‘as for the state,’ lit. ‘to.’ **hanc**,—explained by the *quod* clause.

Id,—the statement just made. **sit**,—trans. the pres. subjunctives in this speech as though they were imperfects. (RC. 107. ii.) **rerum**,—RC. II. 117. a. **suus**,—‘his own.’

5. **Galliae**,—emphatic. opposed to *civitati*. **hibernis eppugnandis**,—dat.; trans. by ‘for.’ App. 10. **ne qua**,—‘that no’; lit.? (RC. II. 29. HF. 183. 1.) **alterae**,—‘another’; an irregular form for dat. **subsidio**,—‘to aid,’ lit. ‘for or as an aid.’ (RC. 82. c. HF. 134. 1.)

6. **negare**,—‘give a refusal,’ ‘deny a request.’ **initum**,—supply *esse*; App. 33. b.

7. **Quibus**,—*i.e.* the other Gauls. **pro pietate**,—‘so far as

as hostages

patriotism was concerned,' or 'in respect of,' etc. **habere.. rationem**,—'he could now consider.' **pro**,—'in return for.'

monere, orare,—supply *se* as subj. **pro**,—'by,' 'in view of.' **suae**,—'his own,' referring to Titurius. **saluti**,—RC. II.59.

8. **conductam**,—'had been hired and,' etc.; App.37. N.B. **transisse**,=*transivisse*. (RC.66.) **affore**,—fut. inf.

9. **Ipsorum**, etc.,—'it was for them themselves to decide whether,' referring to Sabinus and Cotta. **eductos**,—trans. as App.37. N.B. **iis**,—supply *hibernis*.

10. **Illud**,—'this much,' referring to *tutum..daturum*, with which supply *se*.

11. **Quod cum faciat**,—'in doing this,' lit.? App.11.b. **levetur**,—the subject is *civitas* understood; in Eng. 'it.'

N.B.—Position and number of *mittitur*, § 1. [The position is not so much for emphasis as for connection of thought; we are first told that the request of the Eburones is granted, some one is sent; then those chosen are naturally named next.] The phrase *ex Hispania* added directly to a noun, [cf. N.B. to c.13.] The verbal noun derived from the supine; [*missu*, § 1; *coactu*, § 3; *impulsu*, c.25. § 4. The abl. case is the one most used in such nouns, and, as here, is often equivalent to a perf. part. phrase.] The uses of *pro*, [§§ 2.7.11.] Omission of *se* as subj. of infin. [§§ 2.3.7.10.11. While the student should not copy this irregularity in his Latin composition, it is by no means infrequent in Latin to omit *se* as also *me*, *te*, *eum*, *eos* (more rarely *nos* and *vos*) as subject of an infin. which has the same subj. as the verb of stating or thinking.] Abl. of separation with verbs of freeing, [§§ 2.11.] Repetition of *quod* with different forces, § 2. *Ei*, § 2, [where *sibi* would have been more regular. Notice on the other hand *suae*, § 7. (RC.91.ii.iii.) The dat., not *ad eum*, is used because the idea of *restoring* (dat. of interest) predominates over that of sending to a place (limit of motion).] The phrase *obsidum numero*. [See N.B. to c.5.] The perf. part. used where Eng. would have a separate clause; [*missos*, § 2; *conductam*, § 8; *eductos*, § 9. (RC.II.118.a. and 238. HF.219.a. BA.406. H.549.4.5. AG.292.R.)] The circumlocution *id quod...castrorum*, § 3. [There are obvious reasons for Ambiorix making no more explicit statement.] The shifting of tenses in the subjunctives throughout the speech. [In several sections the

pres. and perfect subj. are formed instead of the more regular imperf. and pluperf. The tenses of the original speaker are thus kept for greater vividness. It will be noticed that these sections are those dealing not with Ambiorix's motives in the past, but with the practical question of the present condition of affairs and the future course of action.] The connectives *neque...aut...aut*. [Cf. *neque...neque...aut*, c.17. § 4.] The plur. *imperia*, [of the different relations or aspects his power might have. *Sua* is not to be taken as referring to others than Ambiorix.] The position of *civitati*, § 4. [He has now reached the second division of his speech; the first dealt with his own position.] Dat. of gerundive, § 5. [A case rarely used with the gerundive construction.] Use and form of *alterae*, § 5. [Only two legions are thought of in each case, the one needing, the other one giving, aid. For the old form cf. *nullo*, Bk. VI.13.1.] Asyndeton in *monere, orare*, § 7, [expressive of his earnestness.] -*Ne* with a single indirect question, § 9; [so c.54. § 5. Caesar does not use *num* in this way; *ne* is especially common in Latin after verbs of *considering*.] *Priusquam* and subj. [marking an end kept in view; RC.99.f.iv. HF.201.5. BA.442.] *Illud* anticipating a clause, § 10.

28-31. *Difference of opinion between the lieutenants. After much discussion at a council of war, Sabinus' view finally prevails, and the Romans leave the camp.*

CAP. XXVIII.

1. **re**,—'news,' 'turn of events,' referring to the contents of c.27. **ab...dicebantur**,—'the words were those of an enemy'; lit.? **re**,—'consideration.' **populo**,—trans. by 'on.' (RC. 32.b.) **ausam**,—App.34.c. **credendum**,—'to be believed.' 'credible.'

2. **consilium**,—the composition of a council of war is indicated by § 3.

3. **compures**,—to be taken with *tribuni* only, as would appear from c.30. § 1. **agendum**,—supply *esse*; App.41; so *discedendum*, which however is impersonal, App.24.

4. **etiam**,—‘even,’ the Germans being more formidable than the Gauls. **munitis**,—trans. by ‘if’ clause: App.5.a.ii. **rem esse testimonio quod**,—‘a proof of this was the fact that,’ lit. ‘the actual state of affairs (*rem*) was for (*or as*) a proof, namely that, etc.’ For dat. RC.82.c. HF.134.1.

ultra,—‘even,’ lit. ‘further,’ *i.e.* than merely repelling the attack.

5. **re frumentaria**,—‘in respect to,’ etc., (RC.85.d.)

6. **quid esse**,—‘what was,’ or ‘what could be.’ (RC.II.214.a.i. HF.207.6.) **auctore hoste**,—‘on the advice of an enemy’; lit.? App.5.a.N.

N.B.—Tenses of verbs throughout the chapter. [*Audierunt* as prior to *deferunt*; *dicebantur* peculiar for *dicta erant*, probably because the advice is regarded as still being offered as long as it is under consideration; *docebant*, § 4, of a statement repeated by several; *sustinuerint*, see RC.107.ii. Elsewhere the historical pres. is used of actions, the imperf. of their thoughts as they considered their situation and their plans.] Position and mood of *quae audierunt*.

[For the latter contrast *quid fieri vellet, ostendit*, c.2. § 3.] The phrases with *sponte* and *injussu*. *Primorum ordinum centuriones*. [The meaning of this phrase is uncertain; it seems to mean either the six centurions of the first cohort of a legion, or more probably the first centurion in each of the ten cohorts, each of whom was practically in command of the whole cohort.] The passive periphrastic conj. § 3. [Notice that *discedendum* is impersonal.]

Abl. absol.=conditional clause, § 4. *Quod* with explanatory clause, [in apposition with *rem*, § 4.] The dat. of purpose *esse testimonio*. [Cf. N.B. to c. 5.] The difference between *ex* and *a*, § 5. The infin. in the indirect form of rhetorical questions, [*esse*, § 6. This is because such questions are really equivalent to statements. (RC.II.214.a.i. HF.207.6. BA.521. H.523.II.2. AG.338.)]

CAP. XXIX.

1. **Contra ea**,—‘in answer to this.’ **facturos**,—‘they would act’; subj. and obj. both omitted. **clamitabat**,—trans. by ‘kept.’ App.26.c. **adjunctis**,—freely, ‘joined by the G.’

lit.? *calamitatis*,—App.2.*d.* *consulendi*,—trans. gen. by 'for.' App.2.*c.*

2. *arbitrari*,—supply *se* as subj. *Italiam*,—as in c.1. § 1. *aliter*,—*i.e.* if he had not gone. *interficiendi*,—App.40. *fuisse capturos*,—'would have formed.' *nostri*,—'of us'; gen. plur. of *nos*. (RC.60.*b.*)

3. *spectare*,—supply *se*: *hostem auctorem*,—'the fact that the advice was the enemy's,' or 'the advice of the enemy'; lit. 'the enemy as adviser.' *rem*,—'the actual situation.'

dolori,—App.3.*c.* (RC.82.*c.* HF.134.1.) *Ariovisti mortem*,—the defeat only is mentioned by Caesar; the death, it would seem, must have followed soon after. See Introd.p.xii. (Bk. I.), and p.xiii.(Bk.IV.)

4. *tot...extincta*,—three reasons for *ardere Galliam*; trans. each by a similar clause. *rei militaris*,—'in warfare.'

5. *quis...persuaderet*,—'who could convince himself,' lit. 'make this credible to himself'; *sibi* does not refer to the speaker. *sine certa re*,—'without good reason.'

6. *Suam*,—emphatic from position; so *unam* below. *in utramque partem*,—'in either case,' explained by the two *si* clauses. *tutam*,—'without risk.'

durius,—'more serious,' in the way of further attacks. *esse positam in*,—'depended on.'

7. *Cottae...consilium*,—trans. by 'as for, etc.'; though really *consilium* is the subj. of *habere*. *habere*,—'did it involve'; for infin. cf. *esse*, c.28. § 6.

non praesens,—'no immediate.' *obsidione*,—causal; trans. by 'because of or from.' (RC.85.*m.* HF.71.3.) *timenda*,—'to be feared.'

N.B.—Formation and force of the frequentative verbs; [*clamito*; cf. *ventito*, c.27. § 1. Here it expresses the excitement of Titurius as contrasted with the calmer reasoning of Cotta, *docebant*, c.28. § 4. (RC. 75.III. HF.303.*a.*)] Omission of subj. of infin. §§ 1.2.3. [cf. N.B. to c.27. Perhaps it is a mark of excitement that the pron. is omitted here wherever possible.] Tenses of clauses in indirect narration; [*convenissent*, *esset acceptum* for fut. perf. indic. of direct; *fuisse*

capturos for pluperf. subj. and *venturos esse* for imperf. subj.; *adesset* unchanged; *persuaderet, esset (durius)* and *consentirent* for pres. subj.; *dissentirent* and *esset timenda* for pres. indic.]

Gerund, gerundive constr. and passive periphrastic conjug. §§ 1.2.7.

Difference between *noster, nostrum, nostri*, [§§ 2.3. Caesar happens not to use *nostrum*. (RC.90.b.)] *Subesse* of place, § 3.

[In c.23, § 5. of time.] Dative of purpose, [*dolori*, § 3; cf. *esse testimonio*, c.28, § 4, where there is not also the dat. of interest generally found.] Relation of participial clauses in § 4. [There is certainly

asyndeton between the last two; possibly also between the first two, or it may be that *tot...acceptis* refers to a prior state of affairs, i.e. practically because injury (expressed by the last two clauses) had been added to former insults.] Questions in indirect narration.

[For *habere*, representing *habet*, cf. N.B. to *esse*, c.28 § 6; *persuaderet* represents *quis persuadeat* of direct, the so called potential subj. (here used in a rhetorical question, RC.98.b.) Where in a rhetorical or deliberative question the subj. is used this mood is retained in indirect narration.] Force of *quidem*, § 7. [This word is untranslatable here; it merely expresses more clearly the emphasis which the word it is connected with already has from its position.]

Tense of *habere*, § 7. [We might expect *habiturum esse*, but the pres. expresses the opinion that this course of necessity involves or carries with it a terrible result.] Use of *si non*, instead of *nisi*,

§ 7. [This is a regular usage where *at* follows.] Subj. in rel. clause, *in quo...esset timenda*, § 7. [If this were merely an additional statement, we should expect the infin. (RC.99.e.ii.); but here it is necessary to the full understanding of the clause, and in the direct form we might even have had the causal subj. (RC.99.g.iii.)]

CAP. XXX.

1. **Hac**,—‘after this discussion on either side,’ referring to c.28. § 2. and the two opinions just advanced. **primis ordinibus**=*primorum ordinum centurionibus*, cf. c.28. § 3. **acriter**,—‘stubbornly.’ **resisteretur**,—impersonal passive. App.24. (RC.II.57. HF.164.1.)

Vincite,—imperative, ‘carry your point, if you will have it so.’ **et id**,—‘and that too.’ **ut**,—‘so that,’ of result not purpose.

2. **neque is...terrear**,—‘I am not the man to be the most deeply terrified among (or of) you, etc.’; for subj. see RC.II.

34. HF.188.4. **hi sapient**,—‘these (*i.e.* the soldiers in camp) will be wise.’ *i.e.* they will not judge as foolishly as you.

3. **quid gravius**,—‘anything serious’; cf. *si nihil esset durius*, c.29. § 6. **abs te**, etc.,—‘they will call you to account’; lit.? *te* of course is *Cotta*.

qui,—plur.; ‘for they.’ **si...liceat**,—‘if you would permit it,’ lit.? **communem**,—emphatic; ‘but the common.’ ‘only that shared by all.’ **non**, etc.,—‘(and) would not, etc.’

N.B.—The use and position of *inquit*. [The separation of *inquit Sabinus* is peculiar, but gives special force to *si ita vultis*; cf. Bk.VII.20.12.]

Rel. clause of characteristic, [*qui terrear*, § 2. (RC.II.34. HF. 188.4. BA.506. H.500.I. AG.320.)] *Ex* and *abl.*=partitive gen.: *ex vobis*=*vestrum*, § 2; here with the superl.] The form *abs*.

[This is the only case where Caesar uses it.] Future conditional clauses. [Both classes (with fut. indic. and pres. subj.) are found in § 3. The reason for the change is obvious; the subj. presents something ideal, conceived by the imagination, the indic. something treated logically by the mind; the latter expresses what there is actual danger of, the other what is possible.] The phrase *per te licet*. [The absence of obstruction is regarded as assistance.]

The use of *ceteri*. [Caesar prefers *reliqui*, using *ceteri* but six times in the seven books; cf.c.6. § 1.] Asyndeton before *non rejecti*, etc., § 3. [In adding a negative clause in emphatic contrast, *non* not *neque* is used; cf. Bk.I.14.7. and Bk.VI.4.3.]

CAP. XXXI.

1. **Consurgitur**,—‘they rise up,’ or ‘the council rises,’ lit.? App.24. **comprehendunt**,—*i.e.* by the hand; the verb has for subject only Cotta and Sabinus. **ne...deducant**,—App. 29.b. (RC.99.a.2. HF.181.3.)

2. **facilem esse rem**,—‘there is no difficulty’; lit.? **unum**,—‘one and the same thing.’ **contra**,—adv.; ‘on the other hand.

3. **permotus**,—‘deeply moved.’

4. **prouuntiatur**,—impers.; ‘orders are given to march,’ lit.? **vigiliis**,—freely, ‘without sleep.’ **circumspiceret**,—add in trans. ‘to see’ before the *quid* clause.

5. **Omnia . . . quare**,—‘all manner of arguments are thought of to prove that,’ etc.; lit. ? **nec**,—‘not.’ **maneatur**,—‘they cannot remain.’ App. 24.

6. **sic**,—explained by the rest of the section. **ut quibus**, etc.,—‘as (men) who had been convinced that,’ etc., (RC. 99. c. HF. 188. 4.) **datum**,—supply *esse*. **longissimo**, etc.,—trans. by ‘with.’ (RC. 85. e. HF. 71. 3.) This long train of baggage of course only increased their danger.

N.B.—The impersonal passive. [§§ 1. 4. 5. 6.; cf. also c. 30. § 1.] The change from indirect request to indirect statements, § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c. 26. § 4.] Use of *seu . . . seu*. [The subj. is due entirely to the indirect narration.] *Sua quisque*, [cf. N.B. to c. 8. § 6.] *Nec . . . et*—‘not only . . . but also,’ § 5. Hendiadys, *dissensione et pertinacia*, § 1; *languore et vigiliis*, § 5; *agmine -que impedimentis*. Rel. clause of characteristic, § 6. Sequence of tenses after historical pres. [Where the hist. pres. precedes, the primary sequence may be used (as in §§ 1. 2. 5), or the secondary sequence (as in §§ 4. 6.) Where the hist. pres. follows, the secondary sequence is the rule (as in c. 22. § 4; c. 25. § 4.) The large number of short sentences in the chapter. [The hurry and excitement are expressed by the short clauses, the frequent cases of asyndeton, and the use of the hist. present. Cf. c. 40.]

32-35. *The retiring Romans are attacked by the Eburones from an ambush and surrounded. They make a desperate resistance, many officers being slain and Cotta wounded.*

CAP. XXXII.

1. **collocatis**,—trans. by finite verb. App. 5. a. iii. **loco**,—with *collocatis*. (RC. 85. k. ii.); so **loco**, § 2. **a millibus**,—‘at a distance of,’ etc.; with *expectabant*.

2. **se**,—with *demississet*. **nostris**,—dat. of interest with *iniquissimo*.

N.B.—*A*=‘at a distance of,’ § 1. [Except once Caesar does not specify the place from which the distance is measured; but the fact that this does occur (Bk. IV. 22. 4. with *ex eo loco*) shows that it cannot

be a case of hyperbaton] Use of *Romani* in Caesar. [Very seldom in Caesar's own narrative, as in § 1 (*nostri* being used instead); generally in expressing the words or thoughts of the enemy, as in c.34, §§ 1.4.] Connectives in latter part of § 2; [*-que* couples the two leading clauses; of the three infinitives the first two (referring to two separate parts) are coupled by *et*, and those two joined to the third (and most significant) by *atque*.] The local abl. without prep. [*loco*, §§ 1.2.]

CAP. XXXIII.

1. **qui**,—‘as he,’ ‘seeing that he.’ (RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.4.) **trepidare**,—hist. infin., App.36; trans. by ‘began to.’ **haec ipsa**,—understand *faciebat*, ‘he did.’ **ut**,—‘so that,’ of result. **omnia**,—‘all his wits’; freely, ‘he had completely lost his head.’

quod,—‘as,’ lit. ‘(a thing) which.’ **in ipso negotio**,—‘at the very moment of action.’

2. **qui**,—as in § 1. **auctor non fuisset**,—‘had not approved’; lit.? **saluti**,—for dat. see RC.II.104. HF.120.4.

et .et,—‘both .and’; before ‘both’ supply ‘and’ to connect the main clauses. **appellandis**,—App.40. **imperatoris**,—with *officia praestabat*.

3. **minus facile**,—‘not very easily.’ **quoque**,—from *quisque*. **possent, jusserunt**,—the subj. is the two lieutenants. **jusserunt pronuntiare**,—‘they bade orders (*or* ordered instructions) to be given,’ lit. ‘they ordered (their officers) to announce.’ **in .consisterent**,—‘form in,’ etc.

4. **Quod**,—pron., App.11.b. **etsi**,—trans. before *quod consilium*.

5. **militibus**,—trans. dat. by ‘of.’ (RC.82.f.) **quod**,—conj. **factum**,—supply *esse*.

6. **quod . . . erat**,—‘as was unavoidable,’ lit.? **quae**,—App. 11.d.1; before this clause add ‘and’ in trans.; so before clause beginning *clamore*. **haberet**,—‘held *or* regarded.’ **omnia**,—App.8.

N.B.—Causal relative clauses, §§ 1.2. Historical infin. [here indicative of excitement. Generally several are found grouped together. RC.101.d. HF.216.3.N.2. H.536.1. AG.275.] Passive of *video*, §§ 1.5. [In § 1. it seems to approximate to the meaning 'was evidently' rather than 'was apparently.'] Omission of object of *jusserunt*, § 3. [This is very common with this verb.] Dative of reference, [*militibus*, § 5.] Agreement of adjective with nearer of two nouns of different gender, [*summo*, § 5.] *Quod* summing up a clause, [§§ 1.6. In the latter case the clause (*ut...complerentur*) follows the *quod* clause.] Asyndeton in § 6.

CAP. XXXIV.

1. *consilium*,—freely, 'resources.' *acie*,—trans. by 'throughout.' (RC.85.k.ii.) *pronuntiare*,—cf. c.33. § 3. *ne quis*, etc.,—'that no one should,' etc., (RC.II.29. HF.133.4.)

illorum,—'theirs,' meaning the *barbari*. *quaecumque*,—neut. plur. *reliquisset*,—'should leave,' lit.? *existimarent*,—'let them consider.' (RC.II.214.a.i. HF.207.5.)

2. *puguandi*,—App.2.c.; with *studio*. *a duce*, etc.,—referring to Sabinus. Trans. freely, 'their leader, etc., was failing them.' *virtute*,—they fought bravely, having no thought of saving themselves by flight or surrender. *procurrerat*,—trans. by Eng. simple past tense. (RC.II.170.b.) *ab*,—App. 6.c. *cadebat*,—trans. by 'would.' App.26.c.

3. *ut conjiciant*,—App.29.b. *neu...et*,—'and not...but.' *quam*,—'whatever.' *fecerint*,—'make,' lit. 'have made.' *levitate*, etc.,—'that because of, etc., no harm could be done'; for abl. see RC.85.m. HF.71.3; *posse*, App.31; *noceri*, RC. 96.b.ii. HF.164.1. *se recipientes*,—'as they betook themselves or returned'; *recipientes*, acc. object of *insequantur*. (RC.102.a. HF.100.4.)

N.B.—Shifting of moods in indirect narration, §§ 1.4. [In each case an acc. and infin. clause comes between two subj. clauses. It can be seen from such examples how closely akin are the substantial clause of purpose and the subj. of indirect command.] Asyndeton, as always, with *proinde*. *Illorum* and *illis* in indirect narration for *vestra* and *vobis* of direct, § 1. [RC.106.d. HF.209.1.3. BA.517.b.

H.p.299.fn.2.] Personification of *fortuna*, § 2, [as shown by the prep. *a*. The common worship of Fortuna as a goddess makes this personification very easy.] Frequentative clauses, mood and tense, [temporal, § 2, relative, § 4. The subj. in the latter is entirely due to indirect narration. RC.II.202.204.a. BA.434.] The use of *quoties*. [It differs from *cum*, in emphasizing the idea 'every time that.'] *Neu* as a connective of negative final clauses, § 4. [Cf.c. 22. § 5. Here the position of the *neu* clause between two affirmative clauses coupled by *et* is to be noticed.] The impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, *nocerē*, § 4. *Se* referring to others than the subject of the verb of the clause, [*se recipientes*, § 4. With common reflexive phrases such as *se recipere* this is very common; cf.c.17. § 4. RC.91.iii.]

CAP. XXXV.

1. *cum*,—'whenever.' Trans. tenses here as in c.34. § 2.
2. *eam partem*,—viz. where the cohort had advanced and left a gap. Trans. 'that part was unavoidably,' etc. *ab latere*,—cf. *ab parte*, c.34. § 2. The 'exposed flank' was the right, which was unprotected by shields.
3. *et...et*,—'both...and.' *qui proximi steterant*,—'who stood next,' i.e. alongside of those who were opposite the attacking cohort. The pluperf. is lit. 'had taken up their position.'
4. *sin autem*, etc.,—'and moreover even if they wished,' etc. *locum tenere*,—i.e. not to leave the *orbis*. *nec...loens*,—'no opportunity.' *virtuti*,—trans. by 'for.' *conferti*,—'crowded (as they were).'
5. *conflictati*,—'though harassed.' *cum...pugnaretur*,—'for the fight lasted'; App.24. *esset*,—'was.' (RC.99.c. HF.188.4.5.)
6. *Balventio...femur...trajicitur*,—'Balventius has the thigh pierced,' lit. 'the thigh is pierced for B.' (RC.82.f.i.) *primum pilum duxerat*,—i.e. had been chief centurion. He had probably now served his time and was one of the veterans (*emeriti* or *evocati*) who often volunteered again for service.
7. *ejusdem ordinis*,—i.e. *primipilus*. *circumvento*,—trans. as App.37.c.

8. *ordines*,—*i.e.* the centuries, for which it is often used. in *adversum os*,—‘full in the face,’ lit.?

N.B.—Abl. of agent in abl. absol. clause, § 1. [This occurs very seldom in Caesar, who generally leaves us to gather the actual agent from the context.] Force of *quæpiam*. [About=*aliqua*, not to be regarded as=*quæque*, c.31. § 2, although in other respects the clauses are parallel. (RC.95.ii. BA.360.ii. H.155. AG.202.a.)] Temporal frequentative clauses, §§ 1.3. *Necesse est* w. inf.; [so always in Caesar.] *Cooperant*, § 3=trne pluperf. [Though it is often so stated, it would be hard to prove that *coepi* is a perf. with pres. force, like *memini* *e.g.*] Adj. with semi-adverbial force, *proximi*, § 3. The mood of *relinquebatur*, § 4. [The subj. combined with the indic. of apodosis is exceptional, though regular enough with *possum* or equivalent phrases, as here *locus relinquebatur*. (RC.II. 85. x.B. HF.193.2. BA.461. H.511.x.3. AG.307.d.)] The imperf. *vellent* represents the pres. subj. thrown back into past time, not something contrary to fact.] Causal and concessive use of participles, §§ 4.5. Mood of *esset*, § 5. [Rel. clause of characteristic. RC.II.31.] Dative of reference, § 6. [Cf.c.44. § 7.] Gen. of characteristic added directly to a proper noun, § 7. [Usually a more general term, *e.g.* *vir, homo*, intervenes.] Accus. with *in* after *vulnere*, [because of the suggested idea of the motion of the weapon.] Pres. partic. and *dum* used side by side, § 7.

36, 37. *Sabinus treats with Ambiorix but is treacherously killed. The rest of the army, with Cotta, is slain, except a few who make their way to Labienus.*

CAP. XXXVI.

1. *suos*,—referring to Ambiorix, *suum* and *sibi* to Titurius. *rogatum*,—the supine, as in c.26. § 2.

2. *velit, pertineat*,—trans. as if imperf.; the pres. here retains the tense of the actual words. *licere*,—‘he might,’ lit.? *multitudine*,—referring to the statement made in c.27. § 3. *quod*,—‘what.’

ipsi .iri,—‘no harm would be done to (Titurius) himself’;
nocitum iri, fut. inf. pass. used impersonally.

3. **saucio**,—add ‘who was’ in trans. **communicat**,—after this, add in trans. ‘suggesting.’ **si videatur**, etc.,—‘that, if it seemed best, they should,’ etc. **sperare**,—supply *se*. **de sua**, etc.,—‘that their request in regard to their own... could be granted by him,’ lit. ‘obtained from him.’

4. **se iturum negat**,—‘refuses to go,’ lit.?

N.B.—Shifting of reference of *suus*, § 1. Use of supine in *um*.

Ille in §§ 2.3. of different persons. [The use is in each case regular.]

Primary sequence after perfect, *velit*, *pertineat*, § 2. [The tense of the speaker is more vivid than the tense of the reporter.]

Pres. inf. *posse* after *sperare*, [cf. X.B. to c.26.] The fut. inf. in *-um iri*. [A circumlocution by means of the supine and the passive infin. of *eo* used impersonally; this form is practically avoided by the Romans.] Position of *-que* in *inque*. [It is very rare to find it added to a preposition.] Circumlocution with *de*. [Caesar has *de* and abl. instead of the object in acc. very frequently with such verbs as *impetro*, *peto*, *postulo*, *cognosco*.]

CAP. XXXVII.

1. **quos...tribunos**,—‘those tribunes who,’ lit.? App.11.
d.iv. jussus,—‘on being ordered.’ **imperatum**,—‘as he is bidden,’ lit. ‘what is ordered.’

2. **inter se agunt**,—‘they are treating with each other.’
longior,—‘long’; lit. ‘longer (than would otherwise have been the case).’

3. **Tum vero**,—‘then’; *vero* rendered only by increased emphasis on ‘then.’

4. **maxima parte**,—freely, ‘most.’

6. **Illi**,—the *reliqui* of § 5. **ad**,—‘till.’ **ad unum**,—‘to a man.’ **ipsi**,—nom.; not represented in trans.

7. **perveniunt**,—‘make their way.’ **rebus gestis**,—‘what had been done or had occurred.’

N.B.—Inclusion of antecedent in relative clause, [*quos tribunos*, § 1. RC.93.vii.] Shifting of tenses in chapter. [The narrative is naturally for the most part in the historic present, but in § 5 the tense shifts in the same sentence from past to pres. Subordinate relative and *cum* clauses usually, as here, retain the past tenses, §§ 1.5; clauses of purpose, as § 1, are more apt to follow the primary sequence. See N.B. to c.31.] *Propius* with the accus. [The adverbial forms of this word are frequently used with the accus. like prepositions; so sometimes the corresponding adjectives.] The comparative *longior*, § 2. The phrase *victoriam conclamant*.

Force of *illi*, § 6. [This differs somewhat from the common use in Caesar, in that the persons referred to have not been so recently or prominently mentioned as is generally the case.]

The phrase *ad unum omnes*. Transitive use of *despero*. [See N.B. to c.26.] The phrase *se ipsi interficiunt*. [Notice that *ipse* when added to *se* (or to *suus*) for emphasis modifies the subject rather than the reflexive.]



Chap. 38-52.—The attack on Cicero's camp, finally relieved by Caesar.

38-40. *Ambiorix induces the Aduatuci and Nervii to attack the camp of Cicero, who makes a vigorous defence.*

CAP. XXXVIII.

1. *ejus*,—‘his,’ referring to Ambiorix. *noctem*,—object of *intermittit*, not accus. of time how long.

2. *Re*,—‘what had happened.’ *sui liberandi*,—‘of freeing themselves.’ *iis*,—‘the,’ App.12.a.; w. *injuriis*.

3. *interisse*,—for *interiisse*. (RC.66.)

4. *nihil esse*, etc.,—‘that there is no difficulty in surprising and killing,’ etc.; or keeping the passive voice, ‘that it is a matter of no difficulty for the legion to be surprised and killed.’ *negotii*,—App.2.d. *oppressam*,—partic., App.37. N.B. *hie-met*,—for mood see RC.99.e. HF.206.4.

se adiutorem profitetur,—‘he offers his assistance’; lit.?

N.B.—Reference of *ejus*, § 1. [In ordinary relative clauses *se* and *suus* refer to the subject of the relative not of the principal clause. RC. 91.ii.b.] The order of *noctem* and *diem*. [This is not so much to emphasize the night march as because Ambiorix probably set out on the night after the battle.] The phrase *sui liberandi*. [See N.B. to c.17.] The gerund with an object in the accus., [*ulciscendi*, § 2. This is to avoid the jingle of endings which would have resulted from using the more common gerundive construction and which Caesar regularly avoids.] Chiastic arrangement, for emphasis, of § 3. [RC.110.k. BA.Introd.107.]

CAP. XXXIX.

1. **eorum**,—referring to *Nerviis*, c.38. § 4. **quam...posunt**,—cf. c.1. § 1. **nondum ad eum**, etc.,—may be translated by a relative clause, ‘to whom the report,’ etc.

2. **Huic quoque**,—*i.e.* to Cicero, as had been the case with Sabinus and Cotta, c.26. § 2. **quod**,—trans. by ‘as.’ App. 11.d.i. **munitionis**,—*i.e.* to get materials for completing the fortification. **qui...discessissent**,—for the mood see RC.99. g.iii. HF.198.4; trans. as App.31.

3. **magna manu**,—with the latter part of the sentence, not with *circumventis*.

4. **is dies sustentatur**,—freely, ‘they held out that day’; lit. ‘that day is endured.’ **adepti**,—‘if they gained,’ or ‘by gaining,’ lit.? App.37.

N.B.—*Quod* referring to a clause, § 2. Causal subj. *discessissent*, § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c.33.] Connectives in § 3. [*Atque* couples the two members of the clause, first the Eburones, Nervii and Adnatuci, second their allies and dependants. In the first half there is asyndeton, in the second *et* is used.] Asyndeton expressive of hurry, [*concurrunt, conscendunt*, § 3. Cf. N.B. to c.21.] The phrase *is dies sustentatur*. [In Bk.II.6.1. we have *aegre eo die sustentatum est*.] Conditional force of partic. *adepti*, § 4. [Notice that while logically *adepti* should go with *se fore victores* (and be in acc. case), grammatically it is placed with *confidebant*.]

CAP. XL.

1. **pertulissent**,—the subject (messengers) is easily supplied from the context. **missi**,—‘those sent.’

2. **quae**,—‘what or whatever.’ **operi**, = *munitiōi*; trans. by ‘for.’

3. **multo**,—as adv.; with *majoribus*, referring to *magna manu*, c.39. § 3. **complent**,—‘try to fill.’ (RC.97.a.iv.)

4. **qua**,—‘as’; lit. ‘in which.’ **resistitur**,—App.24. **reliquis deinceps diebus**,—‘on the remaining days that followed.’

5. **Nulla...intermittitur**,—cf. on c.11. § 6. **non...vulneratis**,—‘neither to the sick nor to the wounded.’

6. **opus**,—here used as an indeclinable adj. = ‘necessary.’ **muralium pilorum**,—heavier and larger than those they would use when fighting on the ground.

pinnae loricaeque,—the former, notched or indented battlements, the latter breastworks. **ex eratibus**,—with *loricae* not *attexuntur*, telling the material. **attexuntur**,—i.e. to the top of the wall or of the towers.

7. **cum**,—‘although.’ **sibi relinquebat**,—‘allowed himself.’

ut,—‘so that.’ **ultro**,—‘even,’ i.e. against his own wishes, in spite of himself; with *cogeretur*. **concurso**,—‘the thronging round him.’

N.B.—Asyndeton throughout the whole chapter. [This is indicative of the hurry with which everything was done. Notice *non* in place of the usual connective *neque* in § 5.] Position of *mittuntur*, § 1. [This is the most emphatic position a verb can have; here it indicates the promptness of the action taken.] Substantival use of participle, [*missi*, § 1; *vulneratis*, § 5. (RC.102.c.iv. BA.408.) The nom. is not so often used in this way as the oblique cases are.] *Deesse* w. dat. of thing, § 2. [This word generally has a dat. of the person concerned.] Conative present, *complent*, § 3. *Opus* with the nom. [practically as an indecl. adj. This is common when the subject of *esse* is a neuter pron. or adj. So also in Bk. I.34.2 and II.22.1; (BA.286. H.414.iv.N.4. AG.243.e.R.)] Position of emphasized word with *ne quidem*, § 7. [Cf. c.43. § 4; 44. § 5.]

41. *The Gauls negotiate with Cicero, but fail to deceive him.*

CAP. XLI.

1. **aliquem**,—‘some,’ here about=‘any.’ **sermonis**, etc.,—‘access for conversation and grounds of friendship.’

2. **Facta potestate**, etc.,—‘on permission being granted they state the same arguments as A. had used,’ etc.

3. **oppugnari**,—notice the tense. App. 34. d.

4. **Sabini**,—mentioned because his death (c. 37. § 2) more forcibly revealed the desperate state of affairs than did that of Cotta who fell in battle. **ostentant**,—implying ‘boastfully.’ Ambiorix had been accounted a friend of Caesar’s, and the presence of him and his people would have been impossible unless some disaster had really befallen Sabinus and Cotta. **faciundae**,—the gerundive. (RC. 66.)

5. **eos**,—Cicero and those with him. **his**,—the Romans in the other winter-camps. **suis rebus diffidant**,—‘are despairing of their own condition or safety.’ For dat. see RC. II. 55. HF. 105. 9. **hoc esse animo**,—‘had such feelings,’ lit.? (RC. 85. c. HF. 131. 9.) **consuetudinem**,—i.e. of wintering among the Gauls.

6. **licere per se**,—as in c. 30. § 3. **incolumibus**,—trans. after *discedere*. For dat. see RC. II. 163. a. HF. 163. 6.

7. **modo**,—modifying *unum*; ‘made but one answer.’

8. **ab armis discedere**,—‘lay aside their arms.’ **adjutore**,—cf. on c. 38. § 4. **utantur**,—‘they should,’ etc. (RC. 106. a. HF. 207. 5.) **sperare**,—supply *se* as subject; so *eos* with *impetraturos*. **pro**,—‘in view of’; or freely, ‘such was his justice.’

N.B.—Force of *aliquem*, § 1. [It is just by the accident of the context that it may here be rendered by ‘any (at all).’] The phrase *addunt de*. [Cf. N.B. to c. 36.] The gerundive in *-undus*. [The regular form, *faciendus*, also is used.] *Si quicquam*, § 5. [More emphatic than *si quid*, as indicating how little hope there was of support. *Quisquam* always suggests a negative. (RC. 95. vii. HF. 132. 3. BA. 358. H. 457. AG. 202. c.)] *Illis* for *vobis* of direct narration.

[Cf. c. 34. § 1.] Attraction of predicate, *incolumibus*, § 6. [This attraction is the rule with *licet* and the infin.; cf. Bk. VI. 35. 8. The accus. also is found.] *Modo* with *unum*, § 7. [As a rule with numerals or similar words (e.g. *pauci*), such words as *modo* are not needed in Latin for 'but' or 'only.' If any is used, it should be *modo*, postpositive.] Shifting of moods in indirect narration, §§ 7. 8. [Cf. N.B. to c. 34.] Primary sequence after secondary tense, *respondit*. [Cf. N.B. to c. 34.] Omission of subj. of infin. § 8. [The omission after *sperare* is less common than after verbs of saying.]

42. 43. *After many preparations a second assault is made, which after a hard day's fighting is repulsed.*

CAP. XLII.

1. *pedum novem*,—i.e. in height; freely, 'nine feet high'; with the trench it is the width that is thought of. For gen. see RC. 81. e. HF. 130. 8.

2. *consuetudine*,—'from the intercourse.' *exercitu*,—i.e. of the Romans. *quos captivos*,—App. 11. d. iv.

3. *nulla copia*,—abl. absol.; 'as there was.' etc. *quae esset*,—'such as would be.' (RC. 99. c. HF. 188. 4.) *usum*,—'purpose.'

5. *minus tribus*,—'less than three.' *quindecim*,—many think there must be some mistake here, that Caesar wrote either *quinque* or some small numeral, not *quindecim*, or else *pedum* not *passuum*. *valli*,—i.e. of the Roman camp. *falces*,—for tearing down the walls. *testudines*,—for approaching the enemy to undermine, etc., under shelter. *idem*,—nom. plur. = *iidem*.

N.B.—Gen. of characteristic, § 1. Inclusion of antecedent in relative clause, § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c. 37.] Tense of *docebantur*. Abl. absol. without partic. § 3. Rel. clause of characteristic, *quae esset*, § 3. Zeugma in case of *exhaurire*. [This is strictly applicable only to *manibus*: with *sagulis* it suggests a different meaning.]

The use of *minus* with numerals, § 5. [Cf. N.B. to c. 8. The abl. *horis* is that of the time within which, not of comparison.]

The form *idem* = *iidem*. [So *isdem* = *iisdem*. (RC. 61. end. H. p. 74. fn. 2. AG. 101. c.)]

CAP. XLIII.

1. **fundis**,—w. *jacere*, and applying to *glandes* only, not to *jacula*.

2. **magnitudine**,—‘strength.’ **loenm**,—‘part.’ **distulerunt**,—*hae* and *ignem* are subj. and obj. respectively.

3. **parta... victoria**,—abl. absol.; trans. by clause ‘as if.. were gained,’ etc.

4. **ea**,—as in c.18. § 5. **emm**,—as in c.40. § 7. **decederet, respiceret, pugnarent**,—with *ut*. **demigrandi causa**,—not superfluous, for a soldier might leave the wall for many reasons without thereby ‘abandoning his post.’ **paene... quisquam**,—‘no one scarcely even looked back,’ lit.? **ae**,—in Eng. we might use ‘but.’ **tum**,—‘at that very moment.’

5. **ut se**, etc.,—here w. indic., in the sense of ‘as.’ **ipso**,—‘very’; lit.?

6. **quidem**,—modifying *paulum*; ‘had fallen somewhat (at least.)’ **loco**,—trans. by ‘at.’ (RC.85.k.) **turri**,—abl. (RC.49.c.end. HF.40.) **quo**,—‘where,’ lit. ‘in which.’

vellent,—for mood see RC.99.h.iii. HF.206.4. **vocare**,—‘to challenge.’ **quorum**,—w. *nemo*; in Eng. begin trans. with ‘but.’

7. **omni**,—‘every.’ **deturbati**,—supply *sunt* from *est* following; cf. c.12. § 3. and c.21. § 6.

§ 4.—Prepositional phrase denoting material added directly to a noun. [*ex argilla*, § 1. Cf. *ex cratibus*, c.40. § 6.] *Sicuti* in the very rare sense of ‘as if’ = *tanquam* or *quasi*. [Elsewhere chiefly in Sallust. In Bk.III.18.8. Caesar has *ut explorata victoria* in a similar sense.] Emphatic position of *nemo*, §§ 4.6. and of *quisquam*, § 4. [*Non modo* is here followed by a negative, instead of being, as often in Latia, used in the sense of ‘not only not,’ especially when a negative like *ne quidem* follows.] *Hic* and *is* used of the same thing in close juxtaposition, [*hic dies, eo die*, § 5.] Peculiar force of *paene* when used with a verb modified by a negative, § 5. *Ut* w. indic. § 5. [Cf. Bk.VI.7.7. Seemingly but not really causal.]

Non following *-que*, § 5. [The almost invariable rule is to connect two co-ordinate clauses or phrases, of which the second contains a negative, by *neque*, cf. N.B. to c.17. Exceptions occur chiefly where the negative is closely connected with a single word (forming with it one idea), or where as here emphasis is gained by the use of *non*.]

The abl. sing. of third declension in *-i*, and of pres. participles, *turri*, *contingente*, § 6. (RC.50.c.; 56.end.)] Virtual indirect narration and pregnant use of *vocare*, § 6.

44. *An incident in the assault. The rivalry of two brave centurions.*

CAP. XLIV.

1. *Erant*,—as in c.25. § 1. App.1. N.B. *primis ordinibus*,—see N.B. to c.28. § 3. *qui...appropinquarent*,—trans. as App.31; for the mood cf. c.42. § 3. (RC.99.c. HF.188.4.)

2. *quoniam*,—‘which (of them)’; sup. ply ‘as to’ before the clause. *omnibus annis*,—‘year after year,’ lit. ‘in all the years,’ *i.e.* that they were together. *de locis*,—‘about positions,’ *i.e.* the various honors they were ambitious to win. *summis*,—w. *simulatibus*.

3. *pugnaretur*,—App.24. *ad*,—‘by.’ *Quid*,—used adverbially. (RC 83.e.) *locum*,—‘opportunity.’

4. *quaque...irrupit*,—‘and rushes forward where there seems to be,’ etc.; *qua* is the adv.; another reading is *quaeque*, the rel. *quae* agreeing with *pars*, as in App.11.d.iv. That the actual onset is not meant appears from § 6.

5. *Ne...quidem*,—‘V. too does not,’ etc. *vallo*,—abl.

6. *mediocri...relicto*,—*i.e.* between himself and the enemy; freely, ‘when a short distance away.’ *ex multitudine*,—w. *procurrentem* not w. *unum*. *quo*, etc.,—‘as he is wounded,’ etc. *hostem*,—*i.e.* Pulio.

7. *Pulioni*,—trans. by Eng. possessive. (RC.82.f.i)

8. **conanti**,—‘as he attempts’ lit. ‘for him trying’; the dat. as *Pulioni*, § 7.

9. **inimicus**,—‘his rival.’

10. **se convertit**,—‘turns’; lit.? **illum**,—‘the other, or the latter,’ *i.e.* Pulio.

11. **rem**,—‘the fight.’

12. **in locum dejectus**, etc.,—‘he gets down into a low spot and falls,’ lit.?

13. **circumvento**,—‘as he is surrounded,’ w. *huic*.

14. **Sic**,—‘thus,’ referring to what precedes and further explained by *ut...videretur*. **versavit**,—‘played with,’ ‘dealt alike with.’

inimicus,—‘though a rival.’ **auxilio...esset**,—trans. freely by two verbs; for the dat. see RC.82.c. HF.134.1.

dijudicari posset,—impersonal, the real subject being the following clause. **uter...videretur**,—‘which it seemed should be...to the other...’

N.B.—Relative clause of characteristic, § 1. [The subj. implies ‘of such bravery that they,’ etc. Cf.c.42. § 3.] Use of *quinam*; [unusual where only two are mentioned, *uter* being preferred. *Quinam* is a more emphatic interrog. than *quis*.] The number of *simultatibus*, § 2. [The plural indicates that the rivalry was mutual.]

Tense of *est visa*, § 4. [Not the frequentative use as in c.34. § 4; but simply because of the relation in time of the two acts, the looking for a dangerous place and the rushing towards it.] The abl. with *se continere*. [It is not certain whether this is an instrumental or a local abl. (RC.85.a.ii.g. and fn.)] The abl. absol. and accus. referring to the same person, [*quo*, *hunc*, § 6. Cf. N.B. to c.4. Here the strong antithesis between *hunc* and *hostem* (or as others read, *illum*) indicates a reason for the irregularity.] Dative of reference, [*Pulioni*, § 7; *conanti*, § 8. Cf.c.35. § 6.] Difference between *hostis* and *inimicus*. [Well illustrated by §§ 6.9.14.]

Emphatic position of verbs in §§ 7.8.9. [In § 9 we have chiasmic arrangement.]

Et explicative, § 11. [*Certamine* further defines and limits the meaning of *contentione*.] The reciprocal use of *alter alteri*. [Cf. c.16. § 4. *alios alii* and N.B.]

45-48. *Caesar at last hears of Cicero's critical position and hastens with two legions to his rescue.*

CAP. XLV.

1. **Quanto gravior**,—‘the more severe’; *quanto* answered by *tanto*. (RC.85.g.ii. HF.58.6.) **et maxime quod**,—‘especially as.’ **res pervenerat**,—‘the work of defence had become confined.’ **crebriores**,—trans. freely by adv.

quorum,—the *nuntii* only, of course.

2. **unus**,—‘a single,’ ‘one only.’ **loco natus**,—cf. c.25. § 1. **a prima obsidione**,—‘at the beginning of.’ etc.; with the first verb only. **fidem praestiterat**,—‘had proved faithful,’ lit. ‘had shown his faithfulness,’ (i.e. by his deeds.)

3. **servo**,—dat. w. *persuadet*. (RC.II.55. HF.105.9.)

4. **ille**,—the *servus*. **illigatas**,—probably in the hollow shaft or under the removable point.

Gallus,—‘being a Gaul.’ **inter...versatus**,—‘mingled with...and...’ **ad Caesarem**,—as c.17.2. shows, Caesar’s headquarters were at Samarobriua.

5. **ab eo cognoscitur**,—‘he (i.e. Caesar) learns’: *eo* referring to *Caesarem* just before: lit.? App.24.

N.B.—*Quanto, tanto* w. comparatives=Eng. the...the... [Cf. *quo, hoc*, Bk.IV.17.7. (RC.85.g.ii. BA.497. AG.250.R.) The imperf. tense in § 1. Abl. of manner w. *cum* and without a moditier, [*cum cruciatu*, § 1. (RC.85.e.ii. BA.269. II.419.III. AG.218.R.)] Force of *unus*, § 2. [Not=*quidam*, in which case we should have *unus ex Nerviiis*. The position of the word too is emphatic.] The phrase *a prima obsidione*. [For the force of the adj. see RC.88.d. BA.60.] Juxtaposition of related words, [*Gallus inter Gallos*, § 4. Cf. c.27. § 6.]

CAP. XLVI.

1. **Crassum**,—The movements should be carefully followed on the map. The object in sending for Crassus appears in c.17.

2. **media nocte**,—of the same night. **cum nuntio**,—not

'in company with the messenger' which is without force, but a condensed expression for 'on the arrival of the messenger.'

3. **Alterum**,—as in c.13. § 2. **ut adducat**,—App.29.*b.*; depending on the idea of ordering in *nuntium mittit*. **qua scit**,—'by which route he knows,' etc. The subj. of *scit* is Caesar; *qua* refers to *Atrebatum fines*.

4. **reipublicae commodo**,—'without danger to public interests,' lit. 'in accordance with the advantage of public business.' (RC.85.*e.*) Labienus was in a peculiarly dangerous position, as the Treveri were both powerful and inclined to rebel. Cf. c.2. § 4. **Scribit...veniat**,—'he writes...to come.' (RC.99.*a.*2.*i.*) **Reliquam partem**,—viz. the two legions with Plancus and Roscius. **proximis hibernis**,—the camp of Trebonius at or near Samarobriva.

N.B.—The subjunctives *adducat*, § 3, and *veniat*, § 4. [In neither case does the subj. depend upon one of the usual verbs of commanding; for *legatum mittit*, cf. c.3. § 6, for *scribit*, cf. c.11. § 4. In the latter case *scribit* has *ut*, here the subj. alone, which may be classed as subj. of substantival clause of purpose with *ut* omitted (RC.99.*a.*2.*1.* H.499.2. AG.331.*R.*), or as subj. of indirect command, that is representing an imperative (*si poteris veni*) of direct narration. (RC.106.*a.* HF.207.5. BA.522. H.523.III. AG.339.) In reality the variation of usage illustrates the transition from the independent subj. of wish or command to the dependent subj. of purpose. Cf. also c.49. § 2 and c.58. § 4.] Mood of *scit*, § 3. [Evidently no part of Caesar's instructions; cf. *cognoverat*, c.25. § 4. and N.B.] Tense of *posset*, § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.37.]

CAP. XLVII.

1. **procedit**,—he set out before Crassus' arrival, leaving instructions for him: hence *procedit* before *praeficit*, etc.

3. **ut erat imperatum**,—as in c.7. § 9. **non...moratus**,—'without much delay,' lit.?

4. **cognita**,—not of course from Caesar; though agreeing with *caede* only, it applies to *interitu* also. **ad**,—'against.' **fugae...fecisset**,—'set out as if in flight'; lit.? **ut**,—

'that not.' (RC.II.151. HF.185.3.) *quos...sciret*,—'as he knew that they,' etc. For the mood see RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.1.

5. *remittit*,—implying as an answer; before the next clause add in trans. 'telling him.' *quanto...esset*,—'how much danger there would be in leading,' etc.; lit.? For mood see RC.99.d. HF.176.2. *rem gestam*,—cf.c.37. § 7. *millia*,—for the case see RC.83.c. HF.69.9.

N.B.—Agreement of *cognita*, § 4. [RC.II.9.c.3.] Construction with verbs of fearing, § 4. [RC.II.151. HF.185.2. BA.138. II.498.III. AG. 331.f. Another reading here is *ne non* for *ut*.] Mood and tense of *si fecisset*, § 4. [Representing *si fecero* of direct.] Causal relative clause, [*quos...sciret*, § 4. Cf.c.4. §§ 3.4; c.31. § 6; c.33. §§ 1.2.]

Gen. of definition, [*equitatus copias*, § 5. RC.81.h. BA.304. II. 396.vi. AG.214.f. This particular phrase occurs several times in Caesar, with *copiae*, *auxilia*, *praesidia*.] The accus. of distance with *longe*, § 5. [This is a colloquialism, occurring also in Bk.VII. 16.1. Caesar has also w. *consido* the simple acc. Bks I.21.1. and VII. 66.3. and the simple ablative, Bks.I.48.1. and III.17.5.]

CAP. XLVIII.

1. *opinione dejectus*,—trans. by verb coordinate with *redierat*; 'he had been disappointed in his expectation...and had been reduced,' i.e. had to content himself with. *salutis auxilium*,—'means for ensuring safety'; lit.?

2. *magnis*,—'forced'; lit.? *gerantur*, *sit*,—for mood see RC.99.d. HF.176.2.

3. *cuidam ex*,—'one of.' *Gallis*,—here used as adj.; 'Gallic.'

4. *Graecis litteris*,—uncertain whether in Greek characters merely or in the Greek language. *epistola*,—abl. *nostra*,—w. *consilia*.

5. *monet*,—the object is the Gaul.

6. *profectum*,—trans. as if coordinate with *affore*.

7. *ut erat praeceptum*,—cf. *ut erat imperatum*, c.47. § 3.

8. *neque*,—'and...not.' *biduo*,—'for two days.' (RC.85. b.i. HF.82.2.) *animadversa*,—trans. as in App.37. N.B.

9. **perlectam**,—agreeing with *epistolam* understood, the object of *recitat*; trans. freely, ‘after reading it through, reads it out,’ etc. **omnes afficit**,—‘fills all with,’ etc.; the subj. is *ille*.

10. **fumi**,—Eng. would use the sing. **incendiorum**.—the buildings and villages of the enemy were set on fire by the advancing army; cf. c. 19. § 3.

N.B.—Asyndeton, historical present and short sentences throughout the chapter. [Cf. c. 31 and 40 for similar examples, expressive of rapid movements.] *Gallus* as an adj. § 3. [So regularly, not *Gallicus*, with personal nouns.] Position of *nostra*, § 4. The accus. of *-i* stems. *turrim*, § 8. [RC. 49. c.] Abl. of time within which, [*biduo*, § 8. Cf. c. 27. § 8. In negative clauses the distinction between this abl. and the acc. of time how long is very apt to be missed.] The tense of *videbantur*, § 10. [Contrast c. 8. §§ 5, 6. The perfect here would have been unsuitable.] The plural *fumi*, § 10. [Somewhat similar to the use noticed in N.B. to c. 24. § 1. *siccitates*.]

49–51. *The Gauls leave Cicero and go against Caesar, who encamps, and having finally enticed them to attack the camp, completely routs them.*

CAP. XLIX.

1. **Haec**, etc.,—‘these were... armed men’; *armata millia*, lit. ‘armed thousands.’

2. **Gallum repetit**,—‘again asks for a Gaul,’ not the same one as in c. 45. § 3. **qui deferat**,—App. 29. *b.* (RC. 99. *a.* 1. HF. 184. 1.) **faciat**,—trans. by infin. (RC. 99. *a.* 2. *i.*)

3. **multitudinem**,—obj. of *convertisse*, the subj. being *hostes*.

4. **ad dimicandum**,—App. 39. **animo**,—‘in spirit.’ (RC. 85. *d.*)

5. **trans vallem**,—with *conspicatur*.

6. *magni periculi*,—freely, 'very dangerous.' (RC.81.e. HF.130.7.) *tantulis copiis*,—'when his forces were so small.' App.5.a.N. *tum*,—'further.' *obsidione*,—RC.85.h. HF.158.2.1. *aequo animo*, etc.,—'he need not scruple to relax his speed,' or 'might abate... without hesitation,' lit.? *remittendum*,—supply *esse*. App.24.

7. *haec*,—i.e. *castra*, with *contrahit*. *per se*,—'of itself.' *vix...septem*,—'being for (lit. of) barely,' etc.; *millium* depends on *haec*. (RC.81.e. HF.130.8.)

angustiis viarum,—'by narrowing the streets,' i.e. the passages between the lines of tents, lit. 'by the narrowness of the streets.' *quam maxime potest*,—'as much as possible.' *eo consilio ut*,—'with the intention of incurring the enemy's utter contempt'; lit.? *hostibus*,—for the case see RC.82.f.

N.B.—The agreement of *haec* with the predicate, § 1. *Armata millia* for *millia armatorum*. [The former is preferred by Caesar.]

The subjunctive *faciat*. [Cf. N.B. to c.46. § 4.] Position of *Caesar* in abl. absol. phrase, § 4. [This seems to show the close relation in thought.] The various kinds of abl. [The chapter contains an unusually large number of examples of different uses of the abl.]

Asyndeton with *consedit*, § 6, [emphasizing the consequence; 'therefore' might be added in trans. Cf. Bk. I.23.1.] *Quam potest* and superlative, §§ 6.7. Dative of reference, [*hostibus*, § 7. Cf. c.33. § 5.]

Emphatic position of *commodissime*, § 8.

CAP. L.

1. *ad*,—'by.' *aquam*,—is the *rivum* of c.49. § 5.

2. *Galli*,—subject of *continent* understood, the verb being omitted in Eng. also; so *Caesar* in § 3.

3. *si forte*,—depending on the *ut* clause. *suum*,—'favorable to himself,' lit. 'his own.' *citra*,—'on his side of.'

5. *consulto*,—with *cedere*. *obstrui*,—c.51. § 4. shows how this was done. *administrandis*,—App.10. *quam maxime*,—=*quam maxime potest*, c.49. § 7; w. *concursari*. *concursari et...agi*,—'that they should run...and act'; lit.? App.24.

N.B.—Two adjectives added without connective to a noun, and both preceding, § 1. [This as a rule is possible only where the adj. next the noun forms with it one idea, modified by the remoter adj.; so also when both adj. follow, as Bk.I.18.10.] The phrase *suus locus*, [§ 1 literally, § 3 in transferred meaning; corresponding to the latter is *alienus locus*, ‘unfavorable ground.’] Use of *si non*, [§ 3; cf.c.48. § 5. In both cases *non* is added to the verb and *nisi* would have been impossible.] Tense of *si posset*. [Due entirely to dependence on an historic tense.]

CAP. LI.

2. *nostris etiam*,—‘as our men. .even,’ etc.; an undoubted indication of extreme fear.

3. *pronuntiari*,—as in c.31. § 3. *sen . . . sen*,—‘if . . . or.’ *ante horam tertiam*,—what hour of the day would this be? *licere*,—‘he may do so’; lit.?

4. *obstructis*,—trans. by ‘as’ clause. *in speciem*,—‘as a pretence,’ ‘for appearance’ sake. *singulis*,—‘single’; lit. ‘one at each (gate).’ *ea*,—adv. ‘by that way.’ *posse videbantur*,—‘they (*i.e.* the enemy) thought they could’; lit.?
mann,—showing their utter contempt.

5. *sic uti*,—as in c.17. § 2. *omnino*,—with *nemo*, which is emphatic by position. *resisteret*,—‘held his ground,’ not ‘resisted.’ *armis*,—trans. by ‘of.’ (RC.85.h. HF.158.2.) The meaning is that they were obliged to throw away their arms in order to escape by flight, so hot was the pursuit.

N.B.—The use of *seu . . . seu*. [See another rendering c.31. § 2.] *Ac* intensive, § 4. Abl. of road by which, [*portis*, § 5; so practically the adverbial *ea*, § 4.] Euphatic position of *nemo*, § 5. [Cf.c.43. § 4.]

52. *Caesar enters Cicero's camp and commends the brave defenders.*

CAP. LII.

1. *etiam . . . illorum*,—‘for inflicting even a slight loss upon the enemy’; more lit. ‘for even a slight loss on their part.’ *locum relinqu*,—as in c.35. § 1; in both cases with the dative.

2. *producta*,—*i.e.* for inspection. *non decimum quemque militem*,—‘not one soldier in ten,’ lit.?

4. *certius*,—‘more definitely,’ *i.e.* than Labienus’ despatches had informed him, c. 47.

5. *rem gestam*,—cf. c. 47. § 5.

6. *quod detrimentum*, etc.,—‘as for the loss that had been,’ etc., lit. ‘what loss had been.’ *hoc*,—may be acc., subj. of *ferendum (esse)*, and antecedent of *quod detrimentum*, or abl. modifying *aequiore* and anticipating *quod...relinquatur*, lit. ‘the calmer for this, because.’ In the latter case the subj. for *ferendum* is to be supplied.

beneficio,—depending on *expiato*. *eorum*,—the soldiers. *expiato*,—trans. by clause coordinate with *relinquatur*; App. 5. a. iii. *longior*,—‘too long.’

N.B.—*Vereor* w. infin. [Cf. c. 6. § 5.] *Neque etiam* instead of *et ne... quidem*, § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c. 17.] Objective gen., *illorum*, § 1.

The use, as in Eng., of a connective between the last of a series of words, § 2. [This is not incorrect, as is often stated; cf. c. 47. 2; Bk. VI. 3. 4. The connective in Caesar in such cases is *-que*.]

The phrase *decimus quisque*, § 2, [resembling the use of *quisque* with the superlative, e.g. Bk. I. 31. 12. (RC. II. 192. N.B.)] Position of relative clause, § 4. [Cf. e. 1. § 1. In both cases the position implies that all are meant; had the relative clause come immediately after the antecedent and thus before the main verb, it might have been clearly restrictive.] The doubtful use of *hoc*, § 6. [See note above.

For the omission of *id* with an incorporated antecedent, cf. c. 37. § 1.]



Chap. 53-58.—The disaffection of the Senones and Treveri held in check by Labienus.

53. *Caesar's victory prevents attacks on the camps of Labienus and Roscius. He himself decides to spend the winter in the disturbed district.*

CAP. LIIII.

1. **per Remos**,—‘through the country of the R.’ [It may also be ‘by means of the R.’] **cum**,—as in c.26. § 2. **eo**,—=*in hiberna Ciceronis*.

quo clamore,—for repetition of noun, cf. App.11.d.ii. (RC. 93.vi.) **victoriae**,—with both *significatio* and *gratulatio*. **fieret**,—‘might be given (lit. made)’; clause of purpose (RC. II.25. HF.184.1.)

3. **tribus legionibus**,—probably including Cicero’s **legion. trinis**,—‘three.’ (RC.58.c.3. HF.69.8.c.)

4. **de . . morte**,—explaining *illo incommodo*.

reliqui,—in spite of its position is probably to be taken as nom., meaning the other Gauls. **quid consilii**,—App.2.d. **unde**,—‘by whom’; more lit. ‘from whom.’

5. **Neque ullum**,—‘and no.’ **sine . . quin**,—‘without anxiety on C.’s part and without his receiving.’ etc.

6. **In his**,—‘among these.’ supplying *nuntiis*.

earum civitatum,—depending on *Gallorum*. **sui**,—sing. referring to Roscius. **longius**,—‘farther (than).’ (RC.II. 123.c.2.) **adeo ut**,—‘so much so that,’ or ‘so quickly indeed that.’ **fugae**,—cf. c.47. § 4.

N.B.—The form *oreretur*, § 1; [of the third conjug., while the verb belongs to the fourth. (H.p.135.fn.4.)] The emphatic position of *sexaginta*, § 1. The use of distributives with force of cardinals. *trinis*, § 3. (RC.58.c.3. HF.69.8.c. H.174.2.3. AG.95.b.) Notice that in similar cases *trini* not *terni* is used. *Trinis hibernis* may be a modal not a local abl.] The expressive frequentative, § 4. *Unde=a quibus*, § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.14.] The use of *quin*. [Cf. N.B. to c.55.] The use of *longius* with numerals, § 7. [So *amplius*, *plus* and *minus* are used, without affecting the case, in spite of the omission of *quam*. (RC.II.123.c.2. BA.318.Obs. H.417.N.2. AG.247.c.)]

54. *The Senones expel the king appointed by Caesar. Except the Aedui and Remi, all the Gauls are under suspicion.*

CAP. LIV.

1. *alias*,—adv. *cum*,—‘since or as.’

2. *Senones*,—subj. of *expulerunt* and *fuerunt*, § 3. Break up the sentence at *conati*. App. 37. N.B. *Cavarinum*,—with *interficere*. *cujus*, etc.,—supply *regnum obtinuerat* after *Caesaris*, and trans. the rest freely, ‘as had his ancestors before him,’ lit.? *adventu*,—abl. of time when.

3. *regno*,—for abl. see RC. 85. h. HF. 158. 2. *senatum*,—Caesar applies a Roman term to the ruling body of nobles in a Gallic tribe. *audientes non fuerunt*,—‘did not obey’; lit.?

4. *Tantum, tantam*,—answered by *ut...nobis*. *valuit*,—the subj. is the clause *esse...belli*; so of *attulit*. *esse*, etc.,—‘the news (or the fact) that some,’ etc. *principes inferendi*, ‘foremost in making.’

alteros...alteros,—the Aedui and the Remi respectively. *belli*,—trans. by ‘in.’ App. 2. c.

nulla fere,—‘scarcely any,’ lit.? *suspecta nobis*,—‘an object of suspicion to us’; dat. of reference. (RC. 82. f.)

5. *adeo*,—with *id*, ‘this in fact,’ or with *mirandum*, ‘so much to be wondered at.’ *haud scio -ne sit*,—‘I suppose is not’; lit.? RC. II. 43. HF. 176. 2.

cum...tum,—as in c. 4. § 3. *ei*,—subj. of *dolebant*. *belli*,—freely. ‘warlike.’ *tantum opinionis*,—App. 2. d. *ejus*,—‘that,’ referring to *virtute...praeferebantur*. *a*,—‘of,’ lit. ‘from.’

N.B.—The phrases *alias...alius*, § 1, and *alteros...alteros*, § 4. [The former, in classical authors, always of time not place. For the plur. of the latter, cf. *utrique*, c. 50. § 1.] Attributive prepositional phrases, [*inter Gallos*, in *Galliam*, § 2, *erga populum*, § 4. Cf. N.B. to c. 13. Notice the position of each phrase, which is the usual one in such cases.] Relation of relative clauses *quem*, *cujus*, *cujusque*, § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c. 24.] Substantival infin. clause as subject, § 4.

Gen.=in regard to, [with *principes* and *officiis*, § 4, *virtute*, § 5.]

Dative of reference or person concerned, [*nobis*, § 4. This occurs also in c. 33. § 5; 35. § 6; 44. §§ 7. 8; 49. § 7. (RC. 82. f. BA. 257. H. 384. 4. N. 2. AG. 235.)] The phrase *haud scio -ne*; [so also *haud*

scio an. Literally it expresses uncertainty, but only as a rhetorical means of expressing a positive opinion. In Cicero the meaning is always 'I rather think,' here as often in other writers 'I scarcely think.'] The reference of a *populo Romano*, § 5. [This does not modify *imperia*, but the whole phrase *imperia perferrent*. For the plural *imperia*, cf. N.B. to c.27. § 3.] The phrases *dicto audiens* and *honore habere*.

§ 5-58. *Indutiomarus tries to bring about a general revolt, but is overthrown and slain by Labienus.*

CAP. LV.

1. *totius...quin*,—cf. c.40.5. and 53. § 5. Trans. *quin* 'without.' *pecunias*,—'sums of money.'

2. *Neque...ulli*,—'no,' lit.? *civitati persuaderi*,—for pass. w. dat. see RC.II.57. HF.164.1. *Ariovisti, Tencterorum*,—see Introd. p. xii. Bk. I. and p. xiii. Bk. IV.

3. *lapsus*,—as *dejectus*, c.48. § 1. *nihilo minus*,—cf. *nihilo secius*, c.4. § 3. *tota Gallia*,—trans. as *tota acie*, c.34. § 1.

4. *rebus*,—'means.' *publice privatimque*,—'on behalf of their states and of themselves.'

N.B.—The use of *quin*. [Cf. c.2. § 2. and c.53. § 5. RC.99. b.i. BA.129.137. H.504.1. AG.332.g.] Asyndeton in §§ 1.3.4. [Indicative of haste.]

Dat. retained with pass. used impersonally, [*civitati persuaderi*, § 2. RC.II.57. BA.217.] Local abl. with *totus*, § 3; [cf. N.B. to c.34. § 1.]

CAP. LVI.

1. *ultro veniri*,—'that men were coming spontaneously or of their own accord.' App.24. *facinoris*,—referring to c.25. §§ 1-4. and c.54. §§ 2-5. *altera*,—supply *ex parte*. *neque...defore*,—'he would have no lack of,' etc., lit.?

2. *hoc*,—i.e. the proclaiming of an armed council; subj. of *est*. *quo*,—'to it or to this council.' *qui ex iis*,—'whoever of these'; *qui* for *is qui*. *convenit*,—perf., but to translated by Eng. pres.

3. *alterius factionis*,—cf. c. 3. § 2. *supra*,—c. 3. § 3. *secundum fidem*,—as in c. 20. § 1. Trans. as in App. 37. N.B.

5. *huc*,—‘to these’; *i.e.* to the states just mentioned. *priusquam id faciat*,—‘before doing so,’ lit.?

N.B.—Tense of *convenit*, § 2. [A frequentative relative clause; cf. *fecerint*, c. 31. § 1. and N.B. Notice the somewhat rare use of *convenio* of a single person coming to a meeting; cf. Bk. VI. 37. 6.] Use of *priusquam* and subj. [Evidently the storming of Labienus’ camp is regarded as a means to furthering the other ends in view. Cf. N.B. to c. 27. Notice too in this connection the force of *ac*.]

CAP. LVII.

1. *mann*,—used as *opere* in c. 9. § 1. and c. 21. § 4. *munificentissimis*,—bring out force of superl. by ‘excellently.’ *nihil timebat*,—‘had (*or* felt) no fear,’ lit.? for *nihil* see RC. 83. e. i. *ne...dimitteret*,—freely, ‘how not to lose,’ lit.?

2. *conveniendi*,—trans. by ‘for.’

4. *timoris opinionem*,—as Caesar had done, c. 50. 51. *quibuscumque...rebus*,—as in c. 7. § 1.

N.B.—Asyndeton in contrasted clauses, § 1. [Eng. would probably use ‘but.’] Disposal of cavalry during the winter. [It would seem from Labienus’ summoning the cavalry and from the small number Caesar obtained in c. 46. § 4. that the Gallic cavalry were as a rule sent to their homes for the winter.] The use of the imperfect throughout the chapter.

CAP. LVIII.

1. *maiore in dies*,—‘daily increasing’; lit.? *una*,—‘a single’; that of the *certum diem*, c. 57. § 2. *diligentia*,—abl.

2. *magna...verborum*,—‘with much insulting language’; lit.?

3. *ubi visum est*,—‘when they thought fit,’ referring to what follows; lit.? *dispersi*, etc.,—the *dis* (so often repeated) implies ‘in different directions.’

4. **praecipit atque interdicat**,—the former referring to the words *omnes peterent*, and the latter to *neu...vulneret*. It will be better Eng. not to trans. *interdicat* until just before the clause *neu quis*, etc., ‘forbids any one.’

quod...videbat,—‘which he saw would happen, as was actually the case’; *quod* referring to the abl. absol. clause. **peterent**,—=*ut peterent*. (RC.99.a.2.i.) **quis quem**,—the indef. pron. **prius...quam**,—‘until.’

mora reliquorum,—‘through their delaying over the others,’ or ‘through the delay caused by the others. (RC. 81.c.) **nactum effugere**,—‘that he should gain...and escape.’ App.37. N.B.

5. **qui occiderint**,—‘who kill him’; for mood see RC.99.e.i. HF.207.7.

6. **hominis**,—‘his,’ lit. ‘the man’s.’ **ipso**,—as in c.33. §1; implying that he had nearly effected his escape. **redeuntes**,—‘as they return,’ nomin. **quos possunt**,—‘all they can,’ lit.?

7. **paulo**,—w. *quietiorem*. **post id factum**,—‘after (or when) that was done,’ lit.? *factum*, participle, RC.102.c.ii. HF.219.b. **habuit**,—‘found.’

N.B.—Difference between *in dies*, §1, and *cotidie*, c.57. §3=daily. [The former of daily change (increase or decrease), the latter of daily repetition (though sometimes also, in the best authors, of daily change). Cf. *cotidiana*, §2.] Force of *unus*. [In §1=‘a single,’ as in c.45. §2; in §4=‘alone.’] The agent expressed in abl. absol. clause, §3. [Cf. N.B. to c.35.] Construction of subj. *peterent*, §4. [Cf. N.B. to c.46.] Use of *neu*, §4. [Cf. N.B. to c.22.] Change of tense, *peterent*, *vulneret*, §4. [Perhaps suggestive of greater stress put on the second part of their instructions.] Subj. w. *priusquam*. [Cf. c.27. §9. and c.56.5.] Mood and tense of *occiderint*, §5. [Virtual indirect narration, for fut. perf. of direct: *proponit* implies the actual promise ‘dabo,’ etc. RC.99.e.i. BA.148. AG.341.c.] *Homo* used with force of pronoun *is*, referring to a person already mentioned. [So in c.7. §9.] The phrase *post id factum*, §7. [RC.11.235. HF.219.b. BA.117.i. 11.519.N.2. AG.292.a.]

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

For the events described in the five preceding books, see Introduction, § III., p. x.

Chap. 1-10.—The struggle with disaffected tribes in North-Eastern Gaul.

1. *Caesar increases his forces by three new legions.*

CAP. I.

1. **Multis de causis**,—chief among these was the dangerous spirit of revolt shown by the desertion of Dumnorix, by the destruction of the fifteen cohorts under Cotta and Sabinus, and the rising of Indutiomarus. The expedition to Britain also had been barren of results. **per**,—implying that these officers were in charge of the levy.

2. **Pompeio**,—for the relations between Pompey and Caesar see Introduction, p. v. **proconsule**,—a consul, at the end of his year of office was generally entrusted with the control of a province. Pompey was now proconsul of Spain, but left the management of his province to his *legati*, remaining in Italy to watch the course of events, though nominally on public business. **ad urbem**,—‘near the city’; Rome of course is meant. A magistrate entrusted with the *imperium* or military command, could not enter the city without forfeiting it. **reipublicae**,—from *res publica*. **quoniam . . . remaneret**,—quoting the reason given to Pompey, viz. because he did not need them himself. **ipse**,—App. 17; in contrast with (*eos*) *quos*.

quos,—supply as antecedent *eos* object of *juberet*. **ex...** **Gallia**,—this was Caesar's province, but an arrangement had been made by which Caesar and Pompey could draw troops from any source. **consulis...rogavisset**,—lit. 'had asked (*i.e.* whether they would be bound to him) by the oath of a consul'; freely, 'had enlisted as consul.' **se**,—App.11.*b.* **juberet**,—'to order,' preceding the trans. of *quos...rogavisset*; depending on *petit*, with the same force as *ut juberet*. (RC.99.*a.*2.*i.*)

3. magni interesse,—depending on *existimans*; 'that it was,' etc. App.31. **in reliquum tempus**,—'for the future'; lit.? **ad opinionem Galliae**,—'with a view to their reputation in G.' (RC.81.*c.*) **videri**,—that...should be seen (to be). **detrimenti**,—gen. w. *quid* 'any'; App.2.*d.* **esset acceptum**,—App.32. **augeri**,—grammatically referring to *id*, *i.e.* the loss; but the sense requires that it refer to Caesar's army. Trans. freely, 'that his strength could be increased,' etc. **posset**,—App.30.

4. Quod,—App.11.*b.* **tribuisset**,—'did for the sake of,' w. dat. The alliance between Caesar and Pompey had been greatly weakened, but they were still ostensibly friends. **confecto**,—App.5.*a.* **suos**,—'his officers,' the *legati* of § 1. **ante exactam hiemem**,—'before the end of winter'; lit.? (RC.102.*c.*ii. HF.219.*b.*) **constitutis**,—'organized.' **earum cohortium**,—fifteen, or a legion and a half. See Bk.V.*c.* 24-37. **et...et**,—'both...and.' **possent**,—'could accomplish.' (RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.)

N.B.—The various uses of the subj. [Notice especially *remaneret* and *rogavisset*, subj. because quoted as part of Caesar's words in making the request, and *juberet* depending directly on *petit*. The latter subj. may be classed as subj. of substantival clause of purpose with *ut* omitted (RC.99.*a.*2.*i.* H.499.2. AG.331.*r.*), or as subj. of indirect command representing an imperative of the direct narration (RC.106.*a.* HF.207.5. BA.522. H.523.III. AG.339.) In reality the variation of usage illustrates the transition from the independent subj. of wish or command to the dependent subj. of purpose.] The phrase

magni interest with a subject infin. [§ 3. RC.II.63. HF.166.3. BA. 310. H.408. AG.222.] The subjective gen. [*opinionem Galliae*, § 3, =what Gaul thought.] The Zeugma in *id...resarciri...augeri*, § 3. Relation and connection of absol. clauses in § 4. [Asyndeton between first two, the second and third being connected by *que*. The two latter are both consequences of the first, and this relation might be expressed by inserting 'and so.'] The use of the perf. part. instead of an abstract noun, [*ante exactam hiemem*, § 4. (RC.102.c.ii. HF.219.b. BA.417. H.549.x.2. AG.292.a.)] The number of *possent*, § 4. [Due to the plur. *opes*, rather than to the double subject.]

2. *The disaffected states prepare for war.*

CAP. II.

1. *ut docuimus*,—in Bk.V.c.58. *Illi*,—the *propinqui*; App.18.b.

2. *ulteriores*,—'those more remote.' App.8. *inter se confirmant*,—'make a compact with one another.' *obsidibus*,—abl. of means. *Ambiorigem*,—the leader of the Eburones, Bk.V.27.38.

3. *Quibus*,—App.11.b. *adjunctis*,—freely, 'joined by,' or 'with the addition of.' *ad imperatum non venire*,—Bk.V.c.54; *ad*='at.' *communicare*,—'were concerting.' *maturnius*,—'earlier (than usual.)' *sibi cogitandum*,—App.24.40.

N.B.—The substantival use of adj.; [*proximi, ultiores*, § 1. The comparative in the latter case because contrasted only with the former.]

The reciprocal use of *inter se*. Position of *videret*, § 3. [It comes after the first only of the dependent infinitives, for the reason that the others are but extensions of *undique bellum parari*.]

The tense of *putavit*. [With verbs of thinking the imperf. is commonly used, except where a decision to which one has come is expressed. Cf.App.26.a.]

3-6. *Caesar puts down the rebellion among the Nervii, Senones, Carnutes and Menapii.*

CAP. III.

1. *nondum hieme confecta*,—‘even before the winter was over’; lit.? *proximis*,—doubtless the three at Samarobriga and that under Fabius (Bk. V.53.3.)

2. *priusquam...possent*,—for the subj. see RC.99.f.iv. HF.201.5. *capto*,—trans. as in App.5.a.iii. *ea praeda...concessa*,—‘granting this as plunder’; *ea* for *iis*, being attracted by *praeda*. *in deditionem venire*,—‘to surrender’; lit.?

4. *primo vere*,—‘at the beginning of spring,’ lit.? (RC.88.c.) *ut instituerat*,—‘according to the custom he had established (*or* introduced),’ lit. ‘as he had established.’ By the councils or assemblies which he regularly established among the conquered tribes, he was able to keep up official connection with them. Hence absence was regarded as a sign of revolt. *initium*,—the predicate of *hoc esse*.

ut...videretur,—‘that men might see he regarded (lit. that he might be seen to regard) everything (else) (as) of less importance,’ *i.e.* than the punishment of these tribes. *Lutetiam*,—‘to L.’ (RC.83.g. HF.85.1.)

5. *civitatem conjunxerant*,—‘had formed one state with them’; implying not an alliance but a close political union. Usually *cum* and abl. also follows *conjungo*. *memoria*,—abl. of time within which. (RC.85.b. HF.82.2.) *consilio*,—*i.e.* to revolt. *afnisce*,—from *absum*.

6. *Hae re*,—probably the adjournment to Lutetia. *suggestu*,—the platform from which the soldiers were addressed and proclamations issued. *magnis*,—‘forced.’

N.B.—*Priusquam* with the subjunctive of purpose, § 2. [The end in view may be either something to be achieved or something to be prevented. (RC.99.f.iv. HF.201.5. BA.442.)] *Ea*, § 2, attracted by its appositive. The phrase *primo vere*, § 4. [The adj. is used in a partitive sense. Cf.c.8. § 6, and Bk.V.45.2. (RC.II.114.b. BA.60. H.440.N.1. and 2. AG.193.)] The use, as in Eng., of a connective between the last of a series of words, § 4. [This is not incorrect, as is often stated; cf.Bk.V.47.2. and 52.2. The connective in Caesar in

such cases is *-que*.] The personal use of *videor*, § 4. [This is regularly preferred to the impersonal use. (BA.43.) Here, as in c.1. § 3, *videor*=‘be seen,’ rather than ‘seem.’] Various ways of rendering abl. absol. clauses. [Especially where these occur in groups, the idiomatic rendering should be made an object of study.]

CAP. IV.

1. *ejus*,—App.12.*a*. and *b*. *princeps*,—‘the leader in,’ etc. *conantibus*,—‘as they are attempting (to do this)’; dat. with *nuntiatur*, lit. ‘to them attempting.’ *priusquam*...*posset*,—as in c.3. § 2.

2. *sententia*,—tran. abl. by ‘from.’ (RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.) *adeunt*,—‘obtain an interview.’ *quorum in fide*,—‘under whose protection.’

3. *petentibus Aeduis*,—‘at the request of the A.’; abl. absol.; App.5.*a*.N. *belli*...*esse*,—‘was (the time) of *or* for war,’ etc.; supply *tempus* as predicate after *esse*. *quaestionis*,—at the end of the summer campaign an investigation was held, c.44.

4. *custodiendos*,—‘to guard,’ lit. ‘to be guarded.’ (RC. 104.c. HF.173.7.)

5. *deprecatoribus*,—‘as intercessors,’ in apposition with *Remis*. *ferunt*,—‘they receive.’

6. *equites*,—see Introd.p.xvi. § V. *civitatibus*,—trans. dat. by ‘of’ or ‘from.’

V.B.—*Priusquam* w. subj. § 1. [Cf.N.B. to c.3.] Construction of *conantibus*. [It is taken by some as not dat. but abl. absol. w. *iis* omitted, a very rare usage, but found in Bk.IV.12.2, *resistentibus*.]

Emphatic position of *adesse*, before its subject, § 1. Asyndeton with *non*, § 3. [In adding a negative clause or phrase in emphatic contrast, *non* not *neque* is used; cf.Bk.V.30.3.] The abl. absol. and accus. referring to the same person, [*obsidibus*, *hag*, § 4. This rare construction is not to be imitated in prose composition (RC.II.52.c. BA.422.b.), although it occurs not infrequently in Caesar; cf.Bk.V.4.3. and 44.6. So practically c.43. § 1. Often added emphasis gained by this construction.] The gerundive of purpose with *trado*.

CAP. V.

1. **totus**,—‘wholly’; really an adj. agreeing w. *Caesar* understood. **et mente et animo**,—freely, ‘heart and soul,’ lit.? **Treverorum**,—trans. gen. by ‘with.’

2. **Cavarinum**,—he had been made king of the Senones by Caesar, but had been driven by them from the kingdom. **quis**,—‘any’ w. *motus*. **hujus iracundia**,—i.e. the resentment he would be likely to feel at his expulsion: *hujus*=‘his,’ subjective genitive. **eo...odio**,—taken together; this implies that his rule had been harsh and his expulsion not undeserved. **civitatis**,—may go with either *odio* or *motus*.

3. **pro explorato habebat**,—‘regarded it as certain.’ **ejus**,—App.12.*b*. N.B. **animo circumspiciebat**,—‘sought to discover,’ lit.?

4. **Erant**,—App.1. N.B. **uni ex Gallia**,—‘alone of the Gauls,’ lit.? **cum his...Ambiorigi**,—‘between these and A.’ lit.? **venisse**,—supply *eum* as subj. Trans. ‘he had formed a friendship with the G.,’ lit.?

5. **illi**,—‘from him’; for dat. see RC.82.*b.i*. **detrahenda**,—supply *esse*. App.41.34. **prins...quam**,—‘before,’ lit. ‘at an earlier time than.’ **ipsum**,—App.17.*a*. **desperata salute**,—‘despairing of safety’; lit.? App.5.*a*. **congregdi**,—‘to unite’; the subject is still Ambiorix.

7. **Illi**,—App.18.*b*. **coaeta manu**,—trans. by principal clause as in App.5.*a*.iii., suppling ‘but’ before the next clause. **loci praesidio**,—explained by *silvas paludesque*. **sua**,—App.15.*c*. **eodem**,—adverb.

N.B.—Adverbial force of *totus*, § 1. [RC.88.*d*. BA.61. H.443. AG.191.]

Quis=any, § 2. [Here *quis* is used as an adj.; on the other hand in Bk.I.48.6. we find *si qui* used substantively. (RC.62.*a*.)]

Ambiguous position of *civitatis*, § 2. Position of *erant*, § 4. [‘There were (he reflected) the M.’ rather than ‘the M. were.’]

Plural of *unus*=alone. (RC.58.*a*.) Dat. of reference, *Ambiorigi*, *Germanis*, § 4, and of interest with verbs of taking away, *illi*, § 5.

(RC.II.106; 69. BA.257. H.384.4; 385.II.2. AG.235; 229.) Mood of *lacesseret*; [here due not to an idea of purpose as in c.3. and 4, but to the fact that it is dependent on *existimabat*.] *Despero* used as a transitive verb, § 5. [So by Caesar in the abl. absol. only.]

Difference between Eng. and Latin idiom in *ad Labienum in Treveros mittit*, § 6. [RC.II.93.c. BA.315.] Local abl. w. *fretus*, § 7.

Use of the various pronouns in the chapter. The introductory words in the various sections.

CAP. VI.

1. **partitis**,—with passive force, though from a deponent verb. App. 5. **a. quaestore**,—see Introd. p. xviii. § c.3. **pontibus**,—over the marshes and streams. **numero potitur**,—for the abl. see RC.85. **a. ii. d.** HF.116.

2. **pacis petendae**,—the gerundive construction. App.40.

3. **habiturum**,—‘will regard,’ supply *eos* as object. **hostium numero**,—may be translated freely by ‘as’; so *custodis loco*, § 4; lit.?

finibus,—trans. by ‘within.’ **recepissent**,—trans. by Eng. simple pres. (RC.99. **h. iii.** HF.209.2.) The direct form would be fut. perf. indic.

4. **confirmatis**,—here with the force of *constitutis*.

N.B.—Deponent *partior* w. passive force, § 1. [So only in the partic., as also c.33. § 1. (RC.68.c.end. H.231.2. AG.135. *b.*.)] Asyndeton in § 1. [This is common in giving a series of actions following in rapid succession.] Use of *ille* to indicate a change of subject, § 3. [Cf. c.2. § 1; c.5. § 7. Similarly, but in a different position, c.3. § 2. and c.5. § 5. (RC.92.c.)] *Numero* and *loco* with the genitive to express capacity or character or purpose. [The dative of purpose has a similar force, but is used with semi-abstract nouns (chiefly in the sing.), not with personal nouns. *Nomine* and *modo* with the gen. are also used in much the same way.] Direct form of the conditional sentence *habiturum si recepissent*, § 3. [RC.II.87. HF.209.2. The tense is due to the historical pres. being treated as a secondary tense.]

Local abl. *finibus*, § 3. Asyndeton with *ipse*, § 4. [This is the rule in Latin.]

7, 8. *Labienus overcomes the Treveri.*

CAP. VII.

1. **hiemaverat**,—the pluperf. because the winter was over.

2. **non longius...via**,—‘not more than two days’ march.’ (RC.II.123.c.2.) For the gen. *bidui* see RC.81.e. HF.130.7. **missu Caesaris**,—‘sent by C.’; lit.?

3. **a**,—‘at a distance of.’

4. **temeritate**,—trans. by ‘through.’ (RC.85.m. HF.71.3.) **fore**,—freely, ‘he would have,’ supplying *sibi*; lit.? **impedimentis**,—trans. by ‘for.’ This includes the baggage referred to in c.5. § 6. **praesidio**,—App.5.a.iii. **magno**,—here= ‘numerous.’ **intermisso spatio**,—‘at a distance of,’ or more lit. ‘leaving an interval.’

5. **Erat**,—cf. c.5. § 4. **difficili transitu**,—‘difficult to cross’; lit.? for the abl. see RC.85.c. HF.131.9; so *ripis prae-ruptis*, to be translated by ‘with.’ **habebat in animo**,—‘intended’; lit.?

6. **spes**,—‘the (enemy’s) hope.’ **loquitur palam**,—not implying in any formal address, but merely so that it was overheard. This of course was intentional, and ‘therefore’ might well be inserted at the beginning of this clause. **dican-tur**,—App.31. (RC.99.g.i. HF.198.2.)

suas exercitusque,—‘his own and the army’s.’ **in dubium devocaturum**,—‘endanger or expose to risk’; lit.? **et**,—in Eng. we might use ‘but.’

7. **ut**,—lit. ‘as’; freely, ‘for.’ **Gallorum**,—as adj. ‘Gallic.’ **nonnullos...cogebat**,—‘some were naturally in favor of the interests of Gaul’; lit. ‘nature (*i.e.* the natural love of country and kinsmen) compelled some,’ etc.

8. **primis ordinibus**,—‘the centurions of the first ranks.’ **quid...consilii**,—‘what his plan is.’ For gen. cf. App.2.d. (RC.81.b.) **quo**,—‘in order that.’ (RC.II.26. HF.183.5.) **det**,—‘may cause’; from *do*.

quam...consuetudo,—‘than is the custom of the R. people’;
lit. ‘than custom brings (with it) or goes.’

9. *His rebus*,—‘by this means.’ *in tanta...castrorum*,—
‘seeing that the camps were so near,’ lit.?

N.B.—Genitive of definition, [*equitatus copius*, § 1. RC.81.h. BA.304. H.396.vi. AG.214.f. This particular phrase occurs several times in Caesar, with *copie*, *auxilia*, *praesidia*.] *Cum* with the indicative in what is logically the main clause, [§ 2, *jamque aberant cum cognoscunt*. In this idiom the *cum* clause always follows. (RC.II. 170.c. BA.435. AG.325.b.) Cf.c.8. § 1.] The phrase *non longius bidui via*, § 2. [As usual with *longius*, *amplius*, *plus* and *minus*, *quam* is omitted: (RC.II.123.c.2. BA.318.Obs. H.417.x.2. AG.247.c.) *Longius via* may then stand either for *longius quam viam* (the abl. of comparison, RC.85.f. HF.55.5. H.417. AG.247), or for *longius quam via* (the abl. of measure of difference, RC.85.g. H.379.2. AG.257.b.)] The verbal noun derived from the supine, [*missu*, § 2. The abl. case is the one most used in such nouns, and, as here, is often equivalent to a perf. part. phrase.] Abl. and gen. of characteristic, [§ 2.4.5. Notice that *bidui*, being a compound, is only apparently an exception to the rule that this construction is not used when the noun has no modifier.] Use of *cotidie* with *augebatur*, § 6. [Generally *in dies* is used in cases of daily increase.] *Ut* w. indie. § 7. [Seemingly but not really causal. Cf.Bk.V.43.5. The clause is strictly relative, giving an illustrative assertion.] Difference between *Gallicus* and *Gallus*, § 7. [The former is never used by Caesar to modify personal nouns.] The phrase *primi ordines*=*primorum ordinum centuriones*. [The meaning of the phrase is uncertain; it seems to mean either the six centurions of the first cohort of a legion, or more probably the first centurion in each of the ten cohorts, each of whom was practically in command of the whole cohort.] *Quo* with a comparative clause of purpose, § 8. *A*=at a distance of, § 3. [Except in one case, Caesar does not specify the place from which the distance is measured; but the fact that this does occur (Bk.IV. 22.4. with *ex eo loco*) shows that it cannot be a case of hyperbaton.] *In* with abl. equivalent to a causal clause, § 9. [This is one form of the use of *in* to give the ‘circumstances under which.’]

CAP. VIII.

1. *Galli*,—subj. of *dubitant*. *inter se*,—‘one another’;
lit.? *ne...dimitterent*,—App.29.b. *longum...audeant*,—

depending on idea of *saying* implied in *cohortati*; in trans. supply 'saying.'

dignitatem,—subj. of *pati*. **ut...non audeant**,—'to lack the boldness'; lit.?

2. **Quae**,—App. 11. *b.* **citra**,—'to his side of,' lit. 'this side of.' **usus**,—trans. as in App. 37. N.B.

3. **quodam**,—from *quidam*.

4. **petistis**,—=*petivistis*. (RC. 66.) **facultatem**,—obj. of *habetis* and antecedent of *quam*. **praestate**,—imperative. **nobis ducibus**,—'under one leadership'; lit.? App. 5. *a.* N.

5. **signa converti jubet**,—'he orders them to wheel about.' lit.? **praesidio**,—App. 3. *c.* **ad**,—before *impedimenta*, 'by or near'; before *latera*, 'on.'

6. **quos...credebant**,—'those whom they had believed to be fleeing'; supply *eos* as subj. of *ire*. **infestis signis**,—freely 'ready to attack'; lit.? **modo**,—'even,' emphasizing *impetum*.

7. **Quos**,—App. 11. *b.* **consecutus**,—trans. as in App. 37. N.B. **post**,—'afterwards'; an adverb. **recepit**,—'recovered,' for Caesar had received its submission once before, Bk. V. 2-4.

auxilio,—App. 3. *c.* **sese...receperunt**,—'returned home'; for *domum* see RC. II. 93. *a.* HF. 85. 1.

8. **Cum his**,—meaning at the same time, so that *comitati eos* is not superfluous. **auctores fuerant**,—'had instigated'; lit.?

9. **quem...permansisse...demonstravimus**,—freely, 'who, as we have stated, had remained true'; lit.? App. 34. **est traditum**,—agreeing with the nearer of its two subjects.

N.B.—*Cum* w. indic. *dubitant*, § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c. 7.] The shifting from the subj. to accus. w. infin. constr. § 1. [The indirect narration here depends on *cohortati*. It is not Latin usage to change the leading verb, as English often does, according as a statement, question, request or command is to be introduced; any verb or phrase which virtually implies that something was said is sufficient for introducing any or all forms of reported utterance.] *Patior* with *ut*, § 1. [So only in negative clauses, and when the subject is a thing, not a person: usually with the infin., as in c. 11. § 4.] Change in

sequence of tenses, § 1, [*dimitterent, audeant.*] Force of *atque*, [§ 4 (twice); § 9. It introduces something dwelt on as of even greater importance.] *Modo...non* instead of *ne...quidem*, § 6. The phrase *paucis post diebus*, [§ 7. RC.85.g.i. BA.322. H.423.N.2. AG.250.]

Inelegant repetition, with a different meaning, of *recepit, receperunt*, § 7. *Cum his*, § 8, of identity of time, not accompaniment, [as the addition of *comitati eos* indicates.]

9. 10. *Caesar crosses the Rhine into Germany.*

CAP. IX.

1. **Caesar**,—taking up the narrative where it was left at the end of c.6.

2. **quod**,—‘because *or* that.’ **se**,—that is, Caesar. **altera**,—‘the other,’ *or* ‘the second.’

3. **supra**,—‘above,’ *i.e.* higher up the river. **quo**,—‘where,’ ‘at which.’ **ante**,—two years before, as described in Bk. IV. 16–18.

4. **Nota...ratione**,—‘as the method (*i.e.* for building the bridge) was well known and settled,’ implying that he followed the plan previously adopted, which had been well considered and successful, and was familiar to almost all his troops.

5. **ad**,—‘at *or* by.’

6. **ante**,—at the time of the former crossing. **in deditionem venerant**,—as in c.3. § 2. **purgandi sui causa**,—App.39; ‘to clear themselves.’ **qui doceant**,—App.29.b. (RC.99.a.1. HF.184.1.)

7. **ut parcat**,—App.29.b. **sibi**,—App.3.b. **ne**,—‘lest.’ **odio**,—trans. by ‘in *or* through’; Caesar’s hatred is meant. **communi**,—with the same force as *omnium w. Germanorum*. **amplius obsidum**,—App.2.d.

8. **Cognita causa**,—‘after investigating the case.’

N.B.—Position of *Caesar*, § 1. [When we have a change of subject, indication is clearly given by placing the new subject at the beginning of the clause. So *I’bii*, § 6, and *Caesar*, § 8. In the last case the subject is irregularly placed within an abl. absol. clause, which is

however closely connected in thought with the main clause. Cf. Bk.V.49.4.] The use of *se* for *eum* or *ipsum* in an ordinary *quod* clause referring to the subject of the principal verb, [§ 1. Contrast *eorum*, c.7. § 1. Had the subjunctive *misisset* occurred, this would be quite regular, as it would then be given as part of Caesar's thoughts. But in ordinary *quod* or relative clauses, *se* refers to the subject of its own clause. (RC.91.ii.b.)] The accus. *paulum* for *paulo*, § 3. [The latter is more usual with words implying comparison.] Position of *subito*, § 5. [This gives it practically the force of an attributive adjective.] The expression *sui purgandi causa*, § 6. [Nothing like *sui purgandorum* ever occurs. (RC.103. BA.399.Obs.I. H.542.I. N.1. AG.298.a.)] Abl. of cause, §§ 4.7. Substantival use of *amplius*, § 7. The present inf. with *polliceor*, § 7. [Here *polliceor* is irregularly (but in harmony with its derivation) used as a modal verb with the complementary infin. To avoid this, some read *dari*, connecting it with *vellet*.]

CAP. X.

1. *paucis post diebus*,—as in c.8. § 7. *fit certior*,—‘is informed,’ lit.? *omnes*,—w. *copias*. *mittant*,—App.29.b.

2. *castris*,—trans. dat. by ‘for.’ *ad iniquam...deduci*,—‘can be brought to fight under unfavorable conditions,’ lit.?

3. *quaeque*,—two words. *gerantur*,—App.31. (RC.99.d. HF.176.2.)

4. *paucis diebus intermissis*,—App.5.a.; ‘after the lapse of a few days.’ *venerint*,—trans. as if pluperf.; the actual tense of the report is retained. *suis sociorumque*,—as in c.7. § 6. *penitus*,—‘completely or entirely.’

5. *magnitudine*,—App.5.d. (RC.85.c. HF.131.9.) *introrsus*,—i.e. to the eastward. *pro*,—‘as.’ *objectam...prohibere*,—lit. ‘being interposed...protected’; freely, ‘was interposed...so that it protected.’ *ab*,—‘on the part of,’ not ‘from.’ *injuriis*,—RC.85.h. HF.158.2. *ejus*,—w. *silvae*.

N.B.—The phrase *auxilia peditatus*, § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c.7.] The substantival clause of purpose with words of ordering, §§ 1.2.3. The indic. *appellatur*, § 5. [This is not part of the report, but an addition of the writer's. (RC.II.215.e. HF.207.4.N.2. BA.449. H.524.2. AG. 336.b.)] *Ab* meaning ‘in the direction of,’ § 5.

Chap. 11-28.—A description of (a) the Gauls (11-20), and (b) the Germans (21-28).

11, 12. *Party divisions among the Gauls.*

CAP. XI.

1. **perventum est**,—App.24. **quo**,—‘how,’ lit. ‘in what. (RC.85.d.) **inter sese**,—‘from each other’; lit.?

2. **partibus**,—‘portions or divisions’; i.e. not of the *pagi*, but of the *civitates*; the *pagi* being one example of the *partes*.

3. **qui**,—‘those who.’ App.11.d.i. **eorum**,—i.e. of the Gauls; w. *judicio*; App.12.b. N.B. **quorum...redeat**,—‘on whose pleasure...the decision...depends,’ referring to the persons just described in *principes qui...existimantur*. For the mood see RC.99.e. HF.188.4.

4. **ejus ire causa**,—‘for this purpose,’ explained by *ne...egeret*. **ne quis**,—‘that none,’ lit.? **auxilii**,—(RC.II.66.)

suos,—App.15.c. **quisque**,—i.e. each *princeps*. **opprimi**, ‘to be oppressed.’ **si faciat**,—‘if he should do.’

5. **est totius Galliae**,—‘exists for, or prevails in, the whole of Gaul,’ lit. ‘is of.’ *Galliae* is thus predicative gen. with *ratio est*. **in summa**,—‘in general,’ ‘on the whole.’

N.B.—The impersonal passive construction, [*perventum est*, § 1. RC. 96.b. HF.164.2. BA.217.Obs. H.301.1. AG.146.c.] Circumlocution

with *de*, § 1. [Caesar has *de* and abl. instead of a direct object in the accus. very frequently with such verbs as *cognosco*, *propono*, *impetro*, *peto*, *postulo*. With *propono* the direct object is the rule.]

The repetition of *factionum*, § 3, for clearness’ sake. The

relative clause of characteristic, [*quorum...redeat*, § 3. This is really equivalent to, ‘of such a character that on them depends,’ etc. (RC. 99.c. HF.188.4. H.500.I. AG.320.) As it is of a different nature from the previous rel. clause, which is in fact its antecedent, there is of course no connective.] The gen. with *egeo*, § 4. [The usual construction is the abl. The word occurs elsewhere but once in Caesar, in the partic. used substantively.]

Quisque...non patitur, § 4. [Not to be regarded as equivalent to *Nemo patitur*. Cf. the Greek οὐκ ἐὰν.]

The irregularity in the conditional clause, *si faciat...*

habet, § 4. The emphatic position of *duas*, § 5.

CAP. XII.

2. **Hi**,—‘the latter.’ **minus**,—‘not much or not very.’ **erant in**,—‘belonged to.’ **quod...clientelae**,—explanatory of *cum...valerent*.

3. **tantum...anteceesserant**,—‘they had so far outstripped them in power’; for the abl. see RC.85.*d*.

4. **obsides**,—‘as hostages,’ in apposition with *filios*. **publice**,—be careful not to translate this ‘publicly.’ **consilii**,—with *nihil*. App.2.*a*.

occupatam,—‘which they had seized’; App.37.*c*. **possiderent**,—all the subjunctives in this section depend on *tantum anteceesserant ut*. (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.)

5. **profectus redierat**,—trans. as in App.37. N.B., adding ‘but’ in trans. **imperfecta re**,—‘without settling the matter,’ lit.? App.5.*a.n*.

6. **facta commutatione**,—this, with all the following absolute clauses, should be rendered by principal verbs, adding ‘so that’ or ‘and thus’ before the principal clause *Sequani dimiserant*. App.5.*a.iii* **Aeduis**,—dative. **eorum**,—referring to *Aeduis*. **se uti**,—‘that they were enjoying.’ **reliquis rebus**,—abl. of means., ‘in other respects,’ lit.?

7. **quos...intellegebatur**,—‘and as it was perceived that these had equal influence with Caesar’; more lit. ‘that these equalled (the Aedui) in influence.’ **quos**,—App.11.*b*.; subj. of *adaequare*, to which *Aeduos* should be understood as the object. **gratia**,—RC.85.*d*. **Remis**,—for dat. see RC.82.*f*

8. **illi**,—the Remi.

9. **Eo**,—‘such,’ with *statu*. **tum**,—at the time to which Caesar has brought his narrative.

N.B.—The indicative with *cum*, purely temporal, § 1. [RC.II.170.*a*. HF.203.2. BA.433. AG.325.] The imperfect tense in consecutive clauses, § 4. [The rarer perfect would have dwelt more on the existence of these conditions, and less on their being a result of the superior power of the Sequani.] The difference between Eng. and Latin idiom in such phrases as *Romam ad senatum*=to the

senate at Rome. [Cf. c. 5. § 6. (RC. II. 93. c. BA. 315.)] The periodic sentence in Latin. [This occurs far more frequently in Latin narrative than in English, and is so essential that it should be carefully studied, where as in § 6 striking examples occur of the difference between the two languages. (RC. II. 238.)] The impersonal use of *intellegebatur*, § 7. [This is rare with this verb except in the perfect tenses; here *qui quod... intellegebantur*, *ii qui* would have been objectionable, especially when referring to different persons.] Abl. of specification, [*potentia*, § 3, *gratia*, § 7.] *Asyndeton* and *chiasmus* in arrangement of the consecutive clauses in § 9. [This puts in stronger relief the relations of the two tribes.]

13-15. *The various classes or ranks in Gaul.*

CAP. XIII.

1. **aliquo sunt numero**,—‘are held in some esteem,’ ‘are of some account.’ (RC. 85. c. HF. 131. 9.) **servorum loco**,—as in c. 6. § 4. **nullo**,—an irregular form for the dat. *nulli*.

2. **Plerique**,—i.e. of the *plebes*. **quibus in hos**, etc.,—‘who have the same rights, without exception, over them as masters have over slaves’; lit. ‘to whom there are.’ (RC. 82. g. HF. 120. 3.)

3. **Sed**,—resuming. **est druidum**,—in Eng. insert ‘that.’

4. **Illi**,—the Druids; so also (*ad*) *eos* and *hi*. **apud eos**,—the Gauls in general.

5. **quod**,—‘any,’ adjectival w. *facinus*. **idem**,—=*idem*, ‘they also.’

6. **si qui aut privatus**,—‘if any individual.’ **non stetit**,—‘does not abide by’; lit.? **sacrificiis**,—trans. abl. by ‘from.’ (RC. 85. h. HF. 158. 2.)

7. **gravissima**,—‘most (not the most) severe.’ **Quibus**, etc.,—‘those who have been thus excluded’; *quibus*, the dat. with *hi* for antecedent. App. 24. **numero**,—as in c. 6. § 3. **his**,—for the abl. see RC. 85. h. HF. 158. 2. **incommodi**,—with *quid*, App. 2. d. **his petentibus**,—may be dat., indirect obj. of *redditur*, or abl. absol. **honos**,—an old form of *honor*.

9. **aut si qui**,—‘if any,’ lit. ‘either if any.’ **suffragio**,—with *contendant*.

10. **media habetur**,—‘is regarded as the centre’; *media* is a predicate adj.

11. **reperta esse**,—‘to have originated,’ lit.?

12. **qui**,—App. 11. *d.i.* **illo**,—adverb; *i.e.* to Britain. Druidism was less subject to foreign influence in the remote island, and probably existed there in a purer and more complete form than in Gaul, where the common people were beginning to assert their political rights.

N.B.—Emphatic position of *duo*, § 1. [Cf. c. 11. § 5.] *Loco*, § 1, and *numero*, § 7, = *as*. [Cf. N.B. to c. 6.] The old form *nullo* for *multi*, § 1. [Cf. *alterae*, Bk. V. 27. 5. Such forms, whether revivals of older Latin or not, are due to a desire for uniformity.] The indicative in frequentative clauses, with *cum*, § 2, with *si*, §§ 5. 6. 9. [For the indie. with *cum* see RC. II. 170. b. HF. 204. 4. BA. 434. The perf. or pluperf. tenses are usually found, according to the tense (primary or secondary) of the principal verb. The present tense here is rather unusual.] *Ille*, *is* and *hic* of the same persons, § 4. *Constituo* with acc. and with *de*, § 5. [Cf. N.B. to c. 11.] The form *idem* = *iidem*. [So *isdem* = *iisdem*. RC. 61. end. H. p. 74. fn. 2. AG. 101. c.] The substantival use of the indefinite pron. *qui*, § 9. [On the other hand *quis* is used adjectively in c. 9. § 5.] Translation of the adj. *medius*.]

CAP. XIV.

1. **consuerunt**,—for *consueverunt*. (RC. 66.) Note that *consuevi* = *I have become* (hence *I am*) *accustomed*. **una**,—adverb. **militiac, rerum**,—App. 2. c.

2. **in disciplinam**,—trans. by ‘for the purpose of,’ etc.

3. **vicenos**,—‘twenty,’ lit. ‘twenty each.’ (RC. 58. c. HF. 69. 8.) **ea**,—*i.e.* the contents of the verses; trans. freely, ‘these doctrines.’ **cum**,—‘although.’ (RC. 99. i. iii. HF. 204. 5.) **rationibus**,—explanatory of *reliquis rebus*; ‘business’ or ‘dealings,’ lit. ‘accounts.’ **Graecis litteris**,—the Greek characters only, not the Greek language.

4. **Id**,—‘this. **quod neque...velint neque**,—‘because they do not wish...or.’ For subj. see RC.II.220. HF.206.4. **confisos**,—‘through relying on’; lit.? App.37.a.

quod,—‘as,’ lit. ‘which.’ **ut**,—‘namely that,’ explanatory of *quod*.

5. **hoc persuadere**,—‘to inculcate this,’ ‘to convince men of this’: *hoc* is explained by the clause following. **ab aliis ad alios**,—‘from one to another,’ lit.? **hoc**,—‘thus,’ ‘by this,’ referring to the belief just mentioned. **excitari**,—‘men are roused’; App.24.

6. **Multa disputant**,—‘they engage much in discussion.’ **terrarum**,—‘the world.’

N.B.—*Cum* concessive, § 3.

Asyndeton in adding an explanatory

phrase, *rebus...rationibus*, § 3.

The mood of *velint*, § 4. [Practi-

cally regarded as a sub-oblique clause, that is, a subordinate clause reported in the indirect form. This, if due to *videntur*, might be brought out by rendering ‘because they wish (as it seems)’; or it may be an example of the confusion of thought seen in Bk.V.6.3. *quod...diceret*, and Bk.I.23.3. *quod...existimarent*. RC.II.220. BA. 448.] Personal use of *videntur*, § 4. [BA.43.] Indicative in

a relative clause dependent on ace. and inf., *qui discunt*, § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.10. § 5. This is a periphrasis of the writer’s and not represented as an integral part of the Druids’ thoughts. The subjunctive however would have been equally possible.] The semi-deponent

confisos. The use of *hoc* in § 5. [In one case it looks forward, in the other backwards. In the former case *illud* also is very common.]

CAP. XV.

1. **est equitum**,—supply *genus*; ‘is (that) of,’ etc. **cum est usus**,—‘whenever there is need.’ **fere**,—with *quotannis*. **uti**,—explanatory of *quod*, as in c.14. § 4.

2. **ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plurimos habet**,—‘the more distinguished each is, the more...has he’; lit.? **Hanc unam...noverunt**,—‘this is the only (form of)...which they know’; lit.?

N.B.—*Cum* = 'whenever,' with indic. [Cf. N.B. to c.13. The verb *incidit* is in the perf., as is usual in frequentative clauses in combination with a principal clause in the present. (RC. II.202. BA.431. H.471.5. AG.279.b.)] Explanatory *ut* clause, [§ 1. Cf. c.14. § 4. (RC. II.208. II. H.501.III.)] *Quisque* and the superlative with *ut* and *ita*, expressing proportion, § 2. [Equivalent to Eng. *the...the* with comparative. (BA.376.ii; 497. H.458.2.)]

16-18. *The religious customs and beliefs of the Gauls.*

CAP. XVI.

1. *omnis*,—'as a whole.'

2. *qui*,—App. 11. *d. i. gravioribus*,—'unusually severe,' *i. e.* more severe (than could be cured by the ordinary means). *quique*,—'or who,' lit.?

homines,—object of both *immolant* and *immolatueros*. *administris*,—in apposition with *druidibus*; trans. by 'as.'

3. *nisi...reddatur*,—App. 32. (RC. 99. *h. iii.* HF. 209.1.2.) *habent instituta*,—'they have established.' Caesar's description reads as if from hearsay, and it seems probable that these human sacrifices had ceased in his day. This will explain the lack of clearness in the device described in § 4.

4. *quorum*,—with *membra*. *quibus*,—App. 11. *b.*

5. *Supplicia*,—meaning 'the offering.' *sint*,—RC. 99. *e.* HF. 206.4. *dis*,—from *deus*, (RC. 9.) *cum...defecit*,—'whenever...fails'; lit.?

N.B.—Comparative with standard of comparison omitted, *gravioribus*, § 2. Position of *nisi*, § 3. [By this position more emphasis is laid on the words preceding. Notice the *chiasmus* in the arrangements of the repeated words.] The difference between *habent instituta* and *instituerunt*. [Such phrases as the former (from which arose the use of the modern auxiliary 'have') call special attention to the continuance of an act already past; they mark an accomplished condition or result, not the act of attainment. (RC. 97. *g. i.*)]

The omission of the preposition before *aliqua noxa*. [It is often so omitted, even at the end of a series with each of whose other members it is repeated, when the last member of the series is a general term.] *Cum* = whenever, w. perf. indic. § 5. [Cf. N.B. to c.15.]

CAP. XVII.

1. **Deum**,—‘as a god.’ It is not to be supposed that the gods of the Gauls had these names, but Caesar assigns to each the name of that Roman god whose nature bears the closest resemblance. **hunc**,—supply *esse*; App. 34.

2. **Apollinem**, etc.,—supply *colunt*. **quam**,—‘as,’ lit.? **depellere**,—depending on *habent opinionem*.

3. **Hinc**,—‘to this last.’ **cum**,—‘whenever.’ **ea quae**,—App. 12. *b.* N.B. **ceperint**,—App. 31. (RC. 99. *e. i.* HF. 206. 4.) **reliquis res**,—‘everything else.’

4. **conspicari licet**,—‘one may see’; lit.?

5. **accidit. .auderet**,—trans. as if pres. tense. **neglecta**,—App. 5. *a.* **capta, posita**,—neut. used substantively, object of the verbs; trans. by ‘what has been,’ etc. **apud se**,—‘in his house.’ **ei rei**,—‘for doing so’; lit.?

N.B.—Repetition of *hujus, hunc*, § 1. *Cum*=whenever, w. indic. [Cf. N.B. to c. 15.] Subordinate clause in virtual indirect narration, *ceperint*, § 3. [*Devoent* implies a promise, *dabimus quae ceperimus* (fut. perf.) RC. II. 216. BA. 448. H. 528. 1. AG. 341. c.] The use of *licet*. The force of *quispiam*. The substantival use of participles, § 5. The secondary sequence of tense, *accidit. .auderet*, § 5. [The past tense is due to the fact’s being represented as a matter of experience.]

CAP. XVIII.

1. **patre**,—‘as their father.’ This is another way of stating their claim to be ‘autochthonous,’ *i. e.* to be the original inhabitants who had never immigrated.

2. **Ob**,—‘in accordance with’; meaning that as they were sprung from the god of the lower world, so the darkness is the parent of the light of day. Cf. “and the evening and the morning were the first day,” Gen. I. **omnis**,—Trans. as if it were *omnia* with *spatia*.

3. **fere ab reliquis**,—‘from most others.’ **quod**,—‘that’; lit. ‘because.’ **ut possint**,—App. 30. b. **aetate**,—RC. 85. c. HF. 131. 9. **turpe**,—supply *esse*, of which the clause *filium.. assistere* is subject; App. 35.

N.B.—*Cum* w. indic. § 3. [See N.B. to c. 15.] Substantival use of the infin. [*assistere*, § 3.]

19, 20. *Customs connected with family relations, funerals, and the conduct of public affairs.*

CAP. XIX.

1. **quantas.. tantas**,—‘whatever sums of money.. as much,’ or freely, inverting the clauses, ‘as much money... as.’ **nomine**,—trans. by ‘as’; lit.? **eum communicant**,—‘add to,’ ‘place with.’

2. **ratio habetur**,—‘an account is kept.’ **uter**,—‘whichever’; here a relative pron. **vita superavit**,—‘survives’; lit.?

3. **in**,—‘over.’ **paterfamiliae**,—‘the head of a house’; a compound, for the declension of which see RC. 9.

res.. venit,—‘suspicion has been aroused,’ lit.? **in servilem modum**,—‘after the custom with slaves,’ *i.e.* by torture in order to extort the truth. **si compertum est**,—*i.e.* that they have caused his death. **excruciatas**,—App. 37. N.B.

4. **pro**,—‘considering.’ **vivis**,—supplying *iis*, ‘to them while alive.’ **hanc memoriam**,—‘our time’; lit.? **quos.. constabat**,—‘who, it was generally understood, had been,’ etc. **confectis**,—trans. by ‘after,’ App. 5. a. ii. **una**,—adverb; supply ‘with them.’

N.B.—Position of *quantas* clause, § 1. [Relative clauses precede their antecedents to gain emphasis.] Force of *nomine* with gen. [Cf. N.B. to *numero*, c. 6.] Tense of *superavit*, § 2. [Cf. c. 15. § 1; c. 16. § 5; c. 17. § 3.] *Uter* used as a relative pronoun, § 2. *Cum* = whenever, w. indic. § 3. [Cf. N.B. to c. 15.] The form *paterfamiliae*, § 3, [instead of the more archaic and common *paterfamilias*.

For a similar example of a tendency to drop abnormal forms, cf. *nullo*, c.13. § 1. and N.B.] The perfect tense in subordinate clauses with the present tense in the main clause, §§ 2.3. [See N.B. to c.15.]

The force of *pro*, § 4. Predicative use of *viris*, § 4. [Cf. *deum*, c.17. § 1, and *putre*, c.18. § 1.] The phrase *cordi esse*. [An example of the dat. of purpose.] *Ac* intensive, § 4. *Ilic* of what is present in point of time, § 4.

CAP. XX.

1. *Quae civitates*,—App.11.d.iv. ‘the states which.’ *commodius*,—*i.e.* than the others; trans. freely by the superlative. *habent sanctum*,—‘have it enacted,’ almost equal to ‘have enacted.’

quis quid,—both indefinite; so *quo* below.

2. *uti*,—trans. before *si quis*. *neve*,—‘and not.’

3. *quae visa sunt*,—‘what it seems best to conceal’; lit.? *judicaverunt*,—trans. freely by pres. tense.

per,—‘during.’ *conceditur*,—App.24; freely, ‘they are not allowed,’ or ‘no one is allowed.’

N.B.—Inclusion of antecedent in the relative clause, § 1. The difference between *habent sanctum* and *sancierunt*. [Cf. N.B. to c.16.]

Mood and tense of *acceperit*; [the perf. subj. representing the fut. perf. indic. of the direct form.] The difference between *rumor* and *fuma*. [The former represents rather what is unwarranted or has little foundation.]

21. *Religion and morals among the Germans.*

CAP. XXI.

1. *qui..praesint*,—‘to attend to.’ (RC.99.a. HF.184.1.)

2. *numero*,—as in c.6. § 3. *quorum*,—App.11.a. Caesar’s statement is at variance with other authorities. His knowledge of the Germans, except as he saw them in the border tribes, and in war, must have been entirely second-hand.

4. **Qui**,—App.11.*d.i.* *hoc*,—abl.

5. **in habent**,—‘count it among.’ *rhenonum*,—*rhen*o, spelled also *reno*, was a garment made of reindeer-skin. **parte**,—App.5.*a.* N.

N.B.—The compressed expression in *Germani...differunt*, § 1.

Emphatic position of *aperte*, § 2. The phrase *ab parvulis*, § 3.

[*So a pueris*, Bk.IV.19.] *Intra* of time, § 5. [Elsewhere in

Caesar always of place; *inter* also is used once thus, Bk.I.36.7.]

The middle or reflexive use of *perluor*, § 5. The genitive *rhenonum*, § 5.

22. Agriculture and the holding of land.

CAP. XXII.

2. **in annos singulos**,—‘for each year.’ **gentibus**,—‘families,’ not ‘tribes.’ **quantum agri**,—‘as much land as.’ **et quo loco**,—trans. by a separate clause. **anno**,—(RC.85.g. HF.82.3.) **alio**,—adverb.

3. **agricultura**,—trans. abl. by ‘for.’ (RC.85.i.ii. HF. 150.1.) **vitandos**,—referring to *frigora* as well as to *aestus*.

N.B.—Difference between *quisquam*, § 2, and *quis* (*ne qua*, § 3).

Tense of *coierunt* and *visum est*, § 2. [See N.B. b c.15.] The

mood of *visum est*. [Notice the difference in force between this

clause which is relative and the dependent interrogative clause with

visum sit. Cf.c.20. § 3.] The ablative of measure of difference,

[*anno post*, § 2. RC.85.g. HF.82.3. BA.279. H.423; 430. AG.250.]

Explanatory clause of purpose, §§ 3.4. [RC.II.208.1.c.] The abl.

of price w. *commuto*. [*Studio agriculturam* would have been equally

correct. RC.85.i.ii. HF.150.1. BA.280. H.422.N.2. AG.252.R.] The

mood of *nascuntur*, § 3, as contrasted with *videat*, § 4. [The latter is

a part of the thought represented as being in the mind of the Ger-

mans.] The phrase *suus quisque*, § 4. [This is the regular order;

cf. *sibi quemque*, c.31. § 2.] The brachylogy *cum potentissimis*=

cum opibus potentissimorum, [cf.c.21. § 1.]

23. *Customs in war, and manner of government.*

CAP. XXIII.

1. **vastatis finibus**,—trans. by infin., as in App.5.a.iii., or ‘by laying waste.’

2. **finitimos**,—subj. of *cedere*; App.35.a; similarly *quemquam audere. neque quemquam*,—‘and no one.’ **prope**,—w. *consistere*.

4. **bellum**,—object of both the verbs following. **qui... praesint**,—App.29.b. (RC.99.a. HF.184.1.)

5. **communis**,—i.e. ruling over the whole people; though many of the German tribes are known to have had kings.

6. **habent**,—‘involve, bring.’ **quae... fiunt**,—explanatory of *latrocinia. ea*,—i.e. *latrocinia*.

7. **ubi quis**,—‘whenever any.’ **dneem**,—i.e. in one of these raids. **qui... profiteantur**,—‘(and) that those who... should declare themselves,’ depending on *dixit*.

8. **qui ex his**,—‘those of these who.’ **secuti sunt**,—i.e. who have promised their aid but have not gone on the expedition. **in... numero**,—trans. by ‘as.’ **his**,—trans. dat. by ‘from.’ (RC.82.b.i) **rerum**,—App.2.c.

9. **qui**,—App.11.d.i. **quaque**,—lit. ‘each,’ meaning that this is done in each case that arises; freely, ‘any.’ **habent**,—‘regard.’ **his**,—trans. in a different way with *patent* and *communicant*.

N.B.—*Quam* with the superlative.

Hoc referring to a preceding

idea, and explained more fully by a clause following; §§ 2.3. [Cf. c. 14. § 5.] *Proprium* w. gen. Relative clause of purpose w.

deligo, § 4. Unusual position of the relative clause *quae... fiunt*, § 4. Abrupt change from infin. to subj. in indirect narration, § 7.

[Cf. N.B. to c.8.] Asyndeton before *qui*, § 8; [common in the adversative relation.] Tense of *venerunt*, § 9. [Cf. N.B. to c.13.]

Difference between *sanctos habent*, § 9, and *habent sanctum*, c.20, § 1. [For still another use of *habeo*, see § 6.] *Qui* for *ii qui*

or *eos qui*, §§ 7.8.9. [In § 7 also we have *ii qui* for greater clearness where there is a change of subject.]

24. *The relative power of the Gauls and the Germans.*

CAP. XXIV.

1. **fuit tempus**,—App. 1. N.B. **ultro**,—as opposed to merely resisting invasions. **trans Rhenum**,—with *nitterent*.

2. **quibusdam**,—‘certain (other).’ **video**,—implying that he had read this.

3. **hoc**,—‘this present.’ **justitiae**,—trans. gen. by ‘for.’ App. 2.c.

4. **eadem**,—*i.e.* as in former days. **victu**, etc.,—‘manner of living and dressing.’

5. **Gallis autem**,—‘while in the case of the G.’; indirect obj. of *largitur*. **provinciarum**,—the two provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul. **rerum**,—‘products.’ **copiam atque usus**,—‘possession and use,’ lit. ‘uses *or* needs.’

6. **assuefacti**,—the subject of the clause is *Galli*, the same as in the former part of the chapter. **ipsi**,—‘even they themselves,’ emphasizing the subject. **illis**,—the Germans.

N.B.—The subjunctive with *fuit tempus cum*. [This is akin to the relative clause of characteristic.] Asyndeton in § 1. Absence of connective between the two relative (*quam*) clauses, § 2. [Cf. c. 11. § 3. and N.B.] Tense of *video*, § 2; [*vidi* would have been used of actual experience; cf. *audio*, not *audivi*, of what has been learned by oral transmission.] The last two only, of a series of three members, connected by *que*. [Cf. N.B. to c. 3.] Singular verb *largitur* after compound subject, § 5. Plural of *usus*, § 5; [because of the variety possible.] Irregular position of *ne...quidem*, § 6. [We should have expected *ne ipsi quidem* or *ne se ipsi quidem*; but sometimes with words closely connected (as *se ipsi* always are) *ne quidem* enclose another than the word which really bears the chief emphasis; cf. Bk. III. 6. 2. *ne in locis quidem superioribus*.]

25-28. *The Hercynian forest and the animals peculiar to it.*

CAP. XXV.

1. *supra*, — c.24. § 2. *dierum*, — (RC.81.e. HF.130.7.) *iter*, — (RC.83.c. HF.69.9.) *expedito*, — dat. and used as a substantive. *aliter*, — *i.e.* than by day's journeys. *mensuras*, — *i.e.* any regular standards of measurement such as the Greek *stade* or the Roman *mile*.

2. *recta... regione*, — 'parallel with the D.'; lit. 'in a straight direction as regards.' etc.

3. *sinistrorsus*, — *i.e.* northwards. In point of fact it is the Danube which turns southward. *diversis*, — 'remote.'

4. *hujus*, — *i.e.* where Caesar was; trans. freely 'western.' *dieat, acceperit*, — (RC.99.c. HF.188.5.a.) So *differant* and *videantur*, § 5. *initium*, — the eastern border; we should say 'end.' *cum*, — 'although.' *processerit*, — perf. subj.

5. *nasei constat*, — 'are known to be found,' lit.? *visa sint*, — 'are not seen'; for subj. (required by *constat*) see RC.99.e. HF.206.4. *prodenda*, — 'worthy of handing down.' *haec*, — App.13.

N.B.—Dat. of reference, *expedito*, § 1. [RC.82.f. BA.257. H.3844.X.3. AG.235. The adj. is here used substantively also.] Subj. in relative clauses of characteristic, §§ 4.5. Position of *se*, § 4. [It is wrongly placed before *aut* as if it were intended to apply also to the second *aut* clause.]

CAP. XXVI.

1. *bos*, — App.1. N.B. The reindeer is generally supposed to be meant. The word *bos* would here suggest to a Roman an animal resembling the ox in so far that it was horned, cloven-hoofed, and graminivorous. *figura*, — trans. abl. by 'of.' (RC.85.c. HF.131.9.) *his cornibus*, — trans. abl. by 'than.' (RC.85.f. HF.55.5.)

2. **ejus**,—referring to *cornu*, § 1. **summo**,—‘end, tip’; used substantively. **sicut**,—‘as it were.’

N.B.—The abl. of characteristic with *gen.* for its modifier. [The modifier necessary for such an abl. is generally a word in agreement.]

Use and translation of *medius*. Different methods of comparison of *excelsus* and *directus*. Force of *his*, § 1; [made clearer by the relative clause, and not with the same meaning that *eis* would have had.] Abl. of comparison, *cornibus*, § 1.

CAP. XXVII.

1. **quae appellantur**,—freely ‘so-called.’ **capris**,—‘that of goats,’ lit.? **varietas**,—‘different colors’; the body is brown and white. **mutilae sunt cornibus**,—‘have broken (or blunted) horns’; lit.? for abl. see RC.85.d. Many of these details are of course entirely fabulous.

2. **quo**,—indefn. pron., w. *casu*.

3. **His sunt**,—‘they have’; lit.? for dat. see RC.82.g. HF. 120.3; or trans. *sunt pro* by ‘serve as.’

4. **est animadversum**,—trans. by active. **consuerint**,—see on c.11. § 1. **omnes**,—with *arbores*. **accidunt**,—with a long. **summa species**, etc.,—‘the outward appearance of standing trees may be left,’ or perhaps ‘the appearance of having their tops standing.’

5. **Huc**,—‘against these.’ **una**,—as in c.19. § 4.

N.B.—*Sunt quae* followed by the indicative, § 1. [The subj. of characteristic would be quite impossible here; cf. Bk. IV. 10.5.] Condensed expression in *consimilis capris figura*. [Cf. c.34. § 8.]

The abl. of specification, § 1.

Perfect indic. in subord. clauses combined with pres. in principal clause, §§ 2.4.5. [In two cases with *cum*=whenever. Cf. N.B. to c.15.] Abl. of manner, *consuetudine*, § 5, without a modifier or the prep. *ex*.

CAP. XXVIII.

1. **est eorum**,—‘is made up of those,’ ‘comprises those.’ **specie**,—supply *sunt* and trans. ‘and have the appearance.’ (RC.85.c. HF.131.9.)

2. *eorum est*,—‘they have,’ lit.? *neque*,—‘and neither.’
 3. *captos*,—App.37. N.B. *se*,—to be taken also w. *exercent*.
 in *publicum*,—‘publicly.’ *quae sint testimonio*,—‘as proof,’ lit.? (RC.99.*a*.1; 82.*c*. HF.181.1; 134.1.)
 5. *bovm*,—from *bos*. (RC.9. HF.45.)
 6. *conquisita*,—App.37. N.B. *ab*,—trans. by ‘at.’ *pro*,—‘as.’

N.B.—Abl. of specification w. gen. as modifier, *specie*, etc., § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c.26.] Subj. and dat. of purpose combined, § 3. Condensed expression, *a cornibus*, § 5. [Cf. N.B. to c.34. § 8.] Force of *ab* in *ab labris*, § 6. [Cf. *ab radicibus*, c.27. § 4.]

Chap. 29–44.—The war of vengeance on Ambiorix and the Eburones.

29–31. *Caesar returning to Gaul invades the land of the Eburones; Ambiorix escapes but Catuvolcus is slain.*

CAP. XXIX.

1. *Ubios*,—adj. here; ‘of the Ubii.’ The narrative is resumed from c.10. *supra*,—c.22. § 1.

2. *barbaris*,—trans. dat. by ‘from.’ (RC.82.*b*.i.) *auxilia*,—*i.e.* sent to aid the Gauls.

3. *in extremo ponte*,—‘at the end of,’ etc. *turrim*,—accus. (RC.49.*c*. HF.40.) *cohortium*,—these must have been auxiliaries from the province, for in c.33. § 1 Caesar has all his troops with him. *tuendi*,—App.40.

4. *maturescere*,—*i.e.* early in August. *Ambiorigis*,—trans. by ‘against.’ *per silvam*,—with *praemittit*, not *profectus*. *quingentis*,—an error, probably of the copyists; the forest had about one-third of this extent. *si . . . posset*,—‘to see whether he could,’ or ‘in the hope that he could.’ (RC. II.216.)

5. *fieri*,—‘from being made (or built).’ *subsequi*,—notice the tense.

N.B.—Dat. of interest w. verbs of taking away, § 2. [RC.82.b.i. BA.243. II.385.2. AG.229.] The phrase *extremo ponte*, § 3. [RC.88.c. BA. 60.] Contrast *partem ultimam pontis*, § 2.] *Si posset*, depending directly on *praemittit*, § 4. [This is really the subj. of virtual indirect narration, being part of the thought in Caesar's mind in sending Basilus. (RC.II.216. BA.474. II.529.1.x.1. AG.331.f.) Some grammarians explain it however as subj. of indirect question. Notice the secondary sequence after the historical infin., while immediately after we have *prohibeat* and *fiat*.] The tense of *subsequi*, § 5 [We should expect the fut.; but the pres. may be justified by the statement above, *profectus...praemittit*.]

CAP. XXX.

1. **contra**,—‘contrary to.’ **quo in loco**,—‘to the place where’; for *ad eum locum in quo*. **dicebatur**,—used personally.

2. **Multum potest**,—‘has great power.’ **cum...tum**,—see Vocabulary. **magno casu**,—‘by pure chance,’ ‘by great good luck.’ **ipsum**,—i.e. Ambiorix. **etiam**,—‘yet,’ with *incautum*. **videretur**,—co-ordinate with *incideret*.

magnae fuit fortunae,—‘it was a great piece of luck.’ The subject is the infin. clause, *ipsum effugere mortem*, ‘that he himself should, etc.’ **erepto, comprehensis**,—trans. by ‘although.’

3. **hoc quoque**,—the abl.; ‘for this reason also,’ explained by *quod...sustinuerunt*. **propinquitates**,—trans. by the sing.

4. **pugnantibus**,—App.5.a.N. **fugientem**,—‘as he was fleeing,’ or freely, ‘in his flight.’ **subeundum**,—‘falling into.’

N.B.—Personal construction of *dicor*, § 1. [BA.43.] The predicative genitive, [*fortunae*, § 2. (RC.81.a.1. H.401. AG.211.d.)] Abl. absol.=concessive clause, § 2;=causal clause, § 3. Relative *ut* clause, § 3. The plural of an abstract noun, [*propinquitates*, § 3. Here, as often in Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is used referring to the various instances or cases where the quality is manifested.] The present participle, § 4. The use of different expressions for similar ideas, for mere variety's sake. [This is rarely noticeable in Caesar. In this chapter however, cf. *potest*, § 2, and *valuit*, § 4; *magno accidit casu*, and *magnae fuit fortunae*, § 2.]

CAP. XXXI.

1. **-ne...an**,—‘whether...or.’ (RC.II.44. HF.177.5.) **existimarit**,—=*existimaverit*. (RC.66.) The subj. is due to the dependence on *dubium est*. **tempore**,—freely, ‘by the want of time.’ **exclusus**,—‘because prevented.’

2. **certe**,—‘at any rate.’ **sibi**,—trans. dat. by ‘for.’ (RC.II.59.) **Quorum**,—referring to plural idea implied in *quemque*.

3. **qui...hi**,—‘those who.’ **insulis**,—*i.e.* districts near the sea cut off from the mainland at high tide.

4. **alienissimis**,—‘their bitterest enemies.’

5. **omnibus**,—‘all manner of.’ **qui...fuisset**,—‘as having been.’ (RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.4.)

N.B.—Alternative question, § 1. [These are rare in Caesar. He uses *ne...an* three times; the more formal *utrum...an* twice; and once *an* without any particle in the first clause; in three cases also the first part is omitted, and the *an* clause alone given. (RC.II.42.44. HF.177.5. BA.158.sqq.168.)] Difference in tense of *existimarit* (representing *existimarit* of direct) and *crederet*, § 1. [The former refers to a decision come to. See App.26.a.1.] The dat. with *consulo*. The dat. w. *proximus*, § 3. [This is the usual construction with the adj. Caesar has also the accus.] Mood of *fuisset*, § 5. [An example of the causal relative clause. (RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.4. BA.509. H.517. AG.320.e.)] The last section furnishes an excellent example of a Latin period.

32-34. *After receiving the submission of the Segni and Condrusi, Caesar leaves the baggage at Aduatua under Cicero, and sets out with his army in three divisions in pursuit of the Eburones.*

CAP. XXXII.

1. **ex gente**, etc.,—‘who are sprung from the G. and reckoned a part of them.’ **qui**,—referring to *Segni Condrusique*.

oratum,—the supine; trans. by Eng. infin. (RC.105.a. HF. 171.3.) **ne...neve**,—‘not to...nor.’ **unam**,—‘the same or identical.’ **cogitasse**,—=*cogitavisse*. (RC.66.)

2. **quaestione**,—abl. of means w. *explorata re*. **qui**,—indef. adjective, w. *Eburones*.

3. **Aduatucam**,—trans. acc. by ‘to.’ (RC.83.g. HF.85.1.)

4. **Titurius**, etc.,—*i.e.* the winter-camp of the legion and a half slain under Sabinus and Cotta; see Bk.V.24-37.

5. **enm...tum**,—as in c.30. § 2. **rebus**,—abl. of cause. (RC.85. m. HF.71.3.) **probarat**,—=*probaverat*. (RC.66.) **manebant**,—notice tense; trans. ‘still remained.’ **ut sublevaret**,—‘so as to lighten.’

proxime conscriptas,—see c.1. § 1. Trans. as in App.37. a. N.B.

N.B.—Use of supine in *-um*, § 1. *Nere* as a connective of negative final clauses, § 1. [In c.20. § 2. it is used to add a negative to an affirmative clause of purpose.] Abrupt change from subj. to infin. in indirect narration, § 1. [Cf. N.B. to c.8.] Change of tense in putting clauses in the indirect form, §§ 1.2. Accus. of limit of motion, *Aduatucam*, § 3. [RC.93.g. HF.85.1. BA.313. H.380.II. AG. 258.] Gender of *id*, § 4. [This refers to *Aduatuca* (fem.), but follows the regular usage in agreeing with its neuter predicate. *Hoc* immediately after refers to *castelli*, whose gender it retains as there is no predicate nominative; *hic est locus* however would have been required.] The use of *cum...tum=et...et*, § 5. [Cf. c.30 § 2; Bk.V. 4.3; 54.5.] Syncopated forms of the verb, §§ 1.5. [Cf. c.31. §§ 1.3.5. RC.66. H.235. AG.128.a.] Dat. of purpose and of interest, §§ 1.5.6. [Notice the dative with *mitto*, § 1, and the double dat. in § 5.]

CAP. XXXIII.

1. **Partito**,—as in c.6. § 1. **ad...versus**,—‘towards’; either word would be sufficient.

3. **Scaldem**,—an obvious error; possibly *Sabim* should be read. **profectum**,—App.34.c.

4. **Discedens**,—‘on setting out’; notice tense. **post diem septimum**,—as c.35. § 1. shows, this means ‘on the seventh day,’ not as our reckoning would make it, ‘on the eighth.’

quam ad diem,—‘by which time.’ **relinquebatur**,—App.23; notice the tense.

5. **reipublicae commodo**,—‘consistently with the general welfare,’ lit. ‘in accordance with the advantage of public business.’ **revertantur**,—App.29.*b*. (RC.99.*a*.2.1.) **ad**,—‘by or on.’ **alind initium**, etc.,—‘begin the war afresh’; lit.?

N.B.—The preposition *versus*, § 1. [Caesar uses it alone, or preceded by *ad* or by *in*. This peculiar usage is due to the derivation of the prep. from the participle.] The imperfect tense in §§3.4. [*Relinquebatur* because it refers to the moment of his departure.] The phrase *post diem septimum*, § 4; [due probably to the Roman habit of counting inclusively. With *post* and *ante*, either the abl. is used, *ante* and *post* being adverbs, or the accus. governed by the words as prepositions. RC.85.*g*. BA.322.] Shifting of the gender of *dies*, §§ 4.5. [Here, as in Bk.I.6.1. where there is an exactly similar change, *dies* is fem. when the notion of a *limit* or *period* is uppermost; *dies* in the ordinary sense of a natural day is masc.] *Hortatur* followed by subj. without *ut*, § 5. [Here a true purpose clause follows, *ut...possint*. See N.B. to c.1.]

CAP. XXXIV.

.. **supra**,—c.31. §§ 1.2. **defenderet**,—‘could defend.’ (RC.99.*c*. HF.188 4.)

2. **Ubi cuique...consederat**,—freely, ‘each established himself where...to him’; lit.?

3. **vicinitatibus**,—‘the neighbors’; implying that they were thus easily learned by the Romans also by enquiries. **summa**,—noun. **universis**,—dat., referring to the Romans. **ex parte**,—‘in part,’ ‘in some measure.’ Caesar means that the precautions necessary for the safety of individuals helped to ensure the safety of the whole army.

4. **Nam**,—explaining the clause *magnam...conservandis*. not the rel. clause just preceding. **longius**,—‘too far.’ **silvae...itineribus**,—‘the woods with their,’ etc.; *itineribus* is abl. absol. **confertos**,—obj. of *prohibebant* and referring to the Romans (*militibus*, § 3).

5. *si...vellet, dimittendae erant*,—‘if he had wished...he would have had to,’ etc. Trans. all passives in this section by the active. *secleratorum*,—marking the deep hatred which Caesar felt towards those who had destroyed the legion and a half the year before, Bk.V.24–37.

6. *instituta ratio*,—‘established practice.’ *praesidio*,—App.3.c. (RC.82.c. HF.134.1) *insidiandi*,—trans. gen. by ‘in.’ App.2.c. *deerat*,—from *desum*.

7. *Ut...difficultatibus*,—‘considering that there were difficulties of such a kind.’ *diligentia*,—abl. *providebatur*,—supply *tantum* referring to *quantum*; freely, ‘Caesar exercised foresight, as far as provision could be made by careful attention.’ *ut*,—‘so that’; of purpose, not result. *etsi...ardebant*,—trans. before *potius...praetermitteretur*. *ulciscendum*,—‘revenge,’ *i.e.* for the loss of the legion and a half under Sabinus and Cotta. *quam*,—referring to *potius*. *nooceretur*,—‘harm should be done,’ *i.e.* to the enemy. (RC.96.b. HF.164.1.)

8. *magna multitudine circumfusa*,—‘by a large number rushing upon them from all sides’; lit.? *pro*,—‘for.’

N.B.—*Ut*=as, §§1.6.7. [In §7 the verb is omitted, as is not infrequent in Latin with relative *ut* clauses thrown in parenthetically; cf.Bk.V.31.6. This restrictive use of *ut* clauses is frequent in Latin, generally modifying an adj. or an adv.; cf.Bk.IV.3.3.] Tense of *offerebat*, §2. [The reasons which call for the pluperf. in dependent frequentative clauses do not hold here.] Force and position of *aliquis*, §§2.7. [In §2 and the second case of §7, the word is emphatic, ‘some, even if but little.’ The position in §2 adds emphasis to the word; in §7 it is in the natural position.] Abstract noun for concrete, [*vicinitatibus*, §3. This rarely occurs in Caesar’s straightforward prose.] Conditional clause *si vellet*, combined with indie. of principal clause, §§5.6. [This is in both cases but a seeming irregularity. (RC.II.85. N.B. HF 193.2. BA.461. H.511. AG.308.c.) For the asyndeton in §6, cf. N.B. to c.23.] The condensed expression *quam miles* for *quam militis vita*, §8. [For similar examples see c.21. §1; c.22. §4; c.27. §1; c.28. §5. On the other hand, cf.Bk.III.13.1. *carinae planiores quam nostrarum navium*.]

35-12. *Cicero's camp at Aduatuca is surprised by the Sugambri and only by a hard struggle saved. On Caesar's return the Sugambri retire.*

CAP. XXXV.

1. **quem ad diem**,—as in c.33. § 1.

2. **Hic**,—adv. **quantum possit**,—cf. c.30. § 2.

3. **parvam modo**,—‘even a slight.’ **afferret**,—‘could afford.’ (RC.99.c. HF.188.4.)

4. **ultra**,—‘further.’

5. **Cogunt**,—trans. by passive in order to keep the antecedent *Sugambri* close to the relative clauses. **a quibus**, etc.,—‘and who, as... received,’ etc. lit.? **supra**,—in Bk.IV. c.16. see Introd. § III. p. xiii.

6. **millibus**,—(RC.85.g. HF.58.6.) **primos**,—‘nearest’; i.e. the border districts. **numero**,—abl. w. *potiuntur*. (RC. II.65. HF.116.) **cajus**,—the antecedent is *pecoris*.

7. **longius**,—with reference to *primos*, § 6. **non...non**,—‘neither...nor.’ **natos**,—‘bred as they are amid,’ etc. **Quibus in locis**,—‘where.’

8. **Quid**,—adverbial. **quibus**, etc.,—‘when you might be,’ lit. ‘to whom it is permitted to be.’ **horis**,—time within which. (RC.85.b. HF.82.2.)

9. **Tantum**,—‘only so much,’ hence freely ‘so small.’

10. **quam...praedam**,—App.11.d.iv. **codem duce**,—the latter in apposition; ‘the same man as guide.’

N.B.—Sequence of tenses in § 2. [The present is justifiable as expressing a universal truth, but even in such cases Latin generally follows the usual sequence, as e.g. Bk.I.40.6.] The relative clause of characteristic, § 3. [Cf. c.34. § 1.] Abl. of measure of difference, § 6. [Here *infra* implies comparison; cf. *paulo infra*, c.28. § 1. (RC. 85.g.i. BA.279. H.423. AG.250.)] Asyndeton and anaphora with *non...non*, § 7. [So c.31. § 1.] *Atque*, introducing a new and important statement, § 8. Attraction of predicate with *licet esse*, § 8. [This is the usual construction, though the accus. also is found; cf. Bk.V.41.6. (RC.II.163.a. HF.163.6. BA.201. II.536.2.3. AG.272.a.)]

Abl. of time within which, *horis*, § 8. *Huc* in indirect narration, § 8. [*Eo* would have been more regular but less lively.] *Tantum* = 'only so much,' § 9. Abl. predicate w. *utor*, § 10. [Cf. on the other hand *pro poculis utuntur*, c.28, § 6.] Asyndeton, historical present and short sentences throughout the chapter. [This indication of rapidity is found in Bk.V.c.31.40.48. and in Bk.VI.c.37.38.39.]

CAP. XXXVI.

1. *qui*,—'although he.' (RC.99.i.iv. HF.96.8.) *praeceptis*,—'according to,' etc. *quemquam*,—'any,' w. *calonem*. *de numero*,—w. *fidem servaturum*. *progressum*,—supply *eum esse*. *neque ulla*,—'and no.'

2. *illius*,—*i.e.* Cicero's. *liceret*,—'they were allowed,' lit.? *quo*,—'whereby or by which'; trans. *offendi posset* immediately after *quo*. *novem*,—see c.33. §§ 1-3. *oppositis*,—'lay in front'; w. *equitatu* also. *offendi*,—impersonal, App. 24. *frumentatum*,—supine; see on c.32. § 1.

3. *legionibus*,—the nine legions who had gone away. *qui*,—App. 11.d.i. *hoc spatio*,—*i.e.* during Caesar's absence. *trecenti*,—freely, 'to the number of 300.' *sub vexillo*,—instead of with the cohorts, who had their *signa*. This would indicate that this body was a special detachment. *subsederant*,—*i.e.* had not been taken by the nine legions. *facta potestate*,—'on getting the opportunity'; lit.?

N.B.—The period in Latin. [§§ 1.2. furnish a very good example, on an extended scale, of the Latin period. Contrast the preceding and the three succeeding chapters.] Concessive relative clause, § 1. [RC.99.i.iv. HF.193.8. BA.509. H.515.III. AG.320.e.], and consecutive relative clause, *quo...posset*, § 2. [RC.II.31. HF.188.4. BA.503. H.500.I. AG.319.] Abl. of manner, § 1, [*praeceptis, diligentia*; note the difference in the nature of the modifier and c.f.c.27. § 5.] The phrase *in castris continere*, § 1. [Usually we find the simple abl. with *contineo* and *teneo* in such phrases. *In* is found also in Bk.IV.34.4. and *intra* in Bk.V.58.1.] *Quisquam* used adjectively, § 1. [Instead of *ullus* and *nullus*, *quisquam* and *nemo* are more common with substantives indicating persons.] Subj. of virtual indirect

narration, [*liceret*, § 2, depending on idea implied in *appellabant*. (RC.II.216. BA.448. H.528.1. AG.341.c.) *In*=within a space of, § 2. [Caesar elsewhere expresses this idea by using *spatio*, Bk.III. 17.5. and (of time as in § 3.) 12.1.] Position of prep. *inter*, § 2. [RC.110.*f*. H.569.II.1. AG.263.N.]

CAP. XXXVII.

1. *casu*,—to be taken also with *hoc ipso*; ‘and under these circumstances,’ referring to the state of affairs described in c.36. *quo*,—‘as,’ lit. ‘with which.’ *ab*,—‘on the side of.’ *decumana porta*,—see Intrcd. § V.*d*.

2. *objectis...silvis*,—trans. by ‘as,’ etc. *ab ea parte*,—‘on that side.’ *usque eo*,—‘so much so.’ *qui...mercatores*,—App.11.*d*.iv. *recipiendi sui*,—‘of recovering themselves.’ App.39.

3. *re nova*,—‘by the novelty of the situation’; lit.? *in statione*,—with *cohors*.

4. *si...possent*,—trans. as in c.29. § 4. (RC.II.216.)

5. *aditus*,—acc.; not regular entrances to the camp, but places where the walls might be approached. *ipse per se*,—‘by itself.’

6. *trepidatur*,—App.24; ‘there is confusion.’ *castris*,—trans. by ‘throughout.’ (RC.85.*k*.ii.) *quo...provident*,—‘they arrange in what direction they are to advance or in what part each is to muster.’ (RC.98.*b*; 99.*d*.)

7. *deleto*,—App.5.*a*.iii. *imperatore*,—*i.e.* Caesar: notice *atque*.

8. *loco*,—as the place so fatal to the Romans the year before: Bk.V.24–37. *qui...castello*,—not exactly true: Bk.V.37. *occiderint*,—for subj. see RC.II.216. (part of the soldiers’ thoughts).

9. *barbaris*,—trans. dat. by ‘of.’ (RC.82.*f*.) *ut*,—‘as,’ referring to *nullum...præsidium*.

10 *se ipsi*,—‘one another.’ *ne*,—‘not to,’ etc. App.29.*b*.

N.B.—*Germanus* as adj. [This word, not *Germanicus*, is the form used with nouns referring to persons ; so *Gallus*, not *Gallicus*.]

The gates of a Roman camp. [Intro.d.p.xix.] *Ab*= in the direction of, §§ 1.2.

The subj. with *priusquam*, § 2. [As usual, the end in view is expressed, viz. to approach unobserved.] The subj. by attraction, *tenderent*, § 2. [RC.99.k. BA.417.Obs. H.529.II. AG.342.]

The phrase *recipiendi sui*, § 2. [See N.B. to c.9. § 6.] A prepositional phrase joined directly to a noun, § 3. [This is very rare in Latin, and where found is usually with verbal nouns. Contrast c.38. § 3.]

The subj. of virtual indirect narration, §§ 4.8. [For *si possent* see N.B. to c.29. § 4. Notice too the sequence of tenses in *possent*.]

The use of *ipse* to strengthen the reflexive *se*, §§ 5.10. [As is the rule in such cases, the nom. is used rather than the case of the reflexive. (RC.92.f.i. BA.356.ii. H.152.i. AG.195.I.)]

Abl. of place, § 6. [The prep. is usually omitted when *totus* is used. (RC.85. k.ii. H.425.II.2. AG.258.f.)]

The uses of *alius* repeated, §§ 6.7. [More frequent than the usage of § 7 is that of c.40. § 2.]

The deliberative subj. § 6. [Here it is dependent upon *provident*, and the real nature of the subj. is disguised. (RC.98.b. BA.150. H.484.V. AG. 268.)]

Force of *convenio*, § 6. [This use, in reference to a single person coming to a gathering, is rare ; cf. Bk.V.56.2.]

Nitor w. inf. § 10. [The rule that verbs of striving should be followed by *ut* and subj., not by the infin., is of doubtful value.]

CAP. XXXVIII.

1. **primum pilum duxerat**,—*i.e.* had been chief centurion. **ad**,—‘with.’ **diem quintum**,—‘for five days’ ; lit.? **cibo**,—for the abl. w. *careo*, see RC.85.h. HF.158.2.N.

2. **suae salutis**,—for dat. see RC.II.55. HF.105.9. **diffisus**,—semi-deponent verb. (RC.68.b.)

4. **Relinquit. Sextium**,—‘S. faints’ ; lit.? **per manus**,—‘from hand to hand.’ **tantum ut**,—‘so far as to,’ etc.

N.B.—Asyndeton between relative clauses, § 1. [See N.B. to c.11.]

Semi-deponent verbs.

CAP. XXXIX.

2. **Hic**,—*i.e.* in the place where the *milites* of § 1 were now. **quae recipiat**,—‘to receive.’ (RC.99.c. HF.188.4.)

modo conscripti,—‘being but newly enrolled’; cf. c. 32. § 5.
usus,—trans. gen. as in App. 2. c. ora,—from *os*. **quid...**
praecepiatur,—‘their instructions’; lit.?

3. **est**,—historical pres., not stating a general truth.
quin,—‘as not to be,’ etc. (RC. II. 36. HF. 188. 6.)

4. **redisse**,—=*redivisse*. (RC. 66.)

N.B.—In this and the two preceding chapters the rapid narrative is marked by the short sentences, and the frequency of asyndeton and of the hist. pres. Cf. c. 35. Relative clause of characteristic, §§ 2. 3. [In § 3 *quin*=*qui non*. RC. II. 36. HF. 188. 6. BA. 134. IL. 504. 1. AG. 319. d.]

CAP. XL.

1. **eo magis**,—‘all the more,’ w. *perterrēt*. **timidos**,—*i.e.* who were already frightened.

2. **eameo facto**,—trans. by infin. clause co-ordinate w. *ut perrumpant*; App. 5. a. iii. **censent**,—‘vote or advise’; as a verb of advising followed by *ut perrumpant*, and *ut consistant*, § 3. **sint**,—for subj. see RC. 99. g. i. HF. 206. 4. **circumventa**,—App. 37. a. N.B. **at**,—‘yet,’ ‘at least.’

3. **alii**,—supply *censent*. **jugo**,—the *collis* of c. 36. § 2.

4. **Hoc**,—the plan of § 3. **quos...docuimus**,—‘who, as we stated, had,’ etc. **duce**, etc.,—‘under the leadership of T.’ lit.? App. 5. a. N.

5. **eodem impetu**,—w. *subsecuti*. **militum**,—*i.e.* the infantry.

6. **etiam nunc**,—‘even now,’ when they saw how the others had succeeded. **ut**,—‘namely to,’ etc. **loco**,—‘by,’ not ‘in.’ **vim celeritatemque**,—App. 11. d. iv; trans. as if it were *eam vim c. quam*. **se**,—serves as the object of both *recipere* and *demiserunt*.

7. **causa**,—‘on account of.’ **ante**,—adv. **ne...amitterent**,—w. *pugnantes*

8. **horum**,—the *centuriones* of § 7, not w. *militum*. **pars...periit**,—c. 44. § 1. shows that these amounted to two cohorts.

- N.B.**—Emphatic position of *cuneo facto*, § 2. Force of *at* following *si*, § 2. The reciprocal use of *inter se*, § 4. *Nunc* for *tum* in indirect discourse, § 6. [Cf. *huc*, c.35, § 8. and N.B.] Omission of *se* w. *demiserunt*, § 6. [The repetition of *se* is avoided in such cases; notice that the position of *se* facilitates its double reference here.] Position of the clause of purpose, § 7.

CAP. XLI.

1. *desperata expugnatione*,—‘despairing of being able to take,’ etc.; lit.?

2. *hostium*,—w. *discessum*. *missus*,—‘who had been sent.’ *fidem non faceret*,—‘he could not convince them,’ lit.?

3. *omnino*,—‘entirely, completely.’ *alienata*,—trans. by clause co-ordinate w. *dicerent*; so *deletis* w. *recepisse*. App.5. a.iii.

incolumi exercitu,—abl. abs.; trans. by ‘if’ clause. *oppugnaturos fuisse*,—‘would have attacked.’

- N.B.**—*Despero* used as a transitive verb, § 1. [So by Caesar in the abl. absol. only.] Emphatic arrangement of *incolumi* and *Caesarem*, § 2. Rendering of abl. absol. phrases by co-ordinate clauses, § 3.

Conditional use of abl. absol., [*incolumi exercitu*, § 3.]

Oppugnaturos fuisse, the regular representative in indirect narration of *oppugnavissent* as used in the apodosis. [RC.II.87. HF.210. N.3. BA.469.1. H.527.iii. AG.337.]

CAP. XLII.

1. *eventus*,—acc. w. *ignorans*. *unum*,—‘only,’ w. *questus*; lit. ‘one thing.’ *essent emissae*,—for subj. see RC. 99.g.i. HF.198.2; so *avertisset*, § 2. *casu*,—dat. for *casui*. (RC.50.c.) *loeu*,—‘room.’ *debnisse*,—depending on idea of saying implied in *questus*, but trans. freely ‘for...should have been,’ etc. (RC.II.160.b. N.B. HF.163.5.N.) *multum potuisse*,—as in c.30. § 2.

2. *multo etiam amplius*,—‘all the more’; lit.? *avertisset*,—as subject supply *fortuna* from § 1.

3. **maxime admirandum**,—‘the most surprising thing.’ **quod**,—‘that,’ or ‘the fact that.’ **eo consilio ut**,—‘with the intention of,’ etc. **delati**,—App.37. *a. N.B.*

N.B.—Subj. of virtual indirect narration, §§ 1.2. The infin. in a parenthetical clause, § 1. The phrase *relinqui debuisse*, § 1. [RC. II.160. *b. N.B.* HF.163.5. *N.* BA.195. *N.B.* H.537.1. AG.288. *a.R.*] The dat. of Decl. IV. in *u*, § 1. [RC.50. *c.* H.p.49. *fn.1.* AG.68. *N.*] The perf. tense of a verb of thinking. *judicavit*, § 1. [App.26. *a.1.*] The difference in gender of *quarum rerum maxime admirandum*, not *admirandam*, supplying *rem*, § 3. [Cf. Bk.V.1.7: *nihil earum rerum*. It is probably due to the habitual use in Latin of the neuter = *res* (especially in nom. and acc.) *Quarum omnium rerum* is the gen. of *quae omnia*.]

43. 44. *Caesar again sets out in pursuit of Ambiorix, but without success. Returning he settles affairs in Gaul, and sets out for Italy for the winter.*

CAP. XLIII.

2. **conspexerat**,—‘saw’; lit.?

3. **anni tempore**,—it was now autumn. **ut**,—‘so that.’ **occultassent**,—RC.66. **his pereundum videretur**,—‘these, it seemed, would have to (or must) perish’: *his* is dat. (RC. 82. *d.* HF.173.4.) **deducto**,—trans. by ‘even if,’ or ‘even when,’ etc.

4. **in eum locum ventum est**,—‘they reached such a point,’ *i.e.* ‘they came so near to him,’ (App.24.) **ut modo**, etc.,—‘that prisoners looked round for A. whom they had just seen.’ *i.e.* expected to see him also taken prisoner. **nec plane etiam**,—‘not yet entirely.’

5. **ut**,—as in § 3. **spe illata**,—‘inspired with hope’; lit.?
qui...putarent,—‘as they thought,’ etc., or ‘in the expectation that.’ (RC.99. *g.iii.* HF.198.4.) **naturam**,—*i.e.* their natural abilities and strength. **paulum**,—‘little,’ as subj. of

videretur. felicitatem,—that viz. of capturing Ambiorix and thus winning high favor with Caesar.

6. *atque*,—‘while.’ *latebris*,—abl. of means. *noctu*,—w. *peteret*. *praesidio*,—trans. by ‘with’ or ‘having.’

N.B.—Omission of obj. of *dimittit*, § 1. [It would have to be supplied from the abl. absol., and if expressed would come under the case described in N.B. to c.4. § 3.] Agreement of rel. with antecedents of different genders, [*quae*, § 2. (RC.93.i. BA.63.)] Pluperf. indic. in frequentative relative clause, § 2. Impers. pass. constr. §§ 3.4. Concessive abl. absol. § 3. Causal relative clause, [*quid. putarent*, § 5.] Relation of *ut* clauses in §§ 4.5. [The second is not co-ordinate with the first; i.e. *ut* could not have been replaced by *et*. Each introduces a consequence of what has just preceded.]

CAP. XLIV.

1. *damno*,—trans. by ‘with’: abl. of manner. For the fact see c.40. § 8. *Durocortorum*,—trans. acc. by ‘to.’ (RC. 83.g. HF.85.1.) *Galliae*,—w. *concilio. conjuratione*,—c.3. and 4.

2. *de*,—‘on,’ with *sumpsit*. *Accone*,—see c.4. § 1. *graviore*,—‘unusually heavy’; Caesar’s treatment of ‘rebels’ became still harsher as the subjugation of Gaul advanced. *more majorum*,—i.e. of the Romans; this was by scourging to death, after which the body was beheaded.

3. *Quibus cum*, etc.,—‘having forbidden these fire and water’; this was the form in which sentence of banishment was pronounced by the Romans. *Quibus* is dat. (RC.82.b.); *aqua*, abl. (RC.85.h. HF.158.2.) *ad*,—‘near.’ *Agedinci*,—trans. by ‘at’; the locative. (RC.86. HF.85.3.) *ut instituerat*,—trans. as in c.3. § 4. It refers to what follows, not to what precedes; cf. Bk.V. 1.1. *conventus*,—the governor of a province was also its supreme judge.

N.B.—Place to which and in which, §§ 1.3. [RC.II.93; 125.a. HF.85.1. and 3. BA.311-313. II.380; 425. AG.258.] Dat. and abl. w. *interdico*, § 3. [Both are found, but in separate clauses, in c.13. §§ 6.7.] Abl. of manner, §§ 1.2.

VOCABULARY
TO
CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO,
BOOKS I.—VII.

MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

abl.....	<i>ablative.</i>	n. or neut.....	<i>neuter.</i>
acc.....	<i>accusative.</i>	part.....	<i>participle.</i>
adj.....	<i>adjective.</i>	perf.....	<i>perfect.</i>
adv.....	<i>adverb.</i>	plur.....	<i>plural.</i>
conj.....	<i>conjunction.</i>	prep.....	<i>preposition.</i>
dat.....	<i>dative.</i>	pres.....	<i>present.</i>
f. or fem.....	<i>feminine.</i>	pron.....	<i>pronoun.</i>
gen.....	<i>genitive.</i>	sing.....	<i>singular.</i>
indecl.....	<i>indeclinable.</i>	snbst.....	<i>substantive.</i>
m. or masc.....	<i>masculine.</i>	w.....	<i>with.</i>



VOCABULARY.

A.

A. an abbreviation for **Aulus**.

ā, ab, (abs), prep. with **abl.** (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants; **abs** once before **te**), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in.*

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal; part. abditus, a, um, as adj., hidden, secluded.*

ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry off.*

ab-eō, ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *go away, depart.*

abi-ēs, -etis, f., fir.

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw away; throw.*

ab-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *detach, separate, part.*

ab-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, *carry off, snatch.*

abs, see **ā.**

abs-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down.*

absēns, -entis, *absent*

absimilis, e, *unlike.*

abs-sistō, ere, -stitī, withdraw, *keep away from.*

abs-tineō, ere, -tinui, -tentum, *refrain, abstain, spare.*

abs-trahō, ere, traxī, tractum, *drag away, carry off.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking.*

abundō, āre, āvī, ātum, *abound, be strong in.*

āc (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.*

ac-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, *approach, draw near, come up; be added.*

accelerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

acceptus, a, um, from **accipio**.

ae-cidō, ere, -cidi, fall; befall, happen, occur; turn out.

ae-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut into, cut.*

ae-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear; part. acceptus, a, um, as adj., acceptable, popular.*

aeclivis, e, *rising, sloping.*

aeclivitās, -tātis, f., ascent, slope, steepness.

Aecō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.

accommodō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fit, adjust; adapt, suit.*

accūrātē, adv., *carefully, elaborately.*

accurrō, ere, -currior -eucurri, -cursum, *run up, rush up, hasten.*

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *accuse, find fault, censure.*

ācer, cris, ere, *sharp, keen, violent, severe.*

acerbē, adv., *bitterly, keenly; acerbe ferre, be distressed by.*

acerbitās, -tātis, f., *bitterness; suffering, distress.*

acerbus, a, um, *bitter, painful.*

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness, fierce glance; line of battle; battle.*

ac-quirō, ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *gain, gain advantage.*

ācriter, adv., (*ācerius, ācerimē*), *fiercely, hotly, desperately.*

āetnārius, a, um, *light, swift.*

āctus, a, um, *from ago.*

acūtus, a, um, *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with *acc.*, *to, towards; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among; (with numerals), about.*

adāctus, a, um, *from adigo.*

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *equal; make equal.*

adamō, āre, āvī, ātum, *love greatly, become enamored of, take a fancy to.*

ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *add, join; make an addition.*

ad-ducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead, bring; bring in, conduct; draw towards, draw taut; induce, influence, force.*

ademptus, a, um, *from adimo.*

adeō, adv., *so, so much.*

ad-cō, īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *go to, advance; attack; visit; reach, get at; approach.*

adeptus, a, um, *from adipiscor. adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum*, *ride up.*

ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesī, -haesum, *adhere, cling to, catch fast to.*

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *call in, admit; bring along; use, show.*

adhortor, āri, ātus sum, *urge, exhort, encourage.*

adhūc, adv., *till now, up to the present, as yet.*

Adiatunnus, ī, m., *a chief of the Sontiates.*

ad-igō, ere, -égī, -āctum, *drive up; drive in; hurl, cast; move up; force, bind.*

ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *take away, destroy; cut off.*

ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, *obtain, win.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, access, means of approach; right of approaching, admittance; intercourse.*

adjaccō, ēre, uī, be adjacent, *border upon.*

ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *cast; add; throw up.*

adjūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *adjudge.*

ad-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *join, unite, ally; annex.*

adjūtor, ōris, m., *assistant, ally.*

ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *assist, help; aid; be of assistance, further.*

Admagetobriga, ac, f., *a town in Gaul, of uncertain position.*

admātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mature; hasten.*

administer, trī, m., *assistant, priest.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry out, execute, attend to; manage; issue.*

admīror, āri, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire, be surprised.*

ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *allow, incur; commit; let go; part. admissus, at full speed.*

admodum, adv., *very, very much, exceedingly; with numerals, fully, quite.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

adolēscēns, *see adulescens.*

adolēscēntia, *see adulescentia.*

adolēscēntulus, *see adulescentulus.*

ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum,
grow up.

ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

ad-sciscō, ere, -scīvī, -scitum,
join, unite, take.

adsistō, see assisto.

ad-sum, esse, -fuī, be present, be at hand, be near; aid, assist.

Aduātuea, ae, f., a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.

Aduātueī, ōrum, m., the Aduatuci, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man; the younger.*

adulēscēntia, ae, f., *youth.*

adulēscēntulus, ī, m., *a mere youth.*

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversārius, ī, m., *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing, in front; adverse, unsuccessful.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum,
turn towards; w. animum, observe, notice.

advocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call, summon.

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, fly to, rush upon or to.

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, build.

Aeduus, ī, m., *an Aeduan; in plur., the Aedui,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

aeger, gra, grum, sick.

aegrē, adv., (aegrius, aeger-rimē), *scarcely, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., Lucius Aemilius, a cavalry officer with Caesar.

aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aequitās, -tātis, f., *fairness, justice; w. animi, contentment.*

aequō, āre, āvī, ātum, make equal, equalize.

aequus, a, um, *level; fair, just; even, equal; favorable; contented, calm, resigned.*

aerārius, a, um, *of copper, copper.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze; copper; money; aes alienum, debt.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., *valuation, estimate.*

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, esti-mate, value, regard.

aestivus, a, um, *of summer.*

aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, inlet.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, years.*

aeternus, a, um, *perpetual, un-ending.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,
bring; bring forward, announce; cause, bring about, produce.

af-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
affect, visit, treat; translate freely in act. by cause, produce, inflict; in pass. by suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.

af-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, fas-ten, attach.

af-fingō, ere, -finxī, -fictum,
invent further, or in addition.

affinitās, -tātis, f., *relationship, marriage.*

affirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

affixus, a, um, *from affigo.*

afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum, buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.

afflictus, a, um, *from affligo.*

af-fligō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum,
shatter, damage, wreck; throw down, bear down.

affore, from adsum.

Africus, ī, m., *south-west wind.*

Agedincum, ī, n., a town in the north central part of Gaul.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, territory.*

agger, cris, m., *mound; heap of earth; dam, rampart.*

- ag-gredior, *i*, -gressus sum, *attack*.
- aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attach, join*.
- agitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss*.
- agmen, -minis, *n.*, *army on the march, line of march, column*; *w. primum, the van*; *w. novissimum, the rear*.
- agō, ere, ēgī, ātum, *drive, carry off; bring up, advance; take; drive down; run; do, carry on, work, act; treat, plead, discuss, confer; hold; express*.
- agricultūra, *ac. f.*, *agriculture, tilling the land, farming*.
- alacer, eris, ere, *eager*.
- alacritās, -tātis, *f.*, *eagerness, ardor*.
- ālārīi, ōrum, *m. plur.*, *auxiliaries* (usually placed on the wings).
- albus, *a, um*, *white*.
- aleēs, is, *f.*, *elk*.
- Alesia, *ac. f.*, *a town in the central part of Gaul*.
- aliās, *adv.*, *at another time*; *alias...alias, at one time...at another, now...now*.
- aliēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *alienate, estrange; deprive of reason, frenzy, distract*.
- aliēnus, *a, um*, *of another, of others, another's; unfavorable; strange, foreign; out of place*.
- aliō, *adv.*, *elsewhere*.
- aliquamdiū, *adv.*, *for some time*.
- aliquandō, *adv.*, *at some time; at last, at length*.
- aliquantō, *adv.*, *somewhat*.
- aliquantus, *a, um*, *some; neut. as subst., some portion, a considerable part*.
- aliquī, *qua, quod*, *some, any*.
- aliquis, *quid*, *someone, something*.
- aliquot, *indeclinable*, *several, some*.
- aliter, *adv.*, *otherwise, in a different manner, else*.
- alius, *a, ud*, *other, another; different; alius...alius, one...another; alii...alii, some...others*.
- allātus, *a, um*, *from allero*.
- al-liciō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *entice, allure, attract*.
- Allobroges, *um, m.*, *the Allobroges, a tribe in the northern part of the Province*.
- alō, ere, alui, altum, *nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster*.
- Alpēs, *ium, f. plur.*, *the Alps*.
- alter, era, erum, *the other; the second; another; alter...alter, the one...the other*.
- alternus, *a, um*, *alternate*.
- altitūd-ō, -inis, *f.*, *height; depth; thickness*.
- altus, *a, um*, *high, lofty; deep; neut. as subst., altum, i, n.*, *the deep, deep water, the sea*.
- alūta, *ac. f.*, *leather*.
- ambactus, *i, m.*, *vassal, retainer*.
- Ambarri, ōrum, *m*, *the Ambarri, a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone*.
- Ambiānī, ōrum, *m.*, *the Ambiani, a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel*.
- Ambibariī, ōrum, *m.*, *the Ambibarii, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul*.
- Ambiliātī, ōrum, *m.*, *the Ambiliati, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul*.
- Ambiorix, *igis, m.*, *a chief of the Eburones*.
- Ambivarētī, ōrum, *m.*, *the Ambivarēti, a tribe in the centre of Gaul*.
- Ambivaritī, ōrum, *m.*, *the Ambivariti, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul*.
- ambō, *ac, ō*, *in plur. only, both*.
- āmentia, *ac, f.*, *madness, folly*.
- āmentum, *i, n.*, *thong* (for throwing a javelin).
- amfractus, *see anfractus*.
- amicitia, *ac, f.*, *friendship, alliance*.
- amīcus, *a, um*, *friendly, devoted*.
- amīcus, *i, m.*, *friend; ally*.

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,
lose; let slip.

amor, ōris, m. *love, affection.*

amplē, adv., *largely, generously;*
compar. amplius, *more, further,*
besides.

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātum, in-
crease, heighten.

amplitū-dō, -dinis, f., *size, ex-*
tent; greatness.

amplus, a, um, *large, great;*
magnificent, noble, high.

an, conj., *or.*

Anartēs, ium, m., *the Anartes, a*
tribe in Dacia, north of the
Danube.

Ancalites, um, m., *the Ancalites,*
a tribe in Britain.

an-ceps, -cipitis, *double, twofold.*

ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*

Andecumborius, ī, m., *one of the*
Remi.

Andēs, lum, m., *the Andes, a tribe*
near the mouth of the Loire.

ānfractus, ūs, m., *bend, circuit,*
winding.

angulus, ī, m., *corner, angle.*

angustē, adv., *closely; sparingly.*

angustiae, ārum, f. plur., *nar-*
row pass, defile; strait, trouble,
difficulty.

angustus, a, um, *narrow, small,*
contracted; steep; neut. as subst.,
critical position.

anima, ae, f., *soul.*

animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,
notice, observe; attend to, punish.

anim-al, -ālis, n., *animal, living*
being.

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, heart,*
spirit, will; feelings; courage;
character, disposition; conscious-
ness; pride, ambition; pleasure,
amusement.

annōtinus, a, um, *of the year*
before.

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um, *yearly, for a*
year.

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before; adv.,*
before, formerly, previously;
abore.

anteā, adv., *before, formerly, pre-*
viously; hitherto.

ante-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,
go before, go in advance, precede;
outstrip, anticipate; surpass,
excel.

antecursor, ōris, m., *scout, ran-*
guard, advance guard.

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,
prefer, consider superior.

antenna, ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -posi-
tum, *place before, regard of more*
importance than.

antever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,
prefer.

antīquitus, adv., *from early times,*
in olden times, of old, long ago.

antīquus, a, um, *ancient, old,*
remote.

Antistius, ī, m., *Caius Antistius*
Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Antonius,*
one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ap., *a contraction for Appius.*

aper-iō, īre, nī, -tum, *open;*
perf. part. pass. apertus as adj.,
open, unprotected, uncovered, ex-
posed; clear; unchecked.

apertē, adv., *openly.*

Apoll-ō, -inis, m., *Apollo, a Roman*
god.

apparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare,*
make ready.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call,*
name; address, call upon, accost.

ap-pellō, ere, -pullī, -pulsum,
bring in to shore, land, bring to
land.

ap-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petitum,
seek, aim at; approach.

Appius, ī, m., *a Roman praeno-*
men.

applicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *apply;*
with reflexive, lean against.

apportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring.*

approbō, āre, āvī, ātum, ap-
praise of, commend.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum,
approach, draw near.

appulsus, a, um, from appello,
ere.

Aprilis, e, adj., of April.

aptus, a, um, suited, suitable, apt.

apud, prep. w. acc., at, with, among,
near, in the presence of; in one's
opinion.

aqua, ae, f., water.

aquātiō, -ōnis, f., getting water.

aquila, ae, f., eagle, the ensign of
a Roman legion.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman colony
at the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, eri, m., eagle-bearer,
standard-bearer.

Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania, the
southwestern part of Gaul, be-
tween the Garonne and the Pyre-
nees.

Aquitānus, ī, m., an Aquitanian ;
in plur., the Aquitani, a people
akin to the Spaniards rather than
to the Gauls, dwelling in the
southwestern part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, -aris, m., the Arar, a river
flowing south into the Rhone.

arbiter, tri, m., arbitrator.

arbitrium, ī, n., pleasure, will,
judgment.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think,
consider, judge.

arbor, oris, f., tree.

arcess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, sum-
mon, send for; invite, call in.

ardeō, ēre, arsi, arsum, burn,
be on fire, be inflamed.

Arduenna, ae, f., a forest in the
north-east of Gaul.

arduus, a, um, difficult; steep.

Arecomici, ōrum, m. plur., the
Arecomici, a tribe in the Province
near the Pyrenees.

Arēmoriens, a, um, Armorican ;
Armorica was a collective name
given to many tribes in the north-
west of Gaul.

argentum, ī, n., silver.

argilla, ae, f., clay.

āridus, a, um, dry; neut. as
subst., dry land.

ari-ēs, -etis, m., ram, battering-
ram; buttress.

Arivistus, ī, m., a chief of the
Germans.

Aristius, ī, m., Marcus Aristius, a
military tribune with Caesar.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., arms; tack-
ling.

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., tack-
ling, rigging.

armātūra, ae, f., armor, equip-
ment.

armo, āre, āvī, ātum, arm,
equip; perf. part. in plur. as subst.,
armed men.

Armoricus, a, um, see Are-
moricus.

Arpinēus, ī, m., Caius Arpinēus,
a Roman knight with Caesar.

ar-ripiō, ere, -ripi, -reptum,
seize, lay hold of, secure.

arroganter, adv., with presump-
tion, insolently.

arrogantia, ae, f., presumption,
arrogance, insolence.

ars, artis, f., art.

artē, adv., closely, tightly, com-
pactly.

articulus, ī, m., joint.

artificium, ī, n., handicraft; ac-
complishment, skill; artifice,
craft.

artus, a, um, dense, thick.

Arvernus, ī, m., an Arvernian; m
plur., the Arverni, a tribe south of
the centre of Gaul.

arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold.

a-scen-ō, ere, -scendī, -scēn-
sum, climb, ascend, mount.

ascēnsus, ūs, m., ascent, ascend-
ing; means of ascent.

aspectus, ūs, m., appearance,
sight.

asper, era, erum, severe, fierce,
violent.

assiduus, a, um. *constant, continued, incessant.*

assistō, ere, astitī, *stand near, appear.*

assuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum. *accustom, train.*

assuē-scō, ere, -vī, -tum. *become accustomed.*

at, conj., *but; yet, at least.*

atque, conj., *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.*

Atre-bas, -batis, m., *an Atrebatian; in plur., the Atrebates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.*

Atrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.*

+ at-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum. *weave on, weave.*

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum. *touch, border on; reach.*

attrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, as- *sign, give.*

attulī, *from affero.*

auctor, ōris, m., *adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.*

auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., *influence, weight, prestige; power.*

auctus, a, um. *part of augeo, increased, advanced, strengthened.*

audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*

audācter, adv., *boldly, confidently, fearlessly.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare, *venture, attempt.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, hear, listen to, hear of; pres. part., audiēns, -entis, obedient.

auditiō, -ōnis, f., *hearsay, rumor.*

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, in- *crease, strengthen, promote.*

Aulerci, ōrum, m. plur., *the Aulerci, a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the Eburorices, Brannovices, Diablintes and Cenomani.*

Aulus, ī, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

aureus, a, um, *of gold, golden.*

auriga, ae, m., *charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

Aurunuleius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Ausci, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ausci, a tribe near the Pyrenees.*

ausus, a, um, *from audeo.*

aut, conj., *or, or else; repeated, either...or.*

autem, conj., *but, whereas, while; moreover, now.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

auxī, *from augeo.*

auxiliāris, e, auxiliary; plur. as *subst., the auxiliaries.*

auxilior, āri, ātus sum, *give aid, help, assist.*

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help, assistance; resource, support; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, e, of *Avaricum.*

Avaricum, ī, n., *a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.*

avaritia, ae, f., *greed, covetousness.*

ā-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry off.*

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn away, turn or put aside; alienate.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, f., *a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.*

B.

Bacēnis, is, f., *a forest in Germany.*

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sertius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

Baleāris, is, m., *Balearic, from the Balearic islands.*

baltus, ī, m., *belt, sword-belt.*

Balventius, ī, m., *Titus Balventius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian; m. as subst., barbarus, ī, m., a barbarian.*

Basilus, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer with Caesar.*

Bataui, ōrum, m. plur., *the Batavians*, a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians*, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.

Belgium, ī, n., *Belgium*, the country of the *Belgae*.

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*.

bellicus, a, um, *of war, in war*.

bellō, āre, āvi, ātum, *make war, fight*.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bellovacī*, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., *war*.

bene, adv., (*melius, optimē*), *well, successfully*.

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, service, favor*.

benevolentia, ae, f., *good will; kindness*.

Bibracte, is, n., the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.

Bibroci, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bibroci*, a tribe of Britain.

biduum, ī, n., *two days, space of two days*.

biennium, ī, n., *two years*.

Bigerriōnes, um, m. plur., *the Bigerriones*, a tribe near the Pyrenees.

biſ, ae, a, *two each, two by two, two*.

bipartitō, adv., *in two divisions*.

bipedālis, e, *two feet (thick)*.

bipertitō, see bipartito.

bis, adv., *twice*.

Bituriges, um, m. plur., *the Bituriges*, a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.

Bođuōgnātus, ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Boii*, the *Boians*, a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.

bonitās, -tātis, f., *goodness, excellence, fertility*.

bonus, a, um (*melior, optimus*), *good*; *n.* as subst., **bonum, ī,** *advantage*; in plur., *goods, property*

bōs, bovis, m., *ox*.

bracchium, ī, n., *arm*.

Brannovices, um, m. plur., *the Brannorices*, a branch of the *Aulerci*, in the north-west of Gaul.

Brannovii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Brannorii*, a tribe in Gaul.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the Bellovacī, in the north of Gaul.

brevis, e, *short*; as adv., **brevi,** *in a short time*.

brevitās, -tatis, f., *shortness; short, stature*.

breviter, adv., *briefly*.

Britanni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons*.

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain*.

Britannicus, a, um, *of Britain, of or with the Britons*.

brūma, ae, f., *the winter solstice*.

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Brutus*, a lieutenant with Caesar.

C.

C., an abbreviation of **Gaius** (or **Caïus**).

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Caïus Valerius Caburus*, a Romanized Gaul.

caēūmen, -minis, n., *top, point*.

cadāver, -eris, n., *dead body, corpse*.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be slain*.

Cadurens, ī, m., *one of the Cadurci*; in plur., *the Cadurci*, a tribe in Aquitania.

caedes, is, m., *slaughter, massacre, murder*.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum, *cut down, fell*.

caelestis, e, *heavenly*; *m. plur.* as subst., *the gods*.

- cacrimōnia**, *ae, f., ceremony, sacred rite.*
- Caeroesi, ōrum**, *m. plur., the Caeroesi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*
- caeruleus**, *a, um, blue, dark blue.*
- Caesar**, *aris, m., Caius Julius Caesar, a Roman general; also Lucius Caesar, a lieutenant with Caesar.*
- Caius, ī, m.**, see **Gaius**.
- calamitās, -tātis**, *f., disaster, defeat, loss.*
- Calendae, ārum**, *f. plur., the Calends, the first day of each month.*
- Caletēs, um**, and **Caletī, ōrum**, *m. plur., the Caletes or Caleti, a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.*
- callidus**, *a, um, shrewd, cunning.*
- cālō, ōnis**, *m., soldier's servant, camp-follower.*
- campester**, *tris, tre, of or on the plain; level.*
- campus, ī, m.**, *field, plain.*
- Camulogēnus, ī, m.**, *a chief of the Aulerci.*
- Caninius, ī, m.**, *Caius Caninius Rebilus, a lieutenant of Caesar.*
- canō, ere, cecinī, cantum**, *sing. sound.*
- Cantabri, ōrum**, *m. plur., the Cantabrians, a tribe in the north of Spain.*
- Cantium, ī, n.**, *Kent, in the south-east of England.*
- caper, prī, m.**, *goat.*
- capillus, ī, m.**, *hair.*
- caplō, ere, cēpī, captum**, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.*
- capra, ae, f.**, *she-goat.*
- captivus, ī, m.**, *captive, prisoner.*
- capus, ūs, m.**, *capacity, nature.*
- cap-ut, -itis**, *n., head; person; life; mouth (of a river).*
- carcō, ēre, uī**, *be without, go without.*
- carīna, ae, f.**, *keel.*
- Carnūtēs, um**, *m. plur., the Carnutes, a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.*
- carō, carnis, f.**, *flesh, meat.*
- car-pō, ere, -psī, -ptum**, *criticise, blame.*
- carrus, ī, m.**, *cart, wagon.*
- cārus, a, um**, *dear, valuable.*
- Carvilius, ī, m.**, *a king ruling in Kent.*
- casa, ae, f.**, *hut.*
- cāsus, ī, m.**, *cheese.*
- Cassī, ōrum**, *m. plur., the Cussi, a tribe in Britain.*
- Cassiānus, a, um**, *of or with Cassius.*
- cassis, -idis**, *m., helmet.*
- Cassius, ī, m.**, *Lucius Cassius, a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.*
- Cassivellaunus, ī, m.**, *a British chief.*
- castellum, ī, n.**, *fort, stronghold.*
- Castiens, ī, m.**, *a chief of the Sequani.*
- castra, ōrum**, *n. plur., camp, encampment.*
- cāsus, ūs, m.**, *happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.*
- Catamantaloedes, is, m.**, *a chief of the Sequani.*
- catēna, ae, f.**, *chain.*
- Caturiges, um**, *m. plur., the Caturiges, a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.*
- Catuvoleus, ī, m.**, *a chief of the Eburones.*
- causa, ae, f.**, *cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse; condition; in abl. sing., for the sake of, for the purpose of.*
- cautē, adv.**, *cautiously, with caution.*
- cautēs, is, m.**, *sharp rock, reef.*
- Cavarillus, ī, m.**, *a chief of the Aedui.*
- Cataglinus, ī, m.**, *king of the Senones.*
- caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum**, *be on one's guard; give security.*

cēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum, retreat,
give way, retire; yield; with-
draw.

celer, cris, ere, swift, speedy,
sudden.

celeritās, -tātis, f., swiftiness,
speed, rapidity.

celeriter, adv., (celerius, celer-
rimē, swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal,
hide.

Celtae, ārum, m. plur., the Celts,
or Gauls, one of the three great
nations inhabiting Gaul.

Celtillus, ī, m., a chief of the
Arverni.

Cēnabēnsis, is, m., a man of
Cenabum; in plur., the people of
Cenabum.

• **Cēnabum, ī, n., a town of central**
Gaul, on the Loire.

Cenimāgnī, ōrum, m. plur., the
Cenimagni, a tribe of Britain.

Cenomānī, ōrum, m. plur., the
Cenomani, a tribe in the north-
west of Gaul.

cēns-eō, ere, -uī, -um, be of opin-
ion, think; hold, decree; advise.

cēnsus, us, m., census, enumera-
tion.

centum, a hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion (an
officer in the Roman army).

cēpī, from capio.

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, per-
ceive, see, make out.

certāmen, -minis, n., contest;
engagement.

certē, adv., certainly, with cer-
tainty; at least.

certus, a, um, certain, fixed, speci-
fic, sure, definite; trustworthy;
certiorem facere, to inform.

cervus, ī, m., stag; fork-shaped
branch.

cēs-pes, -pitis, m., sod, turf.

cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest.

Centrōnes, um, m. plur., the
Centrones, 1. a tribe in the Alps;
2. a tribe of the Belgae.

Cevenna, ae, f., the Cevennes, a
mountain range in the south-east
of Gaul, west of the Rhone.

Chērusci, ōrum, m. plur., the
Cherusci, a German tribe.

cibārius, a, um, of food; n. plur.,
as subst., food, provisions.

cibus, ī, m. food.

Cicerō, ōnis, m., Quintus Tullius
Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants,
and a brother of the orator.

Cimberius, ī, m., a chief of the
Suebi.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m. plur., the
Cimbrī, a German tribe that in-
vaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

Cingetorix, -igis, m., 1. a chief of
the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

cin-gō, ere, -xī, -etum, sur-
round, encircle; man.

cippus, ī, m., post, stake, palisade.

circēus, ī, m., pair of compasses.

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc.,
about.

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of
circumeo.

circuitus, ūs, m., circumference,
circuit; detour, circuitous route.

circum, prep. w. acc., around,
about, near.

circum-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cīsum,
cut around, cut; perf. part. pass.,
isolated, steep.

circumclū-dō, ere, -sī, -sum,
encircle, line, put a rim around.

circum-dō, -dare, -didi,
-datum, put around; surround,
encircle.

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -due-
tum, lead around; draw around.

circum-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivī), -itum
or **circūsum, go around, sur-**
round; make the rounds of, visit.

circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fū-
sum, pour around, hence, in
pass., rush in from all sides, crowd
around; surround.

circum-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jec-
tum, place around.

circum-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-
sum, send around.

circummmūniō, īre, īvī, ītum,
fortify all round, protect.

circum-plector, ī, -plexus sum,
surround; embrace, include.

circum-sistō, ere, -steti, sur-
round, hem in, crowd around;
rally around.

circum-spiciō, ere, -spexī,
-spectum, *look about for, look*
carefully at; consider, examine
carefully.

circum-stō, -stāre, -steti, sur-
round.

circumvallō, āre, āvī, ātum,
surround with walls, invest, block-
ade.

circum-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vec-
tum, *carry around; in pass.,*
ride around.

circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, *surround, get round, out-*
flank; outwit, betray, deceive, de-
fraud.

cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

Cisalpinus, a, um, *Cisalpine, on*
this (i.e. the Italian) side of the
Alps.

Cisrhenānus, a, um, *on this (i.e.*
the western) side of the Rhine.

Cita, ae, m., Caius Fufius Cita, a
Roman knight.

citerior, ius, (comparative) *hither,*
nearer.

citō, adv., (citius, citissimē),
quickly.

citō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten;*
perf. part., citātus, as adj., swift.

citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

citrō, adv., hither.

cīvis, is, m., citizen.

cīvitās, -tātis, f., state; citizen-
ship.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out,*
keep shouting.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, shouting,
cry.

clandestinus, a, um, *secret.*

clārus, a, um, *loud, distinct.*

clāssis, is, f., fleet,

Claudius, ī, m., Appius Claudius,
consul in 51 B.C.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum,
close; w. agmen, bring up the
rear.

clāvus, ī, m., nail.

clēmētia, ae, f., mercifulness,
moderation, forbearance.

cliēns, -entis, m., dependant, re-
tainer, vassal.

clientōla, ae, f., dependency, ras-
salage; protection; in plur., de-
pendants.

clīvus, ī, m., slope, ascent.

Clōdius, ī, m., Publius Clodius, a
bitter partisan of Caesar.

Cn., an abbreviation for Gnaeus.

coacervō, āre, āvī, ātum, *heap*
up, crowd together.

coāctus, a, um, from **cogo.**

coāctus, ūs, m., compulsion.

coagmentō, āre, āvī, ātum,
fasten together.

Cocosātes, um, m. plur., the Co-
cosates, a tribe of Aquitania.

coēgī, from cogo.

co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum,
buy up.

co-eō, -īre, -īl (-īvī), -itum,
unite, join.

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, *began,*
have begun.

coerceō, ēre, ul, itum, *restrain,*
check.

cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consider,*
think, reflect, have thoughts; take
thought, plan.

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f., kinship; kins-
men, clan, family connections.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gni-
tum, *perceive, learn, find out, as-*
certain, become acquainted with;
inquire into; in perf. tenses, know,
be aware.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *col-*
lect, gather, get together; compel,
force, be urgent.

co-hors, -hortis, f., a cohort, one
tenth of a legion.

- cohortatiō, -ōnis, f.,** *encouraging, address.*
- cohortor, ārī, ātus sum,** *encourage, address, urge.*
- coire, from coco.**
- collātus, a, um, from confero,**
- collandō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *praise, extol, highly commend.*
- colligō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *fasten, pin together.*
- col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** *gather, collect; acquire; with se, collect one's self, recover, rally.*
- collis, is, m.,** *hill.*
- collocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *place, station; arrange, stow; settle; give in marriage.*
- colloquium, ī, n.,** *conversation, interview, conference.*
- col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum,** *converse, confer, have an interview.*
- colō, ere, coluī, cultum,** *till, cultivate; worship.*
- colōnia, ae, f.,** *colony, settlement.*
- color, ōris, m.,** *color.*
- com-būrō, ere, -būssī, -būstum,** *burn up.*
- com-es, -itis, m.,** *companion, attendant.*
- comitia, -ōrum, n. plur.,** *comitia, election.*
- comitor, ārī, ātus sum,** *accompany.*
- commeātus, ūs, m.,** *supplies, provisions; passage, trip.*
- commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *mention, speak of, relate.*
- commendō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *commend.*
- commeō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *visit, resort, go to and fro.*
- comminus, adv.,** *hand to hand, in close combat.*
- commissūra, ae, f.,** *juncture, joining.*
- com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,** *join; w. proelium, begin; entrust, put trust in; allow, commit, do; leave it possible, allow to come about.*
- Comminus, ī, m.,** *a king of the Atrebates.*
- commodē, adv.,** *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*
- commodus, a, um,** *fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable; neut. as subst., commodum, ī, advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.*
- commone-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum,** *remind.*
- commoror, ārī, ātus sum,** *slay, delay, linger.*
- com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** *move; alarm, disturb; influence, impress.*
- communicō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *communicate, share, consult, impart; join, add.*
- communiō, īre, īvī, ītum,** *strongly fortify, secure; build.*
- communis, e,** *common, general, joint, concerted.*
- commutātiō, -ōnis, f.,** *change; turn.*
- commūtō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *change, exchange.*
- comparō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *compare; prepare, provide, procure, raise, get.*
- com-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum,** *drive, drive in, gather.*
- compendium, ī, n.,** *gain, profit.*
- com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertum,** *learn, find out, discover; perf. part. as adj., certain.*
- com-plector, ī, -plexus sum,** *embrace; include, enclose.*
- compl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum,** *fill, fill up; man.*
- complūrēs, a,** *several, many, a great many.*
- compōrtō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *bring in, collect.*
- compre-hendō, ere, -hēndī, -hēnsum,** *seize, grasp, catch, capture; take.*
- comprobō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *approve, justify, confirm.*
- compulsus, a, um, from com-pello.**

cōnātum, ī, n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt.*

con-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.*

concertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contend, fight.*

concessus, ūs, m., *permission.*

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, *full, fall down.*

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cīsum, *cut down, slay; perf. part. as adj., cut up, broken.*

conclīō, āre, āvī, ātum, *win over; gain, obtain.*

concilium, ī, n., *meeting, assembly, council.*

concisus, a, um, from **conciō**.

concitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arouse, stir up, call out.*

conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, call out, shout.*

con-clūdō, ēre, -clūsī, -clūsum, *shut up, enclose.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

conerep-ō, āre, -nī, -itum, *clash, make a clashing noise.*

con-eurrō, ere, -currī (-eucurri, -cursum, *run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.*

coneursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *run to and fro.*

concursum, ūs, m., *running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.*

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, agreement, condition; state.*

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up, forgive for the sake of.*

Condrusi, ōrum, m. plur., the Condrusi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

con-dnō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *gather, assemble; hire.*

cōn-ferciō, īre, -fersī, -fertum, *pack closely; perf. part. confer-tus, a, um, crowded, in close array, in close order.*

cōnferō, cōferre, contulī, col-lātum, *gather, collect, bring in, convey; with se, betake one's self; compare; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.*

cōnfer-tus, a, um, from **con-ferciō**.

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.*

cōn-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum, *trust, rely on, have confidence.*

cōn-fixō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten.*

cōnfinis, e, *adjacent, neighboring.*

cōnfinium, ī, n., *neighborhood, borders.*

cōn-fiō, -fierī, irregular pass. of **conficio**.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.*

confisus, a, um, from **confido**.

cōn-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnfixus, a, um, from **configo**.

cōnflagrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be on fire, be in flames.*

cōnflīctō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

cōnflīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum, *contend, engage, fight.*

cōnfluēns, entis, m., *confluence, juncture.*

cōn-fluō, ere, -fluxī, *gather, flock.*

cōn-fugiō, ere, -fugī, *flee for refuge, flee.*

cōn-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *mix, gather together.*

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *meet; engage, contend, fight.*

- congressus**, ūs, m., *engagement, conflict.*
- conjectūra**, ae, f., *conjecture, guess.*
- con-jiciō**, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *hurl, cast, throw; drive; put, place; w. se, rush.*
- conjunctum**, adv., *jointly, together.*
- con-jungō**, ere, -junnī, -junctum, *join, connect, unite.*
- con-junx**, -jugis, m. and f., *husband; wife.*
- conjūratiō**, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, combination, league.*
- conjūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.*
- cōnor**, āri, ātus sum, *try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.*
- conqui-ēscō**, ere, -ēvī, -ētum, *rest.*
- con-quirō**, ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, *search for, hunt up, collect.*
- cōsanguineus**, ī, m., *kinsman.*
- cōn-scendō**, ere, -scendī, -scēsum, *ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.*
- cōscientia**, ae, f., *consciousness.*
- cōn-sciscō**, ere, -scivī, -scītum, *resolve on; w. sibi mortem, commit suicide.*
- cōsciūs**, a, um, *conscious.*
- cōn-scribō**, ere, -scripsī, -scrip-tum, *write; enlist, enroll, levy.*
- cōnseerō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate.*
- cōnsector**, āri, ātus sum, *follow up, pursue.*
- cōnsecūtus**, a, um, *from consequor.*
- cōscēdī**, *from consido.*
- cōsēnsiō**, -ōnis, f., *unanimity.*
- cōsēnsus**, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.*
- cōn-sentiō**, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, combine, conspire.*
- cōn-sequor**, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.*
- cōnservō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.*
- Considius**, ī, m., *Publius Considius, one of Caesar's soldiers.*
- cōn-silō**, ere, -sēli, -sessum, *encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.*
- cōnsilium**, ī, n., *deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.*
- cōnsimilis**, e, *very similar, like.*
- cōn-sistō**, ere, -stitī, *take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.*
- cōsobrinus**, ī, m., *cousin.*
- cōsōlor**, āri, ātus sum, *console.*
- cōspectus**, ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*
- cōn-spiciō**, ere, -spexī, spectum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*
- cōnspicor**, āri, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*
- cōnspirō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *combine, conspire.*
- cōnstanter**, adv., *uniformly; firmly, steadily.*
- cōstantia**, ae, f., *firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*
- cōnsternō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *dis-may, impress.*
- cōn-sternō**, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cover, floor.*
- cōnstipō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *crowd, press.*
- cōnstitī**, *from consisto.*
- cōnstit-uō**, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.*
- cōn-stō**, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged; impersonal use, it is certain, agreed, established, evident.*

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed*; in perf. *fenses, be accustomed*.

cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f., *custom, habit*.

cōn-sul, -sulis, m., *consul*, the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship*.

cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *consult, discuss, deliberate*; *provide for, take thought for, have regard for*.

cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deliberate, take counsel*.

cōnsultō, adv., *designedly, on purpose*.

cōnsultum, ī, n., *decree*.

cōn-sūmō, ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum, *spend*; *consume, exhaust*.

cōn-surgō, ere, -surrēxī, -sur-rēctum, *rise up*.

contabulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build up* (by stories).

contagiō, -ōnis, f., *contact, contagion*.

contaminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contaminate, stain*.

con-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, *cover up*.

con-temnō, ere, -temp-sī, temp-tum, *despise*.

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., *contempt*.

contemptus, ūs, m., *scorn*; *object of contempt*.

conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *hasten, make one's way, push on*; *strive, exert one's self*; *struggle, fight, contend*; *maintain, insist*.

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest*.

contentus, a, um, *content, satisfied*.

contestor, ārī, ātus sum, *call upon, invoke*.

contex-ō, ere, -nī, -tum, *weave, join, construct*.

contigi, from *contingo*.

continēns, entis, f., *the continent, mainland*.

continenter, adv., *continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping*.

continentia, ac, f., *self-control, self-restraint*.

con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold together*; *contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold*; *bound, surround, occupy*; pres. part. as adj., *continēns, -entis, continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous*.

con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum, *touch, reach, extend to*; *happen, fall to the lot of*.

continuātiō, -ōnis, f., *continuance, succession*.

continuō, adv., *at once, immediately*.

continuus, a, um, *successive, unbroken, continuous*.

contiō, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting*.

contionor, ārī, ātus sum, *address*.

contrā, 1. adv., *against*; *otherwise*; *contra atque, contrary to what*; 2. prep. w. acc., *opposite, over against*; *against*.

con-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *make smaller, reduce*; *collect, gather together*.

contrārius, a, um, *opposite*; *ex contrario, on the contrary*.

contrōversia, ac, f., *quarrel, dispute, feud*.

contumēlia, ac, f., *disgrace, insult, affront*; *buffetting, violence*.

conval-ēscō, ere, -uī, *recover, regain health*.

convallis, is, f., (enclosed) *valley*.

con-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *gather, bring in*.

con-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *come together, meet, assemble, gather*; *come, arrive*; *be agreed upon*; *be fitting*.

conventus, ūs, m., *meeting, assembly*; *assizes*.

conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn, turn about*; *change, alter*; w. *signa, wheel about*.

- Convictolitāvis, is, m.**, an Aeduan of high rank.
- con-vincō, ere, -vici, -victum,** *prove, bring home.*
- convocō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *call together, call, summon.*
- co-orior, iri, -ortus sum,** *arise, spring up, break out.*
- cōpia, ae, f.,** *supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth; in plur., forces, troops.*
- cōpiōsus, a, um,** *well-supplied, rich.*
- cōpula, ae, f.,** *grappling hook.*
- cor, cordis, n.,** *heart; cordi esse, be dear, be cherished.*
- cōram, adv.,** *in person, face to face.*
- corium, i, n.,** *skin, hide.*
- cornū, ūs, n.,** *horn; wing (of an army).*
- corōna, ae, f.,** *garland; circle; sub corona, at auction.*
- corp-us, -oris, n.,** *body, person; dead body, corpse; system.*
- cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** *destroy.*
- cort-ex, -icis, m.,** *bark.*
- Cōrus, i, m.,** *the north-west wind.*
- cotīdiānus, a, um,** *daily; regular, usual.*
- cotīdiē, adv.,** *daily, every day.*
- Cotta, ae, m.,** *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Cotus, i, m.,** *an Aeduan of high rank.*
- crassitū-dō, -dinis, f.,** *thickness.*
- Crassus, i, m.,** 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus, a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, Marcus Crassus, quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, Publius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- crātēs, is, f.,** *hurdle, wickerwork.*
- crēber, bra, brum,** *frequent, numerous, crowded.*
- crēbrō, adv.,** *frequently, at short intervals.*
- crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum,** *believe; trust.*
- cremō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *burn.*
- creō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *appoint, elect.*
- Crēs, Crētis, m.,** *a Cretan.*
- crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētum,** *grow, become powerful, rise.*
- Critōgnātus, i, m.,** *a chief of the Arverni.*
- cruciātus, ūs, m.,** *torture, cruelty.*
- crūdēlītās, -tātis, f.,** *cruelty.*
- crūdēliter, adv.,** *cruelly.*
- crūs, crūris, n.,** *leg.*
- cubile, is, n.,** *bed, resting place.*
- culmen, -minis, n.,** *height, summit.*
- culpa, ae, f.,** *blame, fault.*
- cultus, ūs, m.,** *refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.*
- cum, prep. w. abl.,** *with, together, with.*
- cum, conj.,** *when, whenever, while; as, since; although; cum primum, as soon as; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also.*
- cunctatiō, -ōnis, f.,** *hesitation, delay.*
- cunctor, āri, ātus sum,** *hesitate, delay.*
- cūctus, a, um,** *all, all together.*
- cuneatim, adv.,** *in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.*
- cuneus, i, m.,** *wedge.*
- cuniculus, i, m.,** *burrow; mine.*
- eupidē, adv.,** *eagerly.*
- eupiditās, -tātis, f.,** *eagerness, eager desire.*
- eupidus, a, um,** *eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.*
- cup-iō, ere, -ivi, -itum,** *be eager; be well disposed.*
- cūr, adv.,** *why.*
- cūrā, ae, f.,** *care; curae esse, be one's care, be carefully attended to.*
- Curiosolites, um, m.,** *the Curiosolites, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, take care; with gerundive, cause to be (done), have (done).*

currō, ere, eucurrī, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, garrison.*

custōdiō, ire, īvī, ītum, *guard.*

cus-tōs, -tōdis, m., *guard; watch, spy.*

D.

D., an abbreviation for **Decimus**.

Daci, ōrum, m. plur., *the Dacians*, a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.

dammō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn, find guilty; perf. part. as subst., damnātus, ī, m., criminal, outlaw.*

dammum, ī, n., *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.*

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *owe; ought, should, cannot help; in pass., be due.*

dē-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.*

decem, ten.

dēceptus, a, um, from **decipio**.

dē-cernō, ere, -erēvī, -erētum, *decide, determine; decree, order.*

dēcērtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.*

dēcēssī, from **decedo**.

dēcēssus, ūs, m., *departure; ebb.*

Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.

dē-cidō, ere, -cidī, fall.

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

Decimus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dē-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *deceive.*

dē-clārō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare, proclaim.*

dē-clivis, e, *sloping; neut. as subst., slope.*

dē-clivitās, -tātis, f., *downward slope.*

dē-crētum, ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dē-crētus, a, um, from **decerno**.

dē-crēvī, from **decerno**.

decumānus, a, um, w. ' porta, *the rear gate.*

decuriō, -ōnis, m., *decurion, a cavalry officer.*

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-eucurrī), -cursum, *run down.*

dē-dec-us, -oris, n., *disgrace.*

dedī, from **do**.

dēdidī, from **dedo**.

dē-diti-cius, a, um, *surrendered; m. as subst., one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.*

dē-ditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender, submission, capitulation.*

dē-dō, ere, -dīdī, -dītum, *surrender, give up; devote.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.*

dē-fatigātiō, -ōnis, f., *exhaustion.*

dē-fatigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weary, exhaust, wear out.*

dē-fectiō, -ōnis, f., *revolt.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *repel; defend, protect.*

dē-fēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defence, protection.*

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring, convey; in pass., drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.*

dē-fessus, a, um, *worn out, weary, exhausted.*

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.*

- dē-fīgō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*
dēfīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fix, assign.*
dē-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluctum, *flow off, divide.*
dēfore, fut. infin. of desum.
dēformis, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*
dē-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *avoid, shun.*
deinceps, adv., *in turn, after that.*
deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*
dējectus, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*
dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*
dēlātus, a, um, from defero.
dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *delight; in pass., take pleasure in.*
dēlēctus, ūs, m., *levy.*
dēlēctus, a, um, and dēlēgī from deligo, ere.
dēl-cō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*
dēliberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*
dēlibrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*
dēlietum, ī, n., *offence, fault.*
dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*
dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*
dēlit-ēscō, ere, -uī, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*
dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*
dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, *cut, reap.*
dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*
dēmīn-uō, ere, -uī, -ātum, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*
dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let down, lower; w. se, descend, be disheartened; perf. part., dēmissus, bowed, drooping, low-lying.*
dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dētemptum, *take down.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*
dēmōror, āri, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*
dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*
dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, deny.*
dēnī, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*
dēnique, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*
dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*
dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*
dē-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off, or away, dislodge.*
dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *lose, forfeit.*
dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, *perish, be lost.*
dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, give up; deposit, store; place.*
dēpopulor, āri, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*
dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*
dē-poseō, ere, -poposcī, *demand, call for.*
dēpositus, a, um, from depono.
dēprecātor, -tōris, m., *intercessor, advocate.*
dēprecor, āri, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*
dēpre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*
dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight desperately.*
dēpulsus, a, um, from depello.
dērīvō, āre, āvī, ātum, *divert, drave.*
dērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *withdraw, take away.*
dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsū, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*
dēsec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut off.*

- dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum,** *desert, abandon, forsake*; perf. part. as adj., *solitary, lonely*.
- dēsertor, -tōris, m.,** *deserter*.
- dēsiderō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *desire, wish for*; lose, miss.
- dēsidia, ae, f.,** *idleness, indolence*.
- dēsignō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *indicate, point at, aim at*.
- dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum,** *leap down*.
- dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum,** *stop, cease*; abandon, give up, desist from.
- dēspectus, a, um,** from *despicio*.
- dēspectus, ūs, m.,** *view down, prospect* (from a height); height.
- dēspēratiō, -ōnis, f.,** *despair*.
- dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *give up hope, despair*; perf. part. as adj., *desperate*.
- dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,** *look down*; look down upon, despise.
- dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *strip, deprive*.
- dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *fasten, make fast*; appoint, set.
- dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum,** *abandon, desert*.
- dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum,** *draw*.
- dēs-am, deesse, dēfuī, be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail; neglect.**
- dēsUPER, adv.,** *from above*.
- dēterior, ius,** (comparative), *inferior, less valuable*.
- dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum,** *deter, discourage, prevent*.
- dētestor, āri, ātus sum,** *curse, denounce*.
- dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *detain, hinder, delay*.
- dētractō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *avoid, escape*.
- dē-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum,** *take from, withdraw, remove*; snatch from.
- dētreētō, āre, sec detracto.**
- dētrimentōsus, a, um,** *detrimental, disadvantageous, hurtful*.
- dētrimentum, ī, n.,** *loss, injury, damage*; defeat.
- dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum,** *strip off, remove*.
- dētulī, from defero.**
- dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *drive off, dislodge*.
- de-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum,** *burn down*.
- deus, ī, m.,** *god*.
- dē-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum,** *bring, convey*.
- dē-veniō, īre, -vērī, -ventum,** *come (down)*.
- dēvexus, a, um,** *sloping, descending*; neut. as subst., *descent, incline*.
- dē-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -vietum,** *subdue, conquer (completely)*.
- dēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *call; bring*.
- dē-voveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum,** *vow, consecrate, devote*; perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower*.
- dexter, tra, trum,** *right, on the right*; fem. *dextra*, as subst., (sc. manus), *the right hand*.
- dī, or dīi, from deus.**
- Diablintes, um, m.,** *the Diablintes, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul*.
- diciō, -ōnis, f.,** *sway, rule, power*.
- diēō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *consecrate, adjudge; give over*.
- dileō, ere, dixī, dictum,** *say, state, mention*; appoint, name; plead; adjudge, administer.
- dictiō, -ōnis, f.,** *pleading*.
- dictum, ī, n.,** *word, order, command*.
- dī-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *divide, separate*.
- dies, ēī, m.** (rarely f.), *day; time*; in dies, *daily*.
- differō, differre, distulī, dilātum,** *differ, be different*; spread, scatter; put off, postpone.
- difficilis, e,** *difficult*.

- difficultās, -tātis, f., difficulty.**
dis-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum, distrust, lack confidence, despair.
dis-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread out; extend.
digitus, i, m., finger.
dignitās, -tātis, f., worth, esteem; reputation, rank, standing; dignity, honor.
dignus, a, um, worthy, worth.
dijūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, decide.
dilēctus, a, um, from diligo.
diligenter, adv., carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.
diligentia, ae, f., carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention.
dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, love.
dī-mētiōr, īri, -mēnsus sum, measure out, proportion.
dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, f., struggle, contest.
dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight, struggle, contend, engage.
dīmīdius, a, um, half; neut. as subst., half.
dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send out, despatch; dismiss, send away; lose, let slip; abandon, give up.
dirēctē, adv., straight, exactly.
dī-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, form (in straight line), arrange; perf. part. as adj., dirēctus, a, um, straight.
dīr-īmō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, break up.
dī-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, plunder, pillage, seize.
Dīs, Ditis, m., Pluto, the god of the lower world.
dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, go away, withdraw, depart; with ab, leave; forsake, abandon; severce from.
disceptātor, -ōris, m., judge, umpire.
dis-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, disting-ish.
discessus, ūs, m., departure, withdrawal.
disciplina, ae, f., training, instruction, learning, system.
dis-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, keep apart, separate.*
discō, ere, didici, learn, be instructed.
discrimen, -inis, n., crisis, danger, critical condition.
dis-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, disperse, remove.
dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, break up, scatter; tear off.
dis-pār, -paris, unequal; inferior.
disparō, āre, āvī, ātum, separate.
dis-spergō, ere, -spersi, -persum, scatter, disperse.
dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.
disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion, debate.
disputō, āre, āvī, ātum, discuss, engage in discussion.
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife.
dis-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēsum, dissent, differ, disagree.
dis-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, plant here and there, scatter about.
dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal.
dissipō, āre, āvī, ātum, scatter, disperse, rout.
dis-suādeō, ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, dissuade, oppose.
dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, keep apart, separate; keep at a distance.
dī-stō, -stāre, be apart, stand apart, be distant.
dis-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, tear apart, wrench asunder.
distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, allot, distribute, divide.
distulī, from differo.
ditissimus, superlative of dives.

- diū**, adv., (*diūtius, diūtissimē*, long, for a long time; *quam diū*, as long as.
- diurnus**, a, um, *by day, during the day*.
- diūtius**, a, um, *long, long-continued*.
- diūturnitas, -tātis**, f., *length, long duration*.
- diūturnus**, a, um, *long, prolonged*.
- diver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum**, *separate*; perf. part. as adj. **diversus**, a, um, *distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart*.
- dīv-es, -itis**, *rich*.
- Divicō, -ōnis**, m., a leader of the Helvetii.
- dī-vidō, ere, -visī, -vīsum**, *divide, separate, distribute*.
- dīvīnus**, a, um, *divine, sacred*.
- Divitiacus**, ī. m., 1. a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Suesiones.
- dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, grant, allow, afford; cause; inter se dare, exchange; w. in fugam, put; operam dare, take pains, see to it.**
- doc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum**, *teach, inform, show, state*.
- documentum**, ī. n., *exemplar, lesson, example, warning*.
- dolēō, ēre, uī, grieve, be pained, suffer.**
- dolor, -ōris**, m., *grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment*.
- dolus**, ī. m., *deceit, guile, artifice*.
- domesticus**, a, um, *at home; w. bellum, intestine, civil*.
- domicilium**, ī. n., *home, house, dwelling-place*.
- dominor, āri, ātus sum**, *rule, be master*.
- dominus**, ī. m., *master, lord*.
- Domitius**, ī. m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul 51 B.C.*
- domus**, us, f., *home, house; domi, locative, at home*.
- Donnotaurus**, ī. m., *Caius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Romanized Gaul.
- dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, grant, give; present.**
- dōnum**, ī. n., *gift, present*.
- dorsum**, ī. n. or **dorsus**, ī. m., *ridge*.
- dōs, dōtis**, f., *dowry*.
- druides**, um, m., *the druids, the priests of the Gauls*.
- Dūbis**, is, m., a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.
- dubitātiō, -ōnis**, f., *doubt, hesitation*.
- dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, hesitate; doubt, have doubts.**
- dubius**, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain*.
- ducentī, ac, a, two hundred.**
- dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, draw, bring; make, construct, run; marry; put off, prolong; reckon, regard, consider.**
- ductus, ūs**, m., *leadership*.
- dum, conj.** *while; until*.
- Dumnōrix, igis**, m., a leader of the Aedui.
- duo, ac, o, two.**
- duodecim, twelve.**
- duodecimus**, a, um, *twelfth*.
- duodēnī, ac, a, twelve each, twelve.**
- duodēvīgintī, indecl., eighteen.**
- dupl-ex, -icis**, *twofold, double*.
- duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, double.**
- dūritia, ac, f., hardship; hardness, endurance.**
- dūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, harden.**
- Durocortorum**, ī. n., a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.
- dūrus**, a, um, *hard, difficult, severe; inclement*.
- Dūras**, ī. m., *Quintus Laberius Dūrus*, a military tribune with Caesar.
- dux, ducis**, m., *leader, guide*.

E.

ē, see ex.

Eburōnes, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

Eburōvices, um, m. plur., *the Eburovices*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

ē-discō, ere, -didici, *learn by heart*.

ēditus, a, um, from *edo*.

ē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *put forth, exhibit, exercise*; perf. part. as adj., **ēditus**, a, um, *elevated, raised, rising, high*.

ēdoc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *explain (fully), inform, show*.

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth*; *draw*.

ef-farciō, īre, -farsī, -fertum, *fill up, stop up*.

effeminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate*.

efferrō, efferre, extulī, **ēlātum**, *take away, take*; *disclose, divulge, publish*; *lift up*; *elate*.

ef-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, *make, render, cause, produce*; *bring about, accomplish, bring to pass*; *complete, finish, cover*; *get together, furnish*.

ef-fodiō, ere, -fodi, -fossus, *dig out, tear out*.

ef-fugio, ere, -fugi, -fugitum, *escape*.

egēō, ēre, nī, *be in need, lack*; pres. part. as adj., **egēns**, -entis, *needy*.

egestās, -tātis, f., *need, poverty, destitution*.

egō, mei, I.

ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go out, depart, leave, quit*; *sally out*; *land, disembark*.

ēgregiē, adv., *excellently, well, admirably*.

ēgregius, a, um, *eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable*.

ēgressus, a, um, from *egredior*.

ēgressus, ūs, m., *landing*.

ē-jiciō, ere, -jeci, -jectum, *fling out, drive out, cast up*; *w. se, rush*.

ējusmodī, such, of such a nature, of that sort.

ē-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, *slip away, escape*.

ēlātus, a, um, from *effero*.

Elaver, -eris, n., *the Elaver*, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Loire.

ēlēctus, a, um, from *eligo*.

elephantus, ī, m., *elephant*.

Eleuteti, ōrum, m. plur., *the Eleuteti*, a tribe of southern Gaul.

ē-liciō, ere, -licui, *entice, draw*.

ē-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *choose, pick*.

Elusātes, um, m. plur., *the Elusates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, emigrate*.

ēmineō, ēre, uī, *project, stand out*.

ēminus, adv., *from or at a distance*.

ē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send out*; *hurl, cast*; *throw aside, drop*.

emō, ere, **ēmi**, **emptum**, *buy*.

ē-nāseor, ī, -nātus sum, *grow out*.

enim, conj., *for, now*.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disclose, divulge, tell, reveal*.

eō, īre, **ii** (ivī), **itum**, *go, march, pass, proceed*.

eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place, to them (it, etc.)*; *thereon, on or in them*; *w. comparatives, the, all the*.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place, in the same direction*.

ephippiātus, a, um, *equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths*.

ephippium, ī, n., *saddle-cloth*.

epistola, ac, f., *letter*.

Eporedorix, -igis, m., *the name of two chiefs of the Aedui*.

epulum, ī, n., in plur., *epulae*
arum, f., *banquet.*

equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-*
soldier; in plur., *cavalry; knight,*
a Roman of rank next to a senator.

equester, tris, tre, of cavalry,
cavalry.

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a Greek
writer and scholar of Alexandria,
who lived from 276 to 195 B.C.

ērēctus, a, um, from erigo.

ēreptus, a, um, from eripio.

ergā, prep. w. acc., towards.

ergō, adv., then, therefore.

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum,
raise; perf. part. as adj., *ērēctus,*
a, um, upright, high.

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum,
take away, destroy; *save, rescue.*

errō, āre, āvi, ātum, be mistaken.

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,
sally out.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally.

essedārius, ī, m., *charioteer,*
chariot-fighter.

essedum, ī, n., *chariot, war-*
chariot.

Esubīl, ōrum, m. plur., the Esubī,
a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., and; et....et, both....
and.

etiam, conj., also, further; even,
still.

etsī, conj., even if, although.

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsi, -vāsum, es-
cape.

ē-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum,
pull out.

ē-veniō, īre, -vēni, -ventum,
turn out, result.

ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result;*
chance; experience.

ēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call out,
summon; challenge; call, invite;
perf. part. as subst., **ēvocāti,**
orum, m., *veterans (who had re-*
entered service).

ēvolō, āre, āvi, ātum, rush out,
burst out.

ex, (sometimes ē before consonants),
prep. w. abl., *from, out of; of;*
after, upon; in accordance with;
in consequence of; of direction,
on; above.

exāctus, a, um, from exigo.

exagitō, āre, āvi, ātum, harass.

exāminō, āre, āvi, ātum, weigh,
test.

exanimō, āre, āvi, ātum, kill;
weaken, exhaust; perf. part. as
adj., **exanimātus, a, um, out of**
breath, breathless.

ex-ardēscō, ere, -arsi, -arsum,
blaze forth; become enraged, be-
come incensed.

exaudiō, īre, īvi, ītum, hear
clearly, hear.

ex-eōdō, ere, -eēssi, -eōssum,
go out, withdraw, leave, quit.

ex-cellō, ere, -cellui, -celsum,
excel, be eminent; perf. part. as
adj., **excelsus, a, um, lofty,**
high.

exceptō, āre, āvi, ātum, catch
up, take hold of.

ex-eīdō, ere, -eīdi, -eīsum, cut
down.

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
receive, meet; catch, come upon;
take up, catch up, follow, succeed.

excitō, āre, āvi, ātum, rouse,
incite, stimulate; raise; kindle.

ex-elūdō, ere, -elūsi, -elūsum,
cut off, shut out, prevent.

excōgitō, āre, āvi, ātum, think
of.

exerciō, āre, āvi, ātum, tor-
ture, torment.

excubitor, -tōris, m., *picket, sen-*
tinel.

excub-ō, āre, -nī, -itum, watch
by night, keep watch, be on the
watch.

exeuleō, āre, āvi, ātum, tread
or trample down.

excursiō, -ōnis, f., sally.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, f., apology.

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse ;
w. se, apologize.

exemplum, i, n., example, pre-
cedent ; warning, punishment.

ex-eō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, go
out, go forth, leave, remove, pro-
ceed.

exercēō, ēre, uī, itum, train,
exercise, practise, drill, busy.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., training,
exercise, practice.

exercitō, āre, āvī, ātum, train,
practise.

exercitus, ūs, m., army.

ex-hauriō, ire, -hausi, -haus-
tum, remove, carry off.

exigō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, spend,
end ; pass., be over.

exiguē, adv., scantily ; barely,
scarcely.

exiguitās, -tātis, f., scantiness,
smallness, small extent, shortness,
meagreness.

exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.

eximius, a, um, remarkable, high.

existimātiō, -ōnis, f., opinion.

existimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think,
believe, consider ; estimate.

exitus, ūs, m., outlet, passage ;
departure ; outcome, result ; end.

expediō, ire, ivī, itum, free ;
get ready, arrange ; perf. part.
as adj., **expeditus, a, um, unin-**
cumbered, free ; rapid, active ; in
light marching order, light-armed ;
easy.

expeditiō, -ōnis, f., expedition.

expellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum,
drive out, banish ; remove, dispel.

exper-ior, irī, -tus sum, try,
make an attempt, test, experience ;
await.

expiō, āre, āvī, ātum, atone for,
retrieve, repair.

expl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill
up ; make up, make good ; reach,
attain.

explōrator, -tōris, m., scout.

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, ex-
amine, inquire, investigate, recon-
noitre, try to find out ; perf. part.
as adj., **explōrātus, a, um, cer-**
tain, assured.

ex-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,
display ; disembark, land ; set
forth, state.

exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry
off, remove.

ex-poscō, ere, -poposci, demand.

ex-primō, ere, -pressi, -pres-
sum, extort, elicit ; raise.

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., storming,
taking by storm.

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, storm,
take by storm, capture ; subdue,
conquer.

expulsus, a, um, from expello.

ex-quirō, ere, -quisivi, -quisi-
tum, seek out ; ask for.

ex-sequor, ī, -secentus sum,
follow out, maintain, enforce.

ex-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum,
put out ; bare, uncover.

ex-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum,
stand out, project ; spring up,
arise.

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look
for, await, wait for, wait to see,
wait ; expect.

expoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, de-
prive.

ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stine-
tum, extinguish, destroy.

existi, from exsisto.

extō, āre, stand out, project.

ex-struō, ere, -struxi, -struc-
tum, pile up, raise, build.

exsul, -sulis, m., exile.

exter, or externus, era, erum,
outward, foreign ; compar., **ex-**
terior, outer ; superl., **extrē-**
mus, farthest, most distant, last,
extreme.

exterreō, ēre, uī, itum, frighten,
terrify.

ex-timēscō, ere, -timui, fear,
dread.

ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tor-
tum, force, extort.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond*.

ex-trahō, ere, -traxi, tractum, *drag out, waste by delay, fritter away*.

extrēmus, superl. of **exter**.

extrūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *thrust out, force back, shut out*.

ex-nō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *deprive, strip, despoil*.

ex-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn up, burn*.

F.

faber, brī, m., *workman, engineer*.

Fabius, ī, m., 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. *Quintus Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

facile, adv., *easily, readily*.

facilis, e, *easy*.

facinus, -oris, n., *deed, crime*.

faciō, ere, fecī, factum, pass., fiō, fieri, factussum, *make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; in passive, take place, come to pass, happen, result*.

factiō, -ōnis, f., *party, faction*.

factum, ī, n., *deed, act, action*.

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance, power; supply; in plur., resources, means*.

fāgus, ī, m., *beech*.

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive; disappoint*.

falsus, a, um, *false, empty*.

falx, faleis, f., *sickle, hook*.

fāma, ae, f., *rumor, report*.

famēs, is, f., *hunger, starvation, famine*.

familia, ae, f., *household, house, family*.

familiāris, e, *of a household; masc. as subst., intimate friend*.

familiāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy, friendship*.

fās, n. indecl., *right (by divine law)*.

fastigātē, adv., *obliquely, sloping*.

fastigium, ī, n., *slope, elevation, inclination*.

fastigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring to a point; perf. part as adj., sloping, inclined*.

fātum, ī, n., *fate, lot*.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor, be favorable to*.

fax, facis, f., *torch, brand*.

fēlicitās, -tātis, f., *good fortune, success*.

fēliciter, adv., *happily, prosperously, successfully*.

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; female*.

fem-ur, -inis, n., *thigh*.

fera, ae, f., *wild beast*.

ferāx, ācis, *fertile, fruitful*.

ferē, adv., *almost; about; generally, usually, for the most part; w. negatives, scarcely*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, fātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; experience, suffer, feel; receive, win; run, go; regard; call; in pass., rush; signa ferre, advance; w. auxilium, lend; w. condicionem, offer; w. injurias, commit*.

ferrāmentum, ī, n., *(iron) tool*.

ferrāria, ae, f., *iron mine*.

ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, ī, n., *iron, iron point, sword*.

fertilis, e, *fertile, fruitful, rich*.

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility, richness*.

ferns, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious*.

ferve-faciō, ere, -fecī, -factum, *heat, make red hot*.

fer-veō, ēre, -buī, *be glowing, be red hot*.

fibula, ae, f., *brace*.

fictus, a, um, *from fingo*.

fidēfis, e, *faithful*.

fidēs, eī, f., *pledge, word; trust-worthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, alliance; pledge, gain belief.*

fidūcia, ae, f., *reliance, confidence.*

figūra, ae, f., *shape.*

filia, ae, f., *daughter.*

filius, i, m., *son.*

finḡō, ere, finxī, fictum, *make up, invent.*

finis, ire, ivi, itum, *limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.*

finis, is, m., *end, limit; in plur., borders, territory, land, district.*

finitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering; masc. plur. as subst., neighbors.*

fiō, fieri, factus sum, *pass of facio, be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

firmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*

firmitū-dō, -dinis, f., *strength.*

firmō, āre, āvi, ātum, *strengthen, secure.*

firmus, a, um, *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *pile-driver, rammer.*

Flaccus, i, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.*

flāgitō, āre, āvi, ātum, *demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn.*

fleō, ere, siēvi, flētum, *weep, be in tears.*

flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

flō, āre, āvi, ātum, *blow.*

flōreō, ēre, nī, *bloom; pres. part. as adj., flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*

fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*

fodiō, ere, fōdi, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty.*

fore, fut. infin. of sum.

foris, adv., *outdoor; without, outside.*

forma, ae, f., *shape, form; structure.*

fors, forte, f., *(other cases wanting), chance; in abl., perchance, perhaps.*

fortis, e, brave, courageous

fortiter, adv., *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*

fortitū-dō, -dinis, f., *bravery, courage.*

fortitūō, adv., *by chance, accidentally.*

fortuna, ae, f., *fortune, chance, lot, situation; good fortune, success; in plur., possessions, fortunes.*

fortunātus, a, um, *fortunate.*

forum, i, n., *market place.*

fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch.*

fovea, ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*

frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, *break, shatter, wreck; crush.*

frāter, tris, m., *brother.*

frāternus, a, um, *brotherly, of a brother.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception, treachery.*

fremitus, ūs, m., *din, noise.*

frequēns, entis, *numerous, in large numbers.*

frētus, a, um, *relying on, w. abl.*

frigidus, a, um, *cold.*

frig-us, -oris, n., *cold, frost, cold weather.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead; front.*

fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile.*

fructus, ūs, m., *fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.*

frūgēs, um, *see frux.*

frūmentārius, a, um, *of grain; fertile, productive; res frumentaria, supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting grain, foraging*.

frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, *get grain, forage*.

frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn, crops, provisions*.

frutor, ī, fructus sum, *enjoy*, w. abl.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect*.

frux, frūgis, (sing. very rare in Latin), *crops*.

Fūsius, ī, m., *Caius Fufius Cila*, a Roman knight.

fuga, ae, f., *flight, rout*; **in fugam convertere**, *conferere* or *dare*, *to put to flight*.

fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitum, *flee, escape*; *avoid, shun*.

fugitivus, ī, m., *runaway slave*.

fugō, āre, āvī, ātum, *put to flight, rout*.

fūmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *smoke*.

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke*.

funda, ae, f., *sling*.

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., *slinger*.

fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour*; *scatter, rout*.

fungor, ī, functus sum, *discharge, perform*, w. abl.

fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable*.

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral*.

furor, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy, rage*.

furtum, ī, n., *theft*.

fūsilis, e, *molten, softened*.

fūsus, a, um, *from fundo*.

futūrus, a, um, *from sum*.

G.

Gabali, ōrum, m. plur., *the Gabali*, a tribe in the south of Gaul.

Gabinus, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinus*, consul 58 B.C.

gaesum, ī, n., *javelin, spear*.

Gāius, ī, or **Cāius**, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a king of the Suessiones.

galea, ae, f., *helmet*.

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*. 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior*, the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Uterior*, the south-eastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Galliens, a, um, *of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic*.

gallīna, ae, f., *hen*.

Gallus, ī, m., 1. *a Gaul*; 2. *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Garumna, ae, m., *the Garonne*, a river of south-western Gaul.

Garumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Garumnī*, a tribe near the Pyrenees.

Gates, um, m. plur., *the Gates*, a tribe in the south-west of Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, gavisus sum, *rejoice*.

Geidumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Geidumnī*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

Genāva, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges, at the extreme north-east of the Province.

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*.

generātim, adv., *by tribes*.

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, nation, clan*.

genus, -eris, n., *race, family; species; kind, sort, class*.

Gergovia, ae, f., *Gergovia*, a town of the Arverni, in the centre of Gaul.

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany*, the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, German, of or with the Germans.

Germānus, ī, m., a German.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, manage; carry on, wage; hold; do; in pass., go on.

gladius, ī, m., sword.

glæba, æ, f., clod, lump.

glāns, glandis, f., acorn; ball, bullet.

glōria, æ, f., glory, fame, reputation.

glōrior, āri, ātus sum, boast of, w. abl.

Gnaeus, ī, m., Gnaeus, or Cneius, a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., a man of rank among the Arverni.

Gorgobina, æ, f., a town in the country of the Aedui, in central Gaul.

Græcus, a, um, Greek, Grecian; masc. as subst., a Greek.

Grāiocelī, ōrum, m. plur., the Graioceli, an Alpine tribe between Gaul and Italy.

grandis, e, large.

grātia, æ, f., favor, good will; influence; gratitude, thanks; gratias agere, render thanks, thank; gratiam referre, make a grateful return, requite; gratiam habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratiam inire, win gratitude.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., congratulation; joy, rejoicing.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum, congratulate, offer congratulations.

grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleasing; neut. as subst., a favor.

gravis, e, heavy; severe, bitter, serious; solemn; w. aetas, advanced.

gravitās, -tātis, f., weight; strength, importance.

graviter, adv., heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly, seriously; graviter ferre, be annoyed, feel keenly.

gravor, āri, ātus sum, be reluctant, object.

Grudii, -ōrum, m. plur., the Grudii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

gubernātor, -tōris, m., pilot, helmsman.

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, taste, eat.

Gutruātus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

H.

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; w. orationem, deliver, make; treat, regard, consuler; se habere, to be; w. perf. part. pass., much like Eng. auxiliary verb have.

haesitō, āre, āvi, ātum, stick fast, be caught.

hāmus, ī, m., hook.

harpagō, -ōnis, m., hook, grappling-iron.

Harūdes, um, m. plur., the Harudes, a German tribe which had crossed into Gaul.

haud, adv., not.

Helvēticus, a, um, Helvetian, of or with the Helvetii.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; masc. plur. as subst., the Helvetii, a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.

Helvii, ōrum, m. plur., the Helvii, a tribe in the Province.

Hereynius, a, um, w. silva, the Hercynian forest, extending through southern and central Germany.

hērēditās, -tātis, f., inheritance.

hiberna, ōrum, n. plur., winter camp, winter-quarters.

hibernacula, ōrum, n. plur., winter-quarters.

Hibernia, æ, f., Ireland.

hic, hæc, hoc, this; he; the following; the present; such; often loosely, that; hoc, neut. abl. as adv., in this way, on this account, and w. comparatives, the.

- hic**, adv., *here, herein*.
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *winter, pass the winter*.
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather*.
hinc, adv., *from this point, hence*.
Hispania, ae, f., *Spain*.
Hispanus, a, um, *Spanish*.
hom-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person*; in plur., *man, mankind, people*.
honestus, a, um, *honorable, of rank, distinguished*.
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, distinction; respect; high position*.
honōrificus, a, um, *honorable, complimentary*.
hōra, ae, f., *hour, (one-twelfth of the daylight)*.
horreō, ēre, nī, *shudder at, dread*.
horribilis, e, *dreadful, formidable*.
horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful*.
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on*.
hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend*.
hospitium, ī, n., *friendship, hospitality*.
hostis, is, m., *enemy*.
hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here*.
hūjusmodi, of this sort, to this effect.
hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement, accomplishments*.
hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined*.
humilis, e, *low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure*.
humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness; weakness, insignificance*.
- I.**
- ibi**, adv., *there*.
iecins, ī, m., *a leader of the Remi*.
ictus, ūs, m., *blow, stroke*,
- ideircō**, adv., *on that account, for this reason*.
idem, eadem, idem, *the same; also*.
identidem, adv., *again and again*.
idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit*.
Idūs, num. f. plur., *the Ides* (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).
ignis, is, m., *fire; camp fire*.
ignōbilis, e, *unknown, obscure*.
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace*.
ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with*.
ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *forgive, pardon*, w. dat.
ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*.
illātus, a, um, *from infero*.
ille, illa, illud, *that, he*.
illuc, adv., *there, in that place*.
illigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bind, attach, fasten*.
illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there*.
illustis, e, *distinguished, remarkable*.
Illyricum, ī, n., *a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic*.
imbēcillitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, feebleness*.
im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, rainstorm*.
imitor, ārī, ātus sum, *imitate*.
immānis, e, *huge, enormous*.
immincō, ēre, nī, *be near at hand; threaten*.
im-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send against, hurt; let down, sink, let in*.
immolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sacrifice*.
immortālis, e, *immortal*.
immūnis, e, *free from taxation or tribute*.
immūnitās, -tātis, f., *freedom, exemption from public service*.
imparātus, a, um, *unprepared*.
impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance; in plur., baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses*.

impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass* ; perf. part. as adj. **impeditus, a, um**, *hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable*.

im-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, *urge, instigate, incite*.

impendeō, ēre, overhang.

impēnsus, a, um, *expensive, high*.

imperātor, -toris, m., *commander (in chief)*.

imperātum, ī, n., *order, command*.

imperfectus, a, um, *unfinished, unaccomplished*.

imperitus, a, um, *inexperienced, unacquainted, w. gen.*

imperium, ī, n., *command, order ; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy*.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lay upon, demand, require, order to furnish ; order, command, rule*.

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on*.

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge ; fury, rush, violence*.

impius, a, um, *wicked, unholy*.

implic-ō, āre, āvī, ātum, or -ui, -itum, *interweave, interlace*.

implorō, āre, āvī, ātum, *beg, entreat, beseech*.

im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, *place on, put on, mount ; lay, impose*.

importō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, introduce, import*.

imprimis, or in primis, *especially, particularly*.

improbus, a, um, *wicked, unprincipled*.

imprōvisus, a, um, *unforeseen ; abl., improviso, as adv., so de improviso, unexpectedly, unawares*.

imprūdēns, -entis, *unsuspecting, off one's guard*.

imprūdēntia, ae, f., *thoughtlessness, indiscretion*.

impub-ēs, -eris, *chaste, unmarried*.

impugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, fight*.

impulsus, a, um, from **impello**.

impulsus, ūs, m., *instigation*.

impūne, adv., *with impunity*.

impūnitās, -tātis, f., *impunity, exemption from punishment*.

inns, a, um, superlative of **inferus**.

in, prep. (1) w. abl., *in, at, within, on ; among, in the country of ; over ; considering, in view of ; in the case of, in regard to* ; (2) w. acc., *into, to ; towards, against, upon, on ; until ; for, with a view to, according to ; in*.

inānis, e, *empty, idle, mere*.

incautē, adv., *carelessly, incautiously*.

incautus, a, um, *careless, off one's guard*.

incendium, ī, n., *fire, burning*.

in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, *set on fire, burn ; arouse, inflame*.

incertus, a, um, *uncertain, untrustworthy, confused*.

in-eidō, ere, -eidi, -cāsum, *fall in with, come upon ; happen, occur*.

in-eidō, ere, -eidi, -cīsum, *cut into*.

in-eipiō, ere, -eēpī, -ceptum, *begin*.

incisus, a, um, from **incido**.

incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, impel, set in motion ; arouse, excite ; w. se, rush on, rush in ; perf. part. w. equus, at full speed*.

incognitus, a, um, *unknown*.

incol-ō, ere, -ui, inhabit, dwell, live.

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss*.

incommodē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately, badly*.

incommodum, ī, n., *disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses*.

- incrēdibilis**, e, *incredible, extraordinary*.
- increpitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *reproach, upbraid, taunt*.
- in-cumbō**, ere, -cumbi, -cubitum, *apply or devote one's self*.
- incursiō**, -ōnis, f., *raid, inroad*.
- ineursus**, ūs, m., *attack, incursion*.
- incensō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *blame, attack, censure*.
- inde**, adv., *from that place, thence; then, next*.
- indiciū**, ī, n., *information*.
- in-dicō**, ere, -dixi, -dictum, *appoint, proclaim, call*.
- indictus**, a, um, (1) *from indico*; (2) *unpleaded, unheard*.
- indignē**, adv., *unworthily, unhesitatingly*.
- indignitās**, -tātis, f., *indignity, disgrace*.
- indignor**, āri, ātus sum, *be indignant*.
- indignus**, a, um, *unworthy, unbecoming*.
- indiligēns**, -entis, *careless, indifferent*.
- indiligenter**, adv., *carelessly*.
- indiligentia**, ae, f., *indifference, lack of energy*.
- in-ducō**, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead on, influence, induce; cover*.
- indulgentia**, ae, f., *indulgence, leniency*.
- indulgeō**, ēre, -si, -tum, *favor, w. dat.*
- ind-uō**, ere, -uī, -itum, *put on; w. se, fall upon, get entangled*.
- industriē**, adv., *actively, zealously*.
- indūtiæ**, ārum, f. plur., *truce*.
- indutionarius**, ī, m., *a chief of the Treveri*.
- in-eō**, -ire, -iī(-ivī), -itum, *enter upon, adopt, form, make; estimate; begin; win*.
- inermis**, e, or **inermus**, a, um, *unarmed*.
- in-ers**, -ertis, *lazy, unmanly*.
- infāmia**, ae, f., *dishonor, disgrace, disrepute*.
- Infāns**, -antis, m., *infant, child*.
- infectus**, a, um, *undone, unaccomplished*.
- inferō**, **inferre**, **intulī**, **illātum**, *bring in, put in or upon; introduce, import; cause, inflict, inspire; w. bellum, make, wage (offensive); w. signa, advance; w. causam, advance, allege*.
- inferns**, a, um, *low; compar. inferior, lower; inferior; superl. infimus, lowest, at the foot or base; neut. as subst., the bottom, the foot*.
- Infestus**, a, um, *hostile*.
- in-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *stain*.
- Infidēlis**, e, *unfaithful*.
- in-figō**, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten to, fix on*.
- Infimus**, a, um, *superl. of inferus*.
- Infinitus**, a, um, *endless, boundless, vast*.
- Infirmitās**, -tātis, f., *weakness, fickleness, inconstancy*.
- Infirmus**, a, um, *weak*.
- Infixus**, a, um, *from infigo*.
- in-flectō**, ere, -flexī, -flexum, *bend*.
- in-fluō**, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, *flow, empty*.
- in-fodiō**, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *bury*.
- Infra**, (1) *adv., below, farther down*; (2) *prep. w. acc., below, less than*.
- ingēns**, entis, *huge, very large*.
- ingrātus**, a, um, *displeasing, unacceptable*.
- in-gredior**, ī, -gressus sum, *enter*.
- inimicitia**, ae, f., *enmity, feud*.
- inimicus**, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile; masc. as subst., enemy*.
- iniquitās**, -tātis, f., *injustice, unfairness; disadvantage, unfavorable nature or position*.

- iniquus, a, um, uneven; unfavorable; unfair, unjust.**
- initium, i, n., beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.**
- initus, a, um, from inco.**
- in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.**
- in-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, impose.**
- injūria, ae, f., wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.**
- injūssū, abl. used as adv., without one's orders.**
- in-nāscor, i, -nātus sum, spring up in; in perf., be inborn, be innate.**
- in-nitor, i, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, lean on.**
- innocēns, entis, innocent, guiltless.**
- innocentia, ae, f., innocence, integrity.**
- inopia, ae, f., want, scarcity, lack, privation.**
- inopināns, -antis, not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.**
- inquam, inquit, defective verb, say.**
- insciēns, entis, not knowing, being unaware.**
- inscītia, ae, f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.**
- inseīus, a, um, ignorant, unaware.**
- in-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue.**
- in-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, insert.**
- insidiæ, ārum, f. plur., ambush, stratagem, treachery.**
- insidior, āri, ātus sum, lie in wait.**
- insignis, e, marked, notable, signal; n. as subst., insigne, is, ensign, badge, token, decoration.**
- in-siliō, ire, -siluī, -sultum, leap at or on.**
- insimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, charge, accuse.**
- insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, insinuate; w. se, work one's way in.**
- in-sistō, ere, -stiti, stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.**
- insolenter, adv., insolently, haughtily, immoderately.**
- inspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look on.**
- instābilis, e, unsteady, changeable.**
- instar, accus. as adv., like, w. gen.**
- instigō, āre, āvī, ātum, urge on, incite.**
- īstit-nō, ere, -uī, -nūtum, undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.**
- īstitūtum, i, n., custom, practice.**
- in-stō, āre, -stiti, -stātum, press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.**
- īstrūmentum, i, n., equipment, furniture.**
- in-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.**
- īsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, train.**
- īsuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.**
- īsula, ae, f., island.**
- īsuper, adv., above, on top.**
- integer, gra, grum, unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.**
- in-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, cover over, cover.**
- intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.**
- inten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, stretch, strain; perf. partic., intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.**
- inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, during; inter se, one another, to or with one another.**
- inter-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, come between, be between, interrene, elapse, exist between.**
- inter-cipio, ere, -cēpī, -cep-tum, intercept, cut off.**
- inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off.**

- inter-dīcō, ere, -dixi, -dictum,** *forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.*
- interdiū, adv.,** *by day, in the day-time.*
- interdum, adv.,** *sometimes.*
- interēā, adv.,** *meanwhile, in the meantime.*
- inter-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum,** *perish.*
- interest, from intersum.**
- inter-ficiō, ere, -fici, -fectum,** *slay, put to death, kill.*
- interim, adv.,** *meanwhile.*
- interior, comparative adj.,** *inner, interior; plur., those living in the interior.*
- interitus, ūs, m.,** *death, destruction.*
- inter-jeciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum,** *place between, interpose; in pass., be between, intervene, come at intervals.*
- inter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass, in pass., go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.*
- interneciō, -ōnis, f.,** *destruction, annihilation, extermination.*
- interpellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *interrupt, disturb, interfere with.*
- inter-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** *interpose; allege; pledge; put forward; in pass., intervene.*
- inter-pres, -pretis, m.,** *interpreter.*
- interpretor, ārī, ātus sum,** *interpret, explain.*
- interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *question.*
- inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** *break down, destroy.*
- inter-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum,** *cut down, break down, destroy.*
- inter-sum, -esse, -fui,** *be between, be engaged in, take part in; as impersonal verb, interest, it is of importance, it concerns.*
- intervallum, ī, n.,** *interval, distance.*
- inter-veniō, īre, -venī, -ventum,** *come up, appear.*
- interventus, ūs, m.,** *intervention, coming on.*
- intex-ō, ere, -ui, -tum,** *weave together, plait.*
- intoleranter, adv.,** *eagerly, recklessly.*
- intrā, prep. w. acc.,** *within.*
- intritus, a, um,** *unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.*
- intrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *enter.*
- intrō-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,** *lead in, bring in.*
- intro-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum,** *come in, enter.*
- introitus, ūs, m.,** *entrance, approach.*
- intrō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *send in, let in, admit.*
- intrōrsus, adv.,** *within, into the interior, inside.*
- intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** *break in, burst in.*
- intueor, ērī, itus sum,** *gaze on, look at.*
- intulī, from infero.**
- intus, adv.,** *within, inside.*
- inūsītātus, a, um,** *unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.*
- inūtilis, e,** *useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.*
- in-veniō, īre, -venī, -ventum,** *come upon, find; learn.*
- inventor, -tōris, m.,** *inventor, discoverer.*
- inveter-āscō, ere, -āvī, -ātum,** *become established, settle.*
- invicem, adv.,** *in turn.*
- invictus, a, um,** *unconquered, invincible.*
- in-videō, ēre, -vidi, -vīsum,** *envy, be jealous of, w. dat.*
- invidia, ac, f.,** *envy, jealousy.*
- inviolātus, a, um,** *inviolate.*
- invito, āre, āvī, ātum,** *invite, induce, allure.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, against one's will.*

ipse, a, um, *himself, he himself, itself, etc.; very.*

irācūdia, ac, f., *wrath, anger, passion.*

irācūndus, a, um, *passionate.*

ir-rideō, ēre, -rīsi, -rīsum, *ridicule, jeer at.*

irridiculē, adv., *without humor.*

ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *burst in, break in, rush, dash.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they; w. rel., the; such; abl. eō as adv., so much, the, on that account.*

iste, a, ud, *that of yours, that.*

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

Italia, ac, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*

iter, **itineris**, n., *route, march, road, journey; magnum iter, a forced march; iter facere, to march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, adj. with **portus**, a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.

J.

jaceō, ēre, nī, itum, *lie, be fallen, be dead.*

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

jaetō, āre, āvī, ātum, *shake, toss, fling; discuss.*

jactūra, ac, f., *loss, sacrifice; offer.*

jaculum, ī, n., *javelin.*

jam, adv., *now, at length, already; w. negatives, any more, longer.*

juba, ac, f., *mane.*

jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum, *order, bid, command.*

jūdicium, ī, n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion; abl. judicio, by design, purposely.*

jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*

jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*

jumentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, horse.*

junctūra, ac, f., *joining.*

jungō, ere, junxi, junctum, *join, unite.*

jūnior, comparative of **juvenis**.

Jūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius, one of Caesar's officers.*

Juppiter, **Jovis**, m., *Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans.*

Jūra, ac, m., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.

jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swear, take an oath.*

jūs, **jūris**, n., *right, rights, law, justice.*

jūsjurandum, **jūrisjūrandī**, n., *oath.*

jūssū, abl. used as adv., *by order.*

jūstitia, ac, f., *justice, fairness.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, rightful, law-ful, fair; proper, regular, due.*

juvenis, e (comparative **jūnior**), *young; m. as subst., a young man.*

juven-tūs, -tūtis, f., *youth; as collective, youth, young men.*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid, help, assist.*

jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends, the first day of the month.*

L.

L., an abbreviation for **Lucius**.

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.*

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

- labor**, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion; endurance, hardness.*
- lābor**, ī, lāpsus sum, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away; fail, be disappointed.*
- laborō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *toil, strive, be anxious; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*
- labrum**, ī, n., *lip; edge, rim.*
- lac**, lactis, n., *milk.*
- laecess-ō**, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*
- laerima**, ae, f., *tear.*
- laerimō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *weep.*
- laeus**, ūs, m., *lake.*
- laedō**, ere, laesi, laesum, *injure; violate, break.*
- laetatiō**, -ōnis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*
- laetitia**, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*
- laetus**, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*
- languidē**, adv., *with little energy.*
- languidus**, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*
- languor**, -ōris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*
- lap-is**, -idis, m., *stone.*
- lāpsus**, a, um, *from lābor.*
- laqueus**, ī, m., *noose.*
- largior**, īrī, itus sum, *give bountifully; bribe; supply, afford.*
- largiter**, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*
- largitiō**, -ōnis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*
- lassitū-dō**, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*
- lātē**, adv., *widely, far.*
- latēbra**, ae, f., *hiding-place.*
- lateō**, ēre, mī, *lurk, lie concealed; escape notice.*
- lātītū-dō**, -dinis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*
- Latovićī**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Latovićī, neighbors of the Helvetii.*
- latro**, -ōnis, m., *robber.*
- latrōcinium**, ī, n., *robbery, raid.*
- lat-us**, -eris, n., *side, flank.*
- lātus**, a, um, and **lātūrus**, a, um, *from fero.*
- lātus**, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*
- laudō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, commend.*
- laus**, laudis, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*
- lavō**, āre, āvī, ātum, or **lāvī**, lautum or lōtum, *wash; in pass., bathe.*
- laxō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*
- lēgatiō**, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
- lēgātus**, ī, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.*
- legiō**, -ōnis, f., *legion, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.*
- legiōnārius**, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*
- Lemannus**, ī, m., *a lake now called Geneva, in eastern Gaul.*
- Lemovīces**, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices, a tribe in south-western Gaul.*
- lēnis**, e, *gentle, light.*
- lentās**, -tātis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*
- lēniter**, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*
- Lepontiī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Lepontiī, an Alpine tribe.*
- lep-us**, -oris, m., *hare.*
- Leuci**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leuci, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*
- Levacī**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leraci, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*
- levis**, e, *light; slight, trifling; weak, fickle.*
- levitās**, -tātis, f., *lightness; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*
- levō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, relieve.*
- lēx**, lēgis, f., *law.*
- Lexovī**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Lexovii, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.*

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure.*

liber, **era**, **erum**, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammelled, unincumbered.*

liberālitās, **-tātis**, f., *generosity, liberality.*

liberāliter, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*

liberē, adv., *freely, without check or restraint.*

liberī, **ōrum**, m. plur., *children.*

liberō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *free, set free.*

libertās, **-tātis**, f., *liberty, freedom.*

librīlis, e, *of a pound weight.*

licentia, ae, f., *recklessness, lawlessness.*

liceor, **ērī**, **itus sum**, *bid (at auction).*

licet, **ēre**, **licuit**, *it is permitted, allowable; freely, may, might.*

Liger, **-eris**, m., *the river Loire, in the central part of Gaul.*

lignātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *getting wood.*

lignātor, **-tōris**, m., *wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.*

lilium, **ī**, n., *lily.*

linea, ae, f., *line.*

Lingones, **um**, m. plur., *the Lingones, a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.*

lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language, speech.*

lingula, ae, f., *little tongue; tongue of land, headland.*

linter, **-tris**, f., *small boat, skiff.*

linum, **ī**, n., *flax.*

lis, **litis**, f., *lawsuit, dispute; damages.*

Liscus, **ī**, m., *a leading man of the Aedui.*

Litaviceus, **ī**, m., *a leading man of the Aedui.*

littera, ae, f., *letter, character; in plur., letter, despatch; documents, records.*

lit-us, **-oris**, n., *shore.*

locus, **ī**, m.; in plur., **loca**, **ōrum**, n.; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance; in plur., space, ground, district, region, country, place.*

locūtus, a, **um**, *from loquor.*

longē, adv., *far; long.*

longinquus, a, **um**, *distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.*

longitū-dō, **-dinis**, f., *length.*

longurius, **ī**, m., *long pole.*

longus, a, **um**, *long; distant; tedious; navis longa, war-ship, galley.*

loquor, **ī**, **locūtus sum**, *speak, say, converse.*

lōrica, ae, f., *coat of mail; breast-work.*

Lucānius, **ī**, m., *Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

Lūcius, **ī**, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

Lueterius, **ī**, m., *a leading Gaul, belonging to the Cadurei.*

Lugotor-ix, **-igis**, m., *a Briton of rank.*

lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

Lutētia, ae, f., *a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.*

lūx, **lūcis**, f., *light, dawn; prima lux, daybreak, dawn.*

luxuria, ae, f., *luxury, luxurious living.*

M.

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus**.

māceria, ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *machine, engine.*

maestus, a, **um**, *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

magistrātus, **ūs**, m., *magistrate; office, magistracy.*

māgnificus, a, **um**, *splendid, grand.*

māgnitū-dō, **-dinis**, f., *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

- māgnopere**, adv. (*magis, mājimē*), *greatly, very, strongly, earnestly*.
- māgnus**, a, um (*mājor, mājimus*), *great, large; loud; serious, extensive; māgnī*, as adv., *highly, greatly*.
- mājestās, -tātis**, f., *dignity, majesty*.
- mājor**, comparative of **māgnus**: in m. plur. as subst., *elders, ancestors, fathers*.
- malacia**, ae, f., *calm, lull*.
- male**, adv. (*pējus, pessimē*), *badly, ill, unsuccessfully*.
- maleficium**, ī, n., *mischievousness, outrage, harm*.
- Mallius**, ī, m., *Lucius Mallius*, a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani, B.C. 78.
- mālō, mālle, māluī**, *prefer*.
- mālus**, ī, m., *mast, (upright) beam*.
- mandātum**, ī, n., *order, commission, instruction, message*.
- mandō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *order, instruct; entrust, give up, commit, betake*.
- Mandubiī, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Mandubiī*, a tribe in central Gaul.
- Mandubracius**, ī, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.
- māne**, adv., *in the morning*.
- maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm**, *stay, remain; abide by, stand by*.
- manipulāris**, īs, m., *one belonging to a company or manipulus, comrade*.
- manipulus**, ī, m., *maniple, company* (one-third of a cohort).
- mānsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum**, *tame*.
- mānsuēfiō**, passive of **mānsuefacio**.
- mānsuētū-dō, -dinis**, f., *gentleness, clemency*.
- manus, ūs**, f., *hand; band, force; manu, by art, by force; manus dare, yield, give in*.
- Marcomanī, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Marcomanni*, a German tribe.
- Mārcus**, ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman praetorian.
- mare, maris**, n., *sea*.
- maritimus**, a, um, *on or of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval*.
- Marius**, ī, m., *Caius Marius*, a famous Roman general and popular leader, who lived from B.C. 157 to 83.
- Mars, Martis**, m., *Mars*, the god of war.
- mās, maris**, m., *male*.
- matara**, ae, f., (*Celtic*) *javelin, pike*.
- māter, -tris**, f., *mother; mater familiae, matron*.
- māteria**, ae, f., *timber, wood, material*.
- māteriēs, ēī**, f., *timber, wood, material*.
- māterior, āri, ātus sum**, *get timber, collect wood*.
- Matiscō, -ōnis**, f., a town of the Aedui.
- mātrimōnium**, ī, n., *marriage*.
- Mātrona**, ae, f., the river *Marne*, in northern Gaul.
- mātūrē**, adv. (*mātūrius, mātūrimē*), *early, soon*.
- mātūr-escō, ere, -nī**, *ripen*.
- mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *hasten, make haste*.
- mātūrus**, a, um, *early; ripe*.
- mājimē**, superlative adv. (see **māgnopere**), *very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially*.
- mājimus**, a, um, superlative of **māgnus**.
- Māximus**, ī, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121.
- medeor, ēri**, *remedy, relieve*.
- mediocris**, e, *moderate, ordinary, common*.
- mediocriter**, adv., *in a slight or small degree*.
- Mediomatrici, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Mediomatrici*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- mediterrāneus**, a, um, *inland, central, interior*.

- medius**, a, um, *middle, central; intermediate*; generally rendered by *middle* or *half-way*.
- Meldi**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Meldi*, a tribe in northern Gaul.
- melior**, comparative of **bonus**.
- Melodūnum**, ī, n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.
- membrum**, ī, n., *limb*.
- memini**, *isse*, in perf. tenses only, *remember, recollect*.
- memoria**, ae, f., *memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition; time*.
- Menapii**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Menapii*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.
- mendacium**, ī, n., *lie, falsehood, false statement*.
- mēns**, mentis, f., *mind, intellect*.
- mēnsis**, is, m., *month*.
- mēnsūra**, ae, f., *measure*.
- mentio**, -ōnis, f., *mention*.
- mercātor**, -tōris, m., *trader, merchant*.
- mercatūra**, ae, f., *trading, traffic, commerce*.
- mer-cēs**, -cēdis, f., *pay, hire*.
- Mercurius**, ī, m., *Mercury*, one of the Roman gods.
- mereō**, ēre, nī, itum, and **mereor**, ēri, itus sum, *deserve, win, earn; serve*.
- meridiānus**, a, um, *of midday, of noon*.
- meridiēs**, ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south*.
- meritum**, ī, n., *service, merit, desert; fault*.
- Messāla**, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul B.C. 61.
- mētor**, īri, mēnsus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute*.
- Metiosedum**, ī, n., a town in northern Gaul.
- Mētius**, ī, m., an envoy of Caesar's.
- metō**, ere, messuī, messum, *reap, cut grain*.
- metus**, ūs, m., *fear*.
- meus**, a, um, *my, mine*.
- mil-es**, -itis, m., *soldier, man*; as collective, *the soldiers, soldiery*.
- militāris**, e, *military, of war*.
- militia**, ae, f., (*military*) *service*.
- mille**, indeclinable adj.; in plur., *millia*, imm, n.; *thousand*.
- Minerva**, ae, f., *Minerva*, a Roman goddess.
- minimē**, adv., superlative of **parum**, *by no means, very little, least*.
- minimus**, superlative of **parvus**.
- minor**, comparative of **parvus**.
- Minucius**, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.
- min-uō**, ere, -ui, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish, decrease; settle; ebb*.
- minus**, adv., comparative of **parum**, *less; not; not very, not so well*.
- miror**, āri, ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder*.
- mirus**, a, um, *wonderful, strange, surprising*.
- miser**, era, erum, *wretched, poor, miserable*.
- miseriordia**, ae, f., *pity, mercy, clemency*.
- miseror**, āri, ātus sum, *bewail, deplore, lament*.
- missus**, ūs, m., *sending, despatch*.
- mītis**, e, *gentle*; superl. adv., **mī-tissimē**, *gently, mildly*.
- mittō**, ere, mīsi, missum, *send, despatch; hurl, throw*.
- mōbilis**, e, *fickle, changeable*.
- mōbilitās**, -tātis, f., *fickleness; quickness, activity*.
- mōbiliter**, adv., *easily*.
- moderor**, āri, ātus sum, *manage, check, control, restrain*.
- modestia**, ae, f., *self-control, moderation*.
- modo**, adv., *only, but, merely; just, but now, but recently*.
- modus**, ī, m., *measure, amount; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort*.

moenia, ium, n. plur., walls, fortifications.

mōlēs, is, f., mass; dyke, dam.

molestē, adv., grievously; **molestē ferre,** to be annoyed, be vexed.

mōlimentum, ī, n., trouble, difficulty.

molitus, a, um, from **molo.**

molliō, īre, īvī, itum, soften, lessen; make easy.

mollis, e, weak, yielding, changeable, not firm; smooth, level.

mollitia, ae, f., weakness, feebleness.

mollitiēs, ēī, f., weakness, lack of endurance.

mol-ō, ere, -uī, -itum, grind.

mōmentum, ī, n., weight, influence, importance.

Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, warn, advise, remind, urge.

mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morbus, ī, m., disease, sickness.

Morini, ōrum, m. plur., the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, die.

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mortuus, a, um, from **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, way; in plur., habits, character.

Mosa, ae, m., the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

mōtus, ūs, m., movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; influence.

mulier, -eris, f., woman.

mūliō, -ōnis, m., muleteer, mule-driver.

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., large number, great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.

multō, āre, āvī, ātum, fine; deprive.

multum, adv. (plūs, plūrimum), much, often, very.

multus, a, um (plūs, plūrimus), much; in plur., many; w. **dies** or **nox,** far advanced; **multo** as adv., much, far.

mūlus, ī, m., mule.

Munātius, ī, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mundus, ī, m., world, universe.

mūnimentum, ī, n., fortification, defence.

mūniō, īre, īvī, itum, fortify, protect, defend, secure; w. **iter,** build, make.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., fortification, construction; fortified works, defences.

mūn-us, -eris, n., duty, task, service; gift, present.

mūrālis, e, of a wall, used for or from walls, mural.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

mūsenlus, ī, m., shed, penthouse, covered hut.

mutilus, a, um, maimed, broken.

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, change.

N.

naetus, a, um, from **nanciscor.**

nam, conj., for, now.

Nannicius, ī, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

Nannētes, um, m. plur., the Nannētes, a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

namque, conj., for.

nanciscor, ī, naetus or **nactus sum,** find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.

- Nantuâtes**, um, m. plur., *the Nantuates*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.
- Narbô**, ônis, f., a town in the southern part of the province.
- nâscor**, I, natus sum, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred*; of metals, *be found*.
- Nasua**, ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.
- nâtâlis**, e, *of birth*; **dies natalis**, *birthday*.
- nâtiô**, -ônis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation*.
- nâtivus**, a, um, *natural*.
- nâtûra**, ae, f., *nature, character*.
- nâtus**, a, um, *from nascor*.
- nâtus**, ūs, m., *birth*.
- nauta**, ae, m., *sailor*.
- nantiens**, a, um, *naval, nautical*.
- nâvâlis**, e, *naval, of ships*.
- nâvicula**, ae, f., *small boat, skiff*.
- nâvigatiô**, -ônis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage*.
- nâvigium**, I, n., *ship, vessel*.
- nâvigô**, âre, âvī, âtum, *sail*.
- nâvis**, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel*; **navis longa**, *warship*; **navis oneraria**, *transport*.
- nâvô**, âre, âvī, âtum, *do energetically*; **operam navare**, *do one's best or utmost*.
- nē**, conj., *that not, lest*; w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., *not to*; w. verbs of hindering, *from*; w. verbs of fearing, *that, lest*; w. subj. standing for imperative, *not*.
- nē**, adv., *not*; **ne...quidem**, *not even*.
- ne**, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, *whether*; **neene**, *or not*.
- nec**, see **neque**.
- necessarius**, a, um, *necessary, urgent, pressing*; *critical*; m. as subst., *connection, intimate friend, relative*; **necessariô**, abl. as adv., *of necessity, unavoidably*.
- necesse**, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable*; **necesse est**, *often to be rendered by must, can but*.
- necessitâs**, -tâtis, f., *necessity, need*; *urgency, exigency*; *interest*.
- necessitû-dô**, -dinis, f., *intimacy, close friendship*.
- neene**, conj., *or not*.
- necô**, âre, âvī, âtum, *kill, put to death*.
- neenbi**, conj., *that nowhere*.
- nefarius**, a, um, *wicked, atrocious, infamous*.
- nefâs**, n. indecl., *wrong, crime*.
- neg-legô**, ere, -lêxi, -lectum, *neglect, slight, disregard*; *overlook, be indifferent to*.
- negô**, âre, âvī, âtum, *deny, say not*; *refuse*.
- negôtiôr**, âri, âtus sum, *do business, carry on business*.
- negôtiûm**, I, n., *business, enterprise*; *task, trouble, difficulty*; **dare negotium**, *instruct*.
- Nemetes**, um, m. plur., *the Nemetes*, a German tribe on the Rhine.
- nēmô** (**nēminis**, m., gen. and abl. not in use, *no one, nobody*).
- nēquâquam**, adv., *by no means*.
- neque**, or sometimes **nec** before consonants, adv. and conj., *and not, nor*; when repeated, *neither...nor*.
- nēquiquam** or **nēquidquam**, adv., *in vain, to no purpose*.
- Nervius**, a, um, *of or with the Nervii*.
- Nervius**, a, um, *Nervian, of the Nervii*.
- Nervii**, ôrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- nervus**, I, m., *sinew*; *strength, vigor, power*.
- neu**, see **neve**.
- neuter**, tra, trum, *neither*; in plur., *neither side*.
- nëve** or **neu**, *or not, and that not, and not to, nor*.
- nex**, necis, f., *death*.

- nihil**, n. indecl. *nothing*; acc. as adv., *not at all*.
- nihilum**, **ī**, n., *nothing*; **nihilō**, abl. as adv., *none, no, w. comparatives*.
- nimis**, adv., *too*.
- nimius**, a, um, *excessive, too great*.
- nisi**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
- Nitiobroges**, um, m. plur., *the Nitiobroges, a tribe on the Garonne*.
- nitor**, **ī**, **nīsus** and **nīxus** sum, *rely on, w. abl.; strive, endeavor*.
- nix**, **nivis**, f., *snow*.
- nōbilis**, e, *noble, of high birth; well-known*; m. as subst., *a noble*.
- nōbilitās**, -**tātis**, f., *high birth; the nobility, the nobles*.
- noceō**, ēre, uī, **itum**, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest, w. dat.; part. nocēns, -entis, guilty*.
- noctū**, abl. as adv., *by night*.
- nocturnus**, a, um, *by night, in the night, nightly*.
- nōdus**, **ī**, m., *joint*.
- nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, *be unwilling, not wish*; in imperative, *do not*.
- nōmen**, -**minis**, n., *name; reputation, prestige*; in abl., *under the name or pretence of, as, on account*.
- nōminātim**, adv., *by name*.
- nōminō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *name, call, mention*.
- nōn**, adv., *not, no*.
- nōnāgintā**, *ninety*.
- nōndum**, adv., *not yet*.
- nōnnullū**, adv., *somewhat*.
- nōnnullus**, a, um, *some*.
- nōnunquam**, adv., *sometimes*.
- nōnus**, a, um, *ninth*.
- Nōrēia**, ae, f., *chief town of the Norici*.
- Nōriens**, a, um, *Norican, of the Norici, a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic*.
- nōs**, plur. of **ego**.
- nōscō**, ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn, become acquainted with*; in perf., *know*; part. nōtus, a, um, *known, well-known, familiar*.
- noster**, tra, trum, *our*; m. plur. as subst., *our men, troops or forces*.
- nōtitia**, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with*.
- novem**, *nine*.
- Noviodūnum**, **ī**, n., (1) *a town of the Suessiones*; (2) *a town of the Aedui*; (3) *a town of the Bituriges*.
- novitās**, -**tātis**, f., *novelty, strangeness*.
- novus**, a, um, *new, fresh*; in superlative, *latest, last, rear*;
- novae res**, *political change, change of government, revolution*.
- nox**, **noctis**, f., *night*.
- noxa**, ae, f., *crime, offense*.
- nūbō**, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry*.
- nūdō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *bare, expose; strip, clear*.
- nūdus**, a, um, *uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare*.
- nullus**, a, um, *no, none*; in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemo**, *no one*.
- num**, interrogative particle expecting negative answer, *not translated*.
- nūmen**, -**minis**, n., *divinity, divine power*.
- numerus**, **ī**, m., *number; amount; account*; in **numero**, *in the light, as*.
- Numida**, ae, m., *Numidian, from the north coast of Africa*.
- nummus**, **ī**, m., *coin, money*.
- numquam**, adv., *never*.
- nunc**, adv., *now*.
- nunquam**, adv., *never*.
- nūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, report, bring word, tell*.
- nūntius**, **ī**, m., *messenger; news, report, message, tidings*.
- nūper**, adv., *lately, recently*.
- nusquam**, adv., *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, beck; gestures, signs.*

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of, for; quam ob rem, why.*

obacratūs, a, um, *indebted; m. as subst., debtor.*

obducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *throw out, carry.*

ob-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum, *attend to.*

oblītus, ūs, m., *destruction.*

objiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose; pass., lie opposite, be in the way.*

oblātus, a, um, *from offero.*

obliquē, adv., *obliquely.*

obliquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

obliviscor, ī, -lītus sum, *forget, w. gen.*

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *entreat, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f., *compliance, regard.*

observo, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.*

ob-ses, -sīdis, m., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade.*

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade; pressure.*

obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seal.*

ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand, w. dat.*

obstinātē, adv., *steadily, firmly, persistently.*

ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *bind, put under obligation.*

ob-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *barricade, close.*

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *submit to, obey, w. dat.*

obtestor, āri, ātus sum, *implore, call upon,*

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*

obtuli, *from offero.*

ob-venio, īre, -vēni, -ventum, *fall to, be assigned to; encounter.*

obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet, w. dat.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, time; surprise.*

occasus, ūs, m., *setting; solis occasus, sunset, the west.*

oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *set; fall, be slain.*

oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *concealed, hidden, secret; in or ex occulto, in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.*

oc-curro, ere, -curri, -cucurri, -cursum, *fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.*

occursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush upon, charge.*

Oceanus, ī, m., *(often with mare), the Ocean.*

Oecum, ī, n., *a town on the eastern side of the Alps.*

ōcius, adv., *quickly, swiftly.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octingenti, ae, a, *eight hundred.*

octo, *eight.*

octodecim, *eighteen.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., *a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.*

octōgintā, *eighty.*

octōni, ae, a, *eight at a time, eight each, eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, isse, perf. w. pres. meaning,
hate.

odium, ī, n., *hatred.*

of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum,
hurt, wound; cause harm or mis-
hap.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *wounding, hurt-*
ing.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum,
present, offer, hold out, give, afford,
render; put in one's way or power.

officium, ī, n., *service, duty, alle-*
giance.

Olovicō, -ōnis, m., *a king of the*
Nitiobroges.

o-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,
neglect, give up, leave; throw
away.

omniū, adv., *altogether, in all;*
w. negatives, at all; w. numerals,
only.

omnis, e, all, every, whole.

onerārius, a, um, for burdens;
navis oneraria, a transport.

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, load.

on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight,*
bulk; cargo, freight.

opera, ae, f., *work, exertion; pains,*
attention; services, aid, agency;
operam dare, take pains, see to
it.

opīnō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, impres-*
sion, idea; expectation, anticipa-
tion; reputation.

oportet, ēre, oportuit, imper-
sonal verb, it behoves, it is neces-
sary; render freely by ought.

oppidānus, a, um, of a town; m.
plur. as subst., townspeople.

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,
oppose; pass., lie in the way.

opportūnē, opportunity, con-
veniently.

opportūnitās, -tātis, f., *fitness;*
convenience, suitable or favorable
nature, convenient opportunity,
advantage.

opportūnus, a, um, opportune,
convenient, advantageous.

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, overwhelm, crush, surprise;
burden, weigh down.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault,*
attack; mode of attack.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, at-
tack, assault, storm.

(ops), opis, f., *help, aid; in plur.,*
resources, power, strength.

optimē, adv., *superlative of bene,*
well, excellently.

optimus, a, um, superlative of
bonus, best, very good, most ex-
cellent.

optō, āre, āvī, ātum, desire;
perf. part. as adj., optātus, a,
um, desirable, acceptable.

op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortifica-*
tion, fortifying, structure; trade,
handicraft; opere w. munitus,
by art; quanto opere, how
much, how greatly, as much as;
tanto opere, so much, so earn-
estly, so vigorously; magno
opere, see magnopere.

opus, n. indecl., *need, necessity;*
opus est, it is necessary, there is
need.

ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, address,*
words, statement, appeal.

ōrātor, -tōris, m., *ambassador.*

orbis, is, f., *circle; orbis terra-*
rum, the whole world.

Orcynia, ae, f., *a name given by*
Greek writers to the Hercynian
forest.

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank, row,*
course, tier; grade, class; ar-
rangement, order.

Orgetor-ix, -igis, m., *a leading*
man of the Helvetii.

orior, irī, ortus sum, rise, arise,
spring, be born; spring up, begin,
start; part. oriens, -entis, as
adj., rising; oriens sol, sunrise,
the east.

ornāmentum, ī, n., *ornament,*
honor.

ornō, āre, āvī, ātum, adorn, dis-
tinguish; supply, equip, furnish.

orō, āre, āvī, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

ortus, a, um, from orior.

ortus, ūs, m., rising.

ōs, ōris, n., face, month.

Osismī, ōrum, m. plur., the Osismī, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.

ostentō, āre, āvī, ātum, show, display, exhibit, parade.

ōtium, ī, n., rest, leisure, quiet.

ōvum, ī, n., egg.

P.

P., an abbreviation for **Publius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.

pābulātor, -tōris, m., forager.

pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, forage.

pābulum, ī, n., fodder, forage.

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, subdue, reduce; part. pācātus, a, um, as adj., peaceful, quiet.

pactum, ī, n., manner, way; quo pacto, how.

Padus, ī, m., the Po, a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

Paemānī, ōrum, m. plur., the Paemānī, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

paene, adv., almost.

paenit-et, ēre, -uit, impersonal, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by be sorry, regret.

pāgus, ī, m., district, canton.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palma, ae, f., palm, hand.

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, swamp, fen.

palūster, tris, tre, marshy.

pandō, ere, pandī, passum, spread out, outstretch; in pass. w. capillus, be dishevelled.

pār, parīs, equal, like, the same; a match.

parcē, adv., sparingly.

parcō, ere, peperci, parsum or parcitum, spare, w. dat.; be economical.

parēns, -entis, m. and f., parent.

parentō, āre, āvī, ātum, avenge, w. dat.

parcō, ēre, nī, itum, obey, submit, w. dat.

pariō, ere, peperī, partum, get, acquire, secure, win.

Parisī, ōrum, m. plur., the Parisī, a tribe in northern Gaul on the Seine.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire; part. parātus, a, um, as adj., ready, prepared.

pars, partis, f., part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.

partim, adv., partly; when repeated, often rendered by some... others.

partior, irī, itus sum, divide.

partus, a, um, from pario.

parum, adv., (minus, mininē), little, too little, not much.

parvulus, a, um, very small, slight, trifling, insignificant; ab parvulis, from early childhood.

parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus), small, trifling.

passim, adv., in all directions.

passus, a, um, from pando or from patior.

passus, ūs, m., pace (five feet); one thousand paces make one mile.

pate-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, open, throw open.

pate-fiō, -fieri, -factus sum, pass. of patefaciō.

pateō, ēre, uī, extend, spread out; be open, stand open; part. patēns, -entis, as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, m., father; in plur., forefathers, ancestors.

patienter, adv., patiently.

- patientia**, *ae. f.*, endurance, patience, forbearance.
- pator**, *i.*, **passus sum**, suffer, allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.
- patrius**, *a, um*, of one's fathers, ancestral.
- patrōnus**, *i. m.*, patron, lord.
- patruus**, *i. m.*, uncle (on father's side).
- pauēi**, *ae. a* (sing. not in Caesar), few, but few.
- paucitās**, *-tātis, f.*, small number.
- paulātim**, *adv.*, gradually, by degrees; gently.
- paulisper**, *adv.*, for a short time.
- paulō**, *adv.*, a little, slightly, somewhat.
- paululum**, *adv.*, very slightly, a very little.
- paulum**, *adv.*, a little.
- pāx**, *pācis, f.*, peace.
- peccō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, do wrong, commit a wrong.
- pect-us**, *-oris, n.*, breast.
- pecūnia**, *ae. f.*, money.
- pee-us**, *-oris, n.*, cattle; flesh, meat.
- pedālis**, *e.*, measuring a foot, a foot thick.
- ped-es**, *-itis, m.*, foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.
- pedester**, *tris, tre*, on foot, on or by land; of infantry.
- peditātus**, *ūs, m.*, infantry.
- Pedius**, *i. m.*, Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- pējor**, **pėjus**, (comparative of *malus*), worse.
- pellis**, *is, f.*, skin, hide; sub *pel-libus*, in tents.
- pellō**, *ere, pepulī, pulsum*, drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.
- pendō**, *ere, pependī, pēnsu*, weigh; pay.
- penes**, *prep. w. acc.*, in the power or hands of.
- penitus**, *adv.*, completely, utterly.
- per**, *prep. w. acc.*, through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of; **per se**, by or in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.
- per-agō**, *ere, -ēgī, -āctum*, finish, bring to an end.
- perangustus**, *a, um*, very narrow.
- per-cipiō**, *ere, -cēpī, -ceptum*, get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.
- percontātiō**, *-ōnis, f.*, inquiry.
- per-currō**, *ere, -eurri (-eucurri, -eursorum*, run along.
- per-cutiō**, *ere, -cussi, -cussu*, hit, strike down.
- per-discō**, *ere, -didici*, learn thoroughly, master.
- per-dō**, *ere, -didī, -ditum*, ruin; part. **perditus**, *a, um*, as adj., abandoned, desperate.
- per-dūcō**, *ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, carry or bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.
- perendinus**, *a, um*, after to-morrow.
- per-eō**, *-ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum*, perish, be killed.
- perequitō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, ride through, ride about.
- perexiguus**, *a, um*, very small.
- perfacilis**, *e.*, very easy.
- per-ferō**, *-ferre, -tulī, -lātum*, endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.
- per-ficiō**, *ere, -fēcī, -fectum*, carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.
- perfidia**, *ae. f.*, faithlessness, treachery.
- per-fringō**, *ere, -frēgī, -frāctum*, break through.
- perfuga**, *ae. m.*, deserter.
- per-fugiō**, *ere, -fugī, -flee*, escape; desert.
- per-fugium**, *i. n.*, refuge, place of refuge.
- per-gō**, *ere, -rēxī, -rēctum*, proceed, advance.

- periclitor**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *run risk, be exposed to danger; try, make a test.*
- periculōsus**, **a, um**, *dangerous.*
- periculum**, **ī**, **n.**, *danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.*
- peritus**, **a, um**, *skilled, experienced, familiar, w. gen.*
- perlātus**, **a, um**, *from perfero.*
- per-legō**, **ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum**, *read through.*
- per-luō**, **ere**, **-luī**, **-lūtum**, *rush; in pass., bathe.*
- permāgnus**, **a, um**, *very large.*
- per-maneō**, **ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsum**, *continue, remain, persist, abide.*
- per-misceō**, **ēre**, **-miscuī**, **-mixtum** (**-mistum**), *mix, mingle.*
- per-mittō**, **ere**, **-misi**, **-missum**, *give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.*
- per-moveō**, **ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, *move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.*
- per-mulceō**, **ēre**, **-mulsi**, **-mulsum**, *soothe, calm, quiet.*
- perniciēs**, **cī**, **f.**, *destruction.*
- perpaucī**, **ae, a**, *very few.*
- perpendiculum**, **ī**, **n.**, *plumb-line.*
- per-petior**, **ī**, **-pessus sum**, *endure, suffer.*
- perpetuus**, **a, um**, *continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant; in perpetuum, for ever; abl. as adv., perpetuō, for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.*
- per-quirō**, **ere**, **-quisivī**, **-quisitum**, *inquire into or about.*
- per-rumpō**, **ere**, **-rūpi**, **-rumpum**, *break through, break, force a way or passage or entrance.*
- per-scribō**, **ere**, **-scripsi**, **-scriptum**, *write out, report, describe fully.*
- per-sequor**, **ī**, **-seentus sum**, *pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.*
- per-severō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *persist.*
- per-solvō**, **ere**, **-solvī**, **-solutum**, *pay.*
- per-spiciō**, **ere**, **-spexī**, **-spec-tum**, *see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.*
- per-stō**, **āre**, **-stitī**, **-stātum**, *persist, abide, be firm.*
- per-suadeō**, **ēre**, **-suāsī**, **-suāsum**, *persuade, induce, prevail on, convince, w. dat.*
- per-terreō**, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *terrify, frighten, alarm; in pass., be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.*
- per-timēscō**, **ere**, **-timuī**, *fear greatly, be much afraid.*
- per-tinācia**, **ae, f.**, *obstinacy.*
- per-tineō**, **ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, *extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.*
- pertuli**, *from perfero.*
- perturbātiō**, **-ōnis**, **f.**, *alarm, confusion, panic.*
- perturbō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm; in pass., be at a loss.*
- pervagor**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *roam about.*
- per-veniō**, **īre**, **-vênī**, **-ventum**, *come, reach, arrive.*
- pēs**, **pedis**, **m.**, *foot; pedibus, on foot, by land; pedem referre, to fall back, retire, retreat.*
- pet-ō**, **ere**, **-ivī**, **-itum**, *ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.*
- Petrocorii**, **ōrum**, **m. plur.**, *the Petrocorii, a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.*
- Petrōnius**, **ī**, **m.**, *Marcus Petronius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*
- Petrosidius**, **ī**, **m.**, *Lucius Petrosidius, the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.*
- phal-anx**, **-angis**, **f.**, *phalanx, column, compact body.*
- Pictones**, **um**, **m. plur.**, *the Pictones, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.*

pietās, -tātis, f., *duty or devotion (to country), patriotism.*

pīlum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

pīlus, ī, m., a *maniple* or *division* of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first maniple was *chief centurion* of the legion.

pinna, ae, f., *parapet, battlement.*

Pirustae, ārum, m. plur., the *Pirustae*, a tribe in Illyricum.

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

Pisō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, a Roman *legatus*, slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. *Marrus Piso*, consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please, w. dat.; **placet**, impersonal, *it is decided, (one) resolves.*

placidē, adv., *calmly, quietly.*

placō, āre, āvī, ātum, appease.

Plancus, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

planē, adv., *clearly; quite, altogether.*

plāniciēs, ēī, f., *plain, level ground.*

plānus, a, um, level, flat.

plēbēs, or plēbs, plēbis, f., the *common people.*

plēnē, adv., *entirely, completely.*

plēnus, a, um, full, complete.

plērique, plēraque, plēraque, the most, the majority the greater number.

plērumque, adv., *generally, usually, in most cases.*

Plennoxii, ōrum, m. plur., the *Ptennoxii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

plumbum, ī, n., *lead*; **plumbum album, tin.**

plūrimum, adv., *most, very much.*

plūrimus, a, um, superlative of multus, most, very much, very many.

plūs, plūris, comparative of multus, more; in plur., several, many.

pluteus, ī, m., *screen, moveable breastwork, defence.*

pōculum, ī, n., *drinking-cup.*

poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment; satisfaction.*

poenitet, see paenitet.

poll-ex, -icis, m., *thumb.*

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise, make a promise.

pollicitatiō, -ōnis, f., *promise, offer.*

Pompēius, ī, m., *Pompey*, 1. *Cneius Pompeius*, consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54-50. 2. *Cneius Pompeius*, an interpreter with the Roman army.

pond-us, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, place, set, station; w. castra, pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down; in pass., be situated, be dependent.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

poposeī, from posco.

populatiō, -ōnis, f., *ravaging, raid.*

populor, ārī, ātus sum, ravage, lay waste, devastate.

populus, ī, m., *people, nation.*

por-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, stretch forward; part. porrēctus, a, um, as adj., extended.

porrō, adv., *further, moreover.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry, bring, convey.

portōrium, ī, n., *customs duty, toll, tax.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, ere, poposeī, ask for, demand.

positus, a, um, from pono.

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation; in plur. lands.*

pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, hold.

pos-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, seize, occupy.

possum, posse, potui, *be able, can, be possible; be powerful or strong, have weight or influence.*

post, 1. *adv., afterwards, after;* 2. *prep. w. acc., after, behind.*

postea, *adv., afterwards; hereafter.*

posteaquam, *conj., after, when.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following; m. plur. as subst., descendants, posterity.*

post-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, *postpone, set aside, disregard.*

postquam, *conj., after, when.*

postrēmō, *adv., finally, lastly, at last.*

postrīdiē, *adv., the next day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*

postulō, āre, āvi, ātum, *ask, ask for, demand, require.*

potēns, entis, *partic. of possum, powerful, influential.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *supremacy, chief power, leading position.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*

potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.*

potior, iri, itus sum, *get control or possession of, gain, obtain, w. abl. or gen.*

potius, *comparative adv., rather, sooner, more.*

potui, *from possum.*

prae, *prep. w. abl., in comparison with; on account of, for.*

praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, ēre, ūi, itum, *furnish, afford, give, cause.*

prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *take precautions, be on one's guard.*

prae-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, *headlong; abrupt, steep.*

praeceptum, ī, n., *order, instructions, injunction.*

prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.*

praecepitō, āre, āvi, ātum, *fling, hurl.*

praecepitūe, *adv., especially.*

praeceptus, a, um, *special, particular.*

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *close, barricade.*

prae-cō, -cōnis, m., *herald.*

Præcōninus, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

prae-currō, ere, -curri (-e-curri, -cursum), *hasten on before; anticipate.*

praeda, ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvi, ātum, *announce, declare, assert, boast.*

praedor, āri, ātus sum, *plunder, get plunder, pillage.*

prae-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *construct in front, carry out.*

praefectus, a, um, *from prae-ficio.*

praefectus, ī, m., *officer, commander (especially of cavalry), prefect.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *place before, prefer, esteem more highly; se praeferre, to surpass, outdo.*

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put or set over, place in command of, give charge of, w. acc. and dat.*

prae-fixō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fix before, place at the edge.*

praemet-uō, ere, -nūi, *be anxious, fear.*

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance, send on before, send forward.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward, prize.*

praeoccupō, āre, āvi, ātum, *seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.*

praeoptō, āre, āvi, ātum, *prefer.*

prae-parō, āre, āvi, ātum, *prepare or get ready beforehand.*

- prae-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,** *place or set over, put in command of, w. acc. and dat.*
- prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** *break off, snap; part. prae-ruptus, a, um, as adj., abrupt, precipitous.*
- prae-saepiō, īre, -saepsi, -saep-tum,** *block up, barricade.*
- prae-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum,** *prescribe, direct, dictate.*
- praescriptum, ī, n.,** *bidding, dictation.*
- praesēns, -entis,** *partic. of praesum, present, instant, in person.*
- praesentia, ae, f.,** *the present; presence; in praesentia, for the moment, at the time.*
- prae-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum,** *learn of or find out beforehand, have foresight.*
- praesertim, adv.,** *especially, particularly.*
- praesidium, ī, n.,** *guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.*
- praestō, adv., at hand; praesto esse, to meet.**
- prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum or -statum,** *exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior, w. dat.; praestat, impersonal, it is better.*
- prae-sum, esse, -fuī, be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold; w. dat.**
- praeter, prep. w. acc., beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.**
- praetereā, adv., besides, moreover.**
- praeter-eo, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum,** *pass over, pass by; part. as adj., praeteritus, a, um, past; n. plur. as subst., the past.*
- praeter-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-sum,** *let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.*
- praeterquam, adv., except.**
- praetor, -tōris, m.,** *commander; praetor, a Roman magistrate.*
- praetōrius, a, um,** *of a commander or praetor; praetoria cohorts, body-guard.*
- prae-ūrō, ere, -ūssi, -ūstum,** *burn at the end or point.*
- prae-vertō, ere, -vertī, -ver-sum,** *anticipate, prevent, w. dat.*
- prāvus, a, um,** *poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.*
- precēs, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar),** *prayers, entreaties.*
- primō, ere, pressi, pressum,** *press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.*
- prendō, ere, prendī, prēnsum,** *seize, grasp.*
- pretium, ī, n.,** *price.*
- prex, precis, f.,** *see preces.*
- prīdiē, adv.,** *the day before, on the previous day.*
- primipilus, ī, m.,** *chief centurion; see pilus.*
- primō, adv.,** *at first.*
- primum, adv.,** *first, in the first place; cum or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.*
- primus, a, um,** *superlative of prior, first, foremost, in the van; in primis, especially.*
- prin-ceps, -eipis,** *first, chief, leading; m. as subst., leading man, leader, chief.*
- principātus, ūs, m.,** *leadership, chief position, first place, lead.*
- prior, ius,** *comparative, former, earlier; in front; first (of two).*
- prīstinus, a, um,** *former, previous; of former days, old-time.*
- prius, comparative adv.,** *earlier, sooner; prius...quam, before, w. negatives until.*
- priusquam, conj.,** *before.*
- privātum, adv.,** *privately, as individuals, as private persons.*
- privātus, a, um,** *private, individual, personal; m. as subst., a private person, individual.*

- prō**, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.*
- probō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *prove; test, put to the test; approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.*
- prō-eēdō**, ere, -eēssī, -eēssum, *go forward, advance.*
- Procellus**, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Procellus, a Romanized Gaul of rank.*
- prōclīnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *bend forward; res proclinata, a falling cause.*
- prōcōn-sul**, -sulis, m., *proconsul, an ex-consul in charge of a province.*
- procul**, adv., *at a distance.*
- prō-cumbō**, ere, -cumbi, *bend or slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.*
- prōcūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, have charge of.*
- prō-currō**, ere, -eucurri, -curri, -cursum, *run or rush forward, rush out, charge.*
- prōd-eō**, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *go forth, come out, advance.*
- prōdesse**, from **prosum**.
- prōditiō**, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*
- prōditor**, -tōris, m., *traitor.*
- prō-dō**, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.*
- prō-ducō**, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth or out, bring out; prolong, protract.*
- proclior**, āri, ātus sum, *fight.*
- proclium**, ī, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *departure.*
- profectus**, a, um, from **proficiscor**.
- profectus**, a, um, from **proficio**.
- prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring forth, bring out.*
- prō-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.*
- prō-ficiscor**, ī, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*
- prō-fiteor**, ēri, -fessus sum, *declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.*
- prōfligō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *roul, put to flight.*
- prō-fluō**, ere, -flūxī, *flow forth, rise.*
- prō-fugiō**, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *flee, escape.*
- prōgnātus**, a, um, *sprung, descended; m. as subst., descendant.*
- prō-gredior**, ī, -gressus sum, *go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.*
- prohibeō**, ēre, nī, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.*
- proinde**, adv., *therefore.*
- prō-jiciō**, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down or away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*
- prōlātus**, a, um, from **profero**.
- prōmineō**, ere, nī, *lean forward.*
- prōmisenē**, adv., *promiscuously, indiscriminately.*
- prō-mittō**, ere, -misi, -missum, *let grow; part. promissus, a, um, as adj., long, flowering.*
- prōmontōrium**, ī, n., *headland, promontory.*
- prō-moveō**, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*
- prōmptus**, a, um, *ready, alert.*
- prōnē**, adv., *bending forward.*
- prōnūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *state publicly, declare, tell, announce; give notice, give orders, make proclamation.*
- prope**, adv. (**propius**, **proximē**, *near; nearly, almost*; also as prep. w. acc., *near*).
- prō-pellō**, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off, repel, distodge, defeat.*
- properō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

propinquitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, a, um, near, close; related; m. as subst., relative, kinsman.

propior, ius, comparative, nearer; see proximus.

propius, adv., see prope.

prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, place or set before; display; set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.

proprius, a, um, one's own, private, particular; belonging to, peculiar to; n. as subst., a mark, a sign.

propter, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of.

propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason; propterea quod, because.

prōpugnātor, -tōris, m., defender.

prōpugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, defend, rush out to fight.

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, drive off, repel.

prōra, ae, f., prow, bow.

prō-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, pull down, demolish.

prō-sequor, ī, -secutus sum, pursue, follow; accompany, escort; dismiss, address.

prōspectus, ūs, m., view, outlook, sight.

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spec-tum, provide for, take precautions, take care.

prō-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, cast down, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prove an advantage, be of service.

prō-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, cover, protect.

prōterreō, ēre, uī, itum, frighten away, drive off.

prōtinus, adv., at once, immediately.

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, drive off (in confusion), dislodge.

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; in pass., be carried, be driven, sail.

prō-veniō, ire, -vênī, -ventum, grow up, come up, yield.

prōventus, ūs, m., outcome, issue, result.

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.

prōvincia, ae, f., province; especially 'the province' of Gallia Transalpinia.

prōvinciālis, e, of the province.

prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush forth, rush out.

proximē, adv., superlative of prope, last, most recently, very lately.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next; last, recent; see propior.

prudentia, ae, f., foresight, prudence, discretion.

Ptianiī, ōrum, m. plur., the Ptianiī, a tribe of Aquitania.

pūb-ēs, -eris, adult, full-grown; m. as subst., adult, full-grown man.

pūblicē, adv., publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a state.

pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātum, confiscate.

pūblicus, a, um, public, official, of the state or people; in publicum or in publico, in public; res publica, see respublica.

Pūblius, ī, m., Publius, a Roman praenomen.

pudet, ēre, puduit, it shames, w. acc. of person; render freely, (one) is ashamed.

pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of shame.

puer, erī, m., boy, child; a pueris, from childhood.

puerilis, e, of a child, of boyhood.

pugna, ae, f., fight, fighting, battle.

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight; in pass., pugnātur, impersonally, the battle goes on, freely (they) fight.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful,
fine.

Pulio, -onis, m., Titus Pulio, a
centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, a, um, from pello.

pulsus, ūs, m., stroke, propulsion.

puly-is, -eris, m., dust, cloud of
dust.

puppis, is, f., stern.

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, excuse,
clear, free from blame.

putō, āre, āvi, ātum, think, be-
lieve, hold, consider, suppose.

Pyrenaeus, a, um, w. montes,
the Pyrenæes, between Gaul and
Spain.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus.**

quā, adv., where, at which point, by
which road.

quadrāgēni, ae, a, forty each,
forty.

quadrāgintā, forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hun-
dred.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaes-
itum, ask, enquire, make enquiry ;
seek, look for.

quaestio, -onis, f., investigation,
enquiry, examination.

quaestor, -tōris, m., quaestor, the
officer in charge of the finances of
a province or army.

quaestus, ūs, m., gain, gaining,
acquisition.

quālis, e, of what sort, what.

quam, adv., how ; w. comparatives,
than ; w. superlatives, as...as
possible.

quāndiū, adv., as long as.

quamobrem, adv., why, wherefore.

quānvīs, adv., however.

quandō, adv., at any time, at times,
ever.

quantus, a, um, how great, how
much ; as great as, as much as,
as ; quanto...tanto, by how
much...by so much, the...the.

quan-tusvīs, -tavis, -tumvīs,
however great, no matter how
great.

quārē, adv., wherefore, why, for
which, on account of which.

quartus, a, um, fourth

quasī, conj., as if.

quattuor or quatuor, four.

quattuordecim, fourteen.

-que, enclitic conjunction, and.

quemadmodum, adv., how, as.

queror, I, questus sum, com-
plain, complain of ; lament, be-
wail.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who,
which, what, that ; he who ; as co-
ordinating relative, this, he ; after
idem, as.

quī, quae, quod, interrogative
adj., what, which.

quī, qua, quod, indefinite adj. or
rarely pron., some, any ; anyone.

quicquam, from quisquam.

quicūque, quaecūque,
quodcūque, whoever, what-
ever, whichever.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or
quoddam, a certain one, a cer-
tain, one, a sort of.

quidem, adv., certainly, at least ;
ne...quidem, not even.

qui-ēs, -ētis, f., rest.

quiētus, a, um, quiet, at rest,
settled, peaceable.

quīn, conj., but that, that, so that
not, as not ; often best rendered
by from, w. verbal in -ing.

quīn, adv., nay, in fact.

quīnam, quacnam, quodnam,
who, which, what.

quīne-unx, -uncis, f., quīnquē ;
in quīneuncem, in the form of
a quīnquē.

quīndecim, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnī, ae, a, five each, five at a
time, five.

quīnquāgintā, fifty.

quīnque, five.

quīntus, a, um, fifth.

Quīntus, ī, m., Quintus, a Roman praenomen.

quīs, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who, what; n. quid as adv., why.

quīs, qua, quid, indefinite pron., any one, anything; n. quid as adv., in any respect, at all.

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, any one, any.

quisquam, quidquam or quicquam, any one, anything, any.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, each, each one; w. superlatives freely rendered by all.

quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or quicquid, whoever, whatever.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, any one, any, any whatever.

quō, abl. of qui, as conj., that, in order that; because.

quō, abl. of qui, as adv., by how much, w. comparatives the; for quo minus see quominus.

quō, adv., 1. interrog., whither, where. 2. relative, whither, where, to, at or into which. 3. indefinite, somewhere, anywhere.

quoad, conj., until, as long as.

quod, conj., because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that; quod si, but if, if therefore.

quōminus or quō minus, conj., so that not; freely rendered by from; w. recuso, to.

quoniam, conj., since, as, whereas.

quoque, conj., also, too, as well.

**quōqueversus (um), or quō-
quoversus (um), adv., in every
direction.**

quot, indeclin., how many.

quotannis, adv., yearly, every year.

**quotidiānus, a, um, see coti-
dianus.**

quotidiē, see cotidie.

**quotiēs, adv., how often; as often
as.**

quum, conj., see cum.

R.

**rād-ix, -leis, m., root (of tree);
spur, base, foot (of mountain).**

rā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, shave.

rāmus, ī, m., branch, bough.

rapiditās, -tātis, f., swiftness.

rapīna, ae, f., plundering.

**rārus, a, um, scattered, few, in
detached groups, in small bodies.**

rāsus, a, um, from rado.

**ratio, -ōnis, f., calculation, ac-
count, list; method, system, plan,
way; theory, science; regard, con-
sideration, thought; reason.**

ratis, is, f., raft.

**Raurici, ōrum, m. plur., the
Raurici, a tribe on the Rhine near
Switzerland.**

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., renewal of war.

**Rebīlus, ī, m., Caius Caninius
Rebīlus, one of Caesar's lieuten-
ants.**

**re-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,
withdraw, retire.**

**recēns, -entis, new, recent, late;
fresh.**

**re-cēnsēō, ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēn-
sum, muster, review.**

**receptāculum, ī, n., refuge, re-
treat.**

receptus, ūs, m., retreat.

**recēssus, ūs, m., retreat, oppor-
tunity to retreat.**

**re-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, fall
back, recoil, befall.**

**reciperō, āre, āvī, ātum, re-
cover, regain.**

**re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
regain, get back; receive, admit;
se recipere, (1) recover one's self,
recover, (2) retreat, fall back,
betake one's self, return.**

recitō, āre, āvī, ātum, read out.

**reclinō, āre, āvī, ātum, make to
lean; se reclinare, to lean;
pass. part., reclinatus, leaning.**

rectē, adv., properly, rightly.

rēctus, a, um, *straight*.

recuperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recover*.

recusō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate*.

rēda, ae, f., *wagon*.

redāctus, a, um, from *redigo*.

red-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay*.

redemptus, a, um, from *redimo*.

red-cō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *go back, come back, return; decline; be reduced; depend on, be referred to*.

red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce, render, make, bring*.

red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy, purchase, obtain; lease, farm*.

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, restore, revive*.

reditiō, -ōnis, f., *return, returning*.

reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning*.

Redones, um, m. plur., *the Redones, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul*.

re-ducō, ere, -dūxī, -duetum, *lead back, bring back, move back*.

referō, *referre*, rettuli (or retuli), relatum, *bring back, carry back, bring; report, announce, tell; refer; pedem referre, retreat, fall back; gratiam referre, show gratitude, make return*.

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair; refresh, recruit*.

re-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open, break*.

re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *retreat, flee back, escape*.

Rēginus, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country; direction, line*.

rēgins, a, um, *royal*.

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rule, reign*.

rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom*.

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule; direct, control, manage*.

re-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *retreat*.

re-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw or hurl back, drive back, throw aside; cast off, reject*.

re-linguēscō, ere, -langui, *become weak, lose energy*.

relātus, a, um, from *refero*.

relēgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, banish*.

relictus, a, um, from *relinquo*.

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious rite, observance or scruple; religion, religious matter; superstitious beliefs or fancies*.

re-linguō, ere, -liquī, -lictum, *leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; give; allow; in pass., remain*.

reliquus, a, um, *remaining, other, left, else, further, future; generally to be rendered by the rest of*.

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm, *remain, remain behind, stay*.

rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman*.

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul*.

rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *row*.

remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *move back, return*.

remīniscor, ī, *call to mind, remember*.

re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, hurl back, give back; relax, weaken, give up, lose; part. remissus, a, um, as adj., mild, not severe*.

remollēscō, ere, *become weak or enervated*.

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, send away; withdraw, draw away; part. as adj. remotus, a, um, distant, remote*.

remūneror, āri, ātus sum, *reward*.

Rēmūs, ī, m., *a Reman, one of the Remi*.

rēmus, ī, m., *oar*.

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew*.

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report, bring back word; declare elected*.

re-pellō, ere, repullī (or repulī), -pulsum, *drive back, defeat; ab spe repellī, to be disappointed in a hope*.

repente, adv., *suddenly*.

repentinus, a, um, *sudden, hasty; abl. repentino as adv., suddenly*.

re-periō, ere, repperī, -pertum, *find, find out, discover; originate*.

re-petō, ere, -petvī, -petitum, *demand, demand back*.

repl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *amplify supply*.

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry back*.

reposeō, ere, *demand, require*.

repraesentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do at once*.

repre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *blame, censure, find fault with*.

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check, stop*.

repudiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reject*.

repugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *resist, defend one's self; be an obstacle*.

repulsus, a, um, *from repello*.

re-quirō, ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *require, demand; miss*.

rēs, rei, f., *thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, object, interest, situation; the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering*.

resar-ciō, īre, -tum, *repair, make good*.

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *break down, tear down, destroy*.

re-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, *learn, find out*.

re-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *transfer, promote, enroll*.

reservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep back, reserve, keep*.

re-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, *remain*.

re-sidō, ere, -sēdī, *settle down, become calm*.

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand, hold one's ground, make resistance, w. dat.; part. resistēns, -entis, as adj., firm, steadfast*.

re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look back or behind; consider, have regard to*.

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -sponsum, *answer, make answer, reply*.

respōsum, ī, n., *answer, reply*.

rēspūblica, reipūblicae, f., *state, public affairs or interests; often written as two words*.

re-spuō, ere, -spuī, *reject, spurn*.

re-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *extinguish*.

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore, replace, rebuild, re-establish, renew*.

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hold, restrain; keep, maintain, preserve; keep back*.

re-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *bring back (by force)*.

re-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum, *tear or wrest away, pull up*.

rever-tō, ere, -ti, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), *return, come back; turn back*.

rever-tor, ī, -sus sum (chiefly in pres. tenses), *return, come back*.

re-vinciō, īre, -vinxi, -vincitum, *bind fast, fasten, make fast, brace*.

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recall, call back; call away, entice*.

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.

rhēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer*.

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone*.

ripa, ae, f., *bank*.

rivus, ī, m., *brook, stream*.

rōb-ur, -oris, n., *oak*.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, request; w. sacramento, enlist*.

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.

Romanus, a, um, *Roman*; m. as subst., *a Roman*.

Roscius, i, m., *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rostrum, i, n., *beak*.

rota, ae, f., *wheel*.

rubus, i, m., *bramble*.

Rufus, i, m., *Publius Salpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rumor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report*.

rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff*.

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again, in turn*.

Rutēnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Rutēni*, a tribe in southern Gaul.

Rutilus, i, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabinus, i, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., *the Sabis*, now *Sambre*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., *priest*.

sacramentum, i, n., *military oath*.

sacrificium, i, n., *sacrifice*.

saepe, adv. (*saepius*, *saepis-simē*), *often*.

saepenumērō, adv., *often, frequently*.

saepēs, is, f., *hedge*.

saeviō, īre, īvi, itum, *rage, be violent*.

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, i, m., *archer*.

sagulum, i, n., (*military*) *cloak*.

saltus, ūs, m., *defile, glen, pass*.

sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, protection*.

Samarobriva, ae, f., *a town of the Ambiani*, in northern Gaul.

sancio, īre, sauxi, sanctum, *make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact*; part. **sanctus**, a, um, as adj., *sacred, holy, inviolable*.

sangu-is, -inis, m., *blood*.

sāuitas, -tātis, f., *sound mind, sober mind, good sense*.

sāno, āre, āvi, ātum, *remedy, make good*.

Santones, um, or **Santom**, orum, m. plur., *the Santones*, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, *sound, sane*; **pro sano**, *like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently*.

sap-iō, ere, -ivi, *be wise*.

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, (personal) baggage*.

sar-ciō, īre, -si, -tum, *repair, make good*.

sarmentum, i, n., *fagot*.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably*; often as subst., *enough, sufficient*.

satis-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize*.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, excuse*.

saucius, a, um, *wounded*.

saxum, i, n., *stone, rock*.

scāla, ae, f., *ladder*.

Scaldis, is, m., *the Scaldis*, now *Scheldt*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat*.

scelerātus, a, um, *wicked, villainous*.

cel-us, -eris, n., *crime*.

scienter, adv. (compar. **scientius**), *skilfully, cleverly*.

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance*.

scindō, ere, scidi, scissum, *tear down, break down*.

sciō, īre, īvi, itum, *know*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion, a machine for hurling missiles*.

scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, *write, state*.

scrobis, is, m., *ditch, trench*.

scūtum, i, n., *shield*.

sēcus, see **secus**.

- see-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut, reap.*
 sēcērētō, *adv., privately.*
 seetiō, -ōnis, *f., booty.*
 sector. ārī, ātus sum, *pursue, follow after.*
 sectūra, *ae, f., mine.*
 secundum, *prep. w. acc., along, according to; besides; next to.*
 secundus, *a, um, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundo flumine, down stream.*
 secūris, *is, f., axe, borne by lictors as a symbol of authority.*
 secus, *adv. (compar. sēcūs), otherwise; nihilo sēcūs, none the less.*
 secūtus, *a, um, from sequor.*
 sed, *conj., but.*
 sēdecim, *sixteen.*
 sēdēs, *is, f., seat, abode, settlement.*
 sēditiō, -ōnis, *f., insurrection, rising, revolt.*
 sēditiosus, *a, um, seditious.*
 Sedulius, *ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices.*
 Sedunī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Sedunī, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.*
 Sedusiī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Sedusiī, a German tribe.*
 seg-es, -etis, *f., crop; field of grain, corn field.*
 Sēgnī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Segnī, a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*
 Segontiacī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Segontiacī, a tribe in Britain.*
 Segov-ax, -actis, *m., a king ruling in Kent.*
 Segusiāvī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Segusiāvī, a tribe in central Gaul.*
 semel, *adv., once; semel atque iterum, more than once.*
 sēmentis, *is, f., sowing of grain.*
 sēmīta, *ae, f., path, by-path.*
 semper, *adv., always.*
 Semprōnius, *ī, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, one of Caesar's officers.*
 senātor, -tōris, *m., senator.*
 senātus, ūs, *m., senate.*
 sen-ex, -is, *m., old man.*
 sēnī, *ae, a, six each, six.*
 Senones, *um, m. plur., the Senones, a tribe in central Gaul on the Seine.*
 sententia, *ae, f., opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.*
 sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.*
 sentis, *is, m., thorn, briar.*
 sēparatim, *adv., separately, by themselves, privately.*
 sēparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate; part. as adj., sēparātus, a, um, separate.*
 septem, *seven.*
 septentriō, -ōnis, *m. (chiefly in plur.), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the north.*
 septimus, *a, um, seventh.*
 septingentī, *ae, a, seven hundred.*
 septuāgintā, *seventy.*
 sepultūra, *ae, f., burial.*
 Sēquana, *ae, f., the Sequana, now Seine, a river in northern Gaul.*
 Sēquanus, *a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequanī; m. as subst., a Sequanian, in plur., the Sequanī, a tribe in Gaul north of the province.*
 sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.*
 sermō, -ōnis, *m., conversation, intercourse, discussion.*
 serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow.*
 sērō, *adv., too late.*
 Sertōrius, *ī, m., Quintus Sertorius, a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.*
 servilis, *e. of slaves, slavish.*
 serviō, īre, īvī, itum, *be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.*

servitūs, -tātis, f., slavery, bondage, subjection.

Servius, i, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, āre, āvi, ātum, keep, hold, maintain; watch, save, preserve.

servus, i, m., slave.

sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.

sēsē, for se, from sui.

sēsquipedālis, e, a foot and a half.

sen, see sive.

sevērītās, -tātis, f., strictness, severity, rigor.

sēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call aside.

sēvum, i, n., tallow.

sex, sīx.

sexāgintā, sixty.

sexcenti, ae, a, see sescenti.

Sextius, i, m., 1. Titus Sertius, one of Caesar's lieutenants; **2.** Publius Sertius Baccus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

si, conj., if, even if; whether, to see whether.

Sibuzātes, um, m. plur., the Sibuzates, a tribe in Aquitania.

sic, adv., thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.

siccitās, -tātis, f., drying up, dryness, drought.

sicubi, conj., if anywhere.

sicut, conj., just as, just like.

sicuti, conj., just as, just as if.

sid-us, -eris, n., star, constellation, heavenly body.

signifer, erī, m., standard-bearer.

significātiō, -ōnis, f., signal, announcement, intimation.

significō, āre, āvi, ātum, indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.

signum, i, n., signal; standard; **signa convertere,** to wheel about; **signa ferre** or **inferre,** to advance.

Silānus, i, m., Marcus Silanus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, i, n., silence; **abl. silentio** as adv., in silence, silently.

Silius, i, m., Titus Silius, one of Caesar's officers.

silva, ae, f., wood, forest.

silvestris, e, wooded.

similis, e, like, similar, w. dat. or gen.

similitū-dō, -dinis, f., resemblance, similarity.

simul, adv., at the same time; repeated, both, and; **simul atque** or sometimes **simul** alone, as soon as.

simulācrum, i, n., image, figure.

simulātiō, -ōnis, f., pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.

simulō, āre, āvi, ātum, pretend, feign.

simultās, -tātis, f., rivalry, feud.

sin, conj., but if.

sincērē, adv., honestly, truthfully

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

singillatim, adv., singly, individually, one by one.

singulāris, e, single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.

singuli, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.

sinister, tra, trum, left; fem. **sinistra** as subst., left hand (sc. manus).

sinistrōrsus, adv., to the left.

sinō, ere, sivi, situm, allow, permit.

siquidem, conj., since.

situs, ūs, m., position, situation.

sive or **sen, conj.,** or if; repeated, whether...or, either...or.

socer, erī, m., father-in-law.

societās, -tātis, f., alliance.

socius, i, m., ally.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun; **oriens sol,** the east; **occidens sol,** the west.

sōlācium, i, n., consolation.

soldurius, i, m., an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *be wont ; often best rendered by usually.*

solicitō, āre, see **sollicito.**

solitū-dō, -dinis, f., *solitude, wilderness, desert.*

sollertia, ac, f., *skill, shrewdness, ability.*

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stir up, instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe, try to win over.*

sollicitū-dō, -dinis, f., *anxiety.*

solum, ī, n., *soil, ground ; bottom.*

sōlum, adv., *only, alone.*

sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loose ; with or without naves, weigh anchor, set sail.*

sonitus, ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

Sontiātes, um, m. plur., *the Sontiātes, a tribe of Aquitania.*

sonus, ī, m., *sound.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, extent ; distance, interval ; pause, time.*

speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, form ; show, semblance.*

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look, face, slope, lie ; look at, consider, regard.*

speculātor, -tōris, m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um, *of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.*

speculor, āri, ātus sum, *spy, act as spy.*

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hope ; hope for, expect.*

spēs, ei, f., *hope ; in spem venire, begin to have hope, entertain a hope.*

spiritus, ūs, m., *pride, airs.*

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, deprive, despoil.*

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), *defective noun f. ; in abl., of one's own accord, by one's self.*

stabilio, ire, ivī, itum, *make steady or firm.*

stabilitās, -tātis, f., *steadiness, firmness.*

statim, adv., *at once.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *guard, sentry, outpost, picket.*

stat-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, *set up, fix ; decide, determine, resolve ; take measures, punish.*

statūra, ac, f., *stature, size.*

status, ūs, m., *position, condition, state.*

stimulus, ī, m., *goad, spur, prick.*

stipendiārius, a, um, *tributary ; m. as subst., a tributary, vassal.*

stipendium, ī, n., *tribute.*

stīp-es, -itis, m., *stake, post.*

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, race.*

stō, āre, stetī, statum, *stand ; abide by.*

stramentum, ī, n., *straw, thatch ; covering, saddle.*

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter, confusion.*

strūctūra, ac, f., *gallery, mine.*

studeō, ēre, ui, strive, be eager for, be bent upon ; be devoted to, pay attention to.

studiōsē, adv., *eagerly, zealously.*

studium, ī, n., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm ; pursuit.*

stultitia, ac, f., *folly.*

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., *under, beneath ; at the foot of, close by, near to ; (2) w. acc., under, close to ; of time, towards, just before.*

subāctus, a, um, *from subigo.*

subdolus, a, um, *crafty, cunning, deceitful.*

sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw up, lead off ; draw up, haul up, beach.*

subductiō, -ōnis, f., *hauling on shore, beaching.*

sub-eō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *come up, approach ; enter ; undergo, submit to.*

sub-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossam, *stab from beneath or in the belly.*

sub-igo, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *force, compel, constrain.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

subitus, a, um, *sudden, hasty*.

sub-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw from beneath; place below; bring under, subject, expose, force to submit; in pass., lie near, be subject*.

sublātus, a, um, *from tollo*.

sublevō, āre, āvi, ātum, *support, raise up; assist, relieve, help*.

sublica, ae, f., *pile, stake*.

sub-luō, ere, -lūtum, *wash*.

subministrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *supply, furnish*.

sub-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum, *send (to aid), send to one's aid*.

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *remove, drive off, dislodge*.

sub-ruō, ere, -rui, -rutum, *dig under, dig out, undermine*.

sub-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow (closely), follow up, succeed*.

subsidiū, ī, n., *aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement*.

sub-sidō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *remain*.

sub-sistō, ere, -stiti, *halt, make a stand; hold*.

sub-sum, -esse, -fui, *be near, be close at hand*.

sub-trahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, *remove, take away, withdraw*.

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance*.

sub-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum, *bring up*.

sub-veniō, īre, -vēni, -ventum, *come to the support of, come to help, aid*.

sue-cedō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, *succeed, take the place of, relieve, w. dat.; come close to; come up, advance; be successful*.

sue-cendō, ere, -cendi, -censum, *set on fire*.

suecēssus, ūs, m., *approach, advance*.

sue-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut down*.

sue-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *give way, succumb, give up under*.

sue-currō, ere, -curri, -cursum, *run to aid, run up*.

sudis, is, f., *stake*.

sudor, -ōris, m., *sweat; toil, exertion*.

Suebī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebi, a German tribe on the Rhine*.

Suessiōnes, um, m. plur., *the Suessiones, a tribe in northern Gaul*.

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, *be sufficient, hold out*.

suffragiū, ī, n., *vote*.

Sugambri, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sugambri, a German tribe on the Rhine*.

suggestus, ūs, m., *platform, tribune*.

sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them; inter se (to, with, from, etc.) one another; per se, of or by one's self, as far as one is concerned*.

Sulla, ae, m., *a great Roman general and political leader, living from 138 to 78 B.C.*

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

sum, esse, fui, *be, exist; w. gen., belong to, be a part or mark of*.

summa, ae, f., *total, sum; chief part, main body; chief control, command, management, control*.

summus, a, um, *superlative of superus, highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire*.

sūnō, ere, sūmsi, sūmptum, *take, assume; inflict; spend*.

sūmptuōsus, a, um, *costly*.

sūmptus, ūs, m., *expense*.

superbē, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, arbitrarily*.

superior, ius, comparative of superus, *higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful*.

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail; be superior, surpass, overtop; survive.*

super-sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -ses-sum, *abstain, refrain.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain, survive.*

suppet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be at hand, be at one's service; hold out.*

supplémentum, ī, n., *reinforcements.*

suppl-ex, -icis, *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv., *as suppliants.*

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment, penalty.*

supportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring up.*

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., *above, before.*

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake, take on one's self.*

su-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *suspect; in pass., be an object of suspicion.*

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspisor, āri, ātus sum, *suspect.*

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hold out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.*

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand, hold out, bear; check; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.*

sustulī, from tollo.

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their; his own, etc.; m. plur. as subst., sui, ōrum, his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen; n. plur. as subst., sua, ōrum, his (their) possessions, property.*

T.

T., *an abbreviation for Titus.*

tabernāculum, ī, n., *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., *list, document.*

tabulātum, ī, n., *story.*

taceō, ēre, uī, itum, *be silent, be silent about; part. as adj., tacitus, a, um, silent.*

tālea, ae, f., *bar, rod.*

tālis, e, such, of such a sort.

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, adv., *still, however, yet; at least.*

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī, conj., *although.*

tandem, adv., *at least; in questions, pray.*

tangō, ere, tetigī, tactum, *touch, border on.*

tantopere, adv., *so much, so earnestly.*

tantulus, a, um, *so trifling, so small.*

tantum, adv., *only.*

tantummodo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantundem, adv., *just so far, just as much.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much, such; as great, as much; n. tantum as adv., so much, so far; tanti, locative, of such value.*

Tarbellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tarbelli, a tribe in Aquitania.*

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardō, āre, āvī, ātum, *retard, check, delay, hinder.*

tardus, a, um, *slow, inactive, dispirited.*

Tarnsātes, um, m. plur., *the Tarnsates, a tribe of Aquitania.*

Tasgetius, ī, m., *a man of high rank among the Carnutes.*

taurus, ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., *a king ruling in Kent.*

taxus, ī, m., *yew.*

Tectosages, um, m. plur., *the Tectosages, a branch of the Volcae, a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Germany.*

tectum, ī, n., *roof, house.*

tectus, a, um, *from tego.*

tegimentum, ī, n., *covering.*

tegō, ere, texi, tectum, cover, hide, protect.

tēlum, l, n., weapon, missile, dart.

temerārius, a, um, reckless, rash.

temerē, adv., rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.

temeritās, -tātis, f., recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of chariot).

temperantia, ae, f., moderation.

temperō, āre, avi, ātum, control, restrain, refrain; part. as adj., temperatus, a, um, temperate, mild.

tempestās, -tātis, f., weather; storm.

temptō or tentō, āre, avi, ātum, try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.

temp-us, -oris, n., time, season; occasion, crisis, emergency; reli-quum tempus, the future.

Tenetērī, ōrum, m. plur., the Tenetērī, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, ere, tetendi, tēnsūm or tentum, stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.

tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., darkness.

teneō, ere, uī, tentum, hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, com-prise; restrain, bind, detain.

tener, era, erum, tender, young.

tentō, see tempto.

tenuis, e, slight, trifling, insignifi-cant; feeble, delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, f., feebleness, poverty.

tenuiter, adv., thinly, thin.

ter, adv., three times.

ter-es, -etis, round, rounded.

tergum, l, n., back, rear; tergum vertere, to flee, take to flight.

ternī, ae, a, three at a time, three each, three.

terra, ae, f., earth, land; ground; country; in terris, in the world.

Terrasidius, ī, m., Titus Terra-sidius, an officer with Caesar.

terrēnus, a, um, of earth.

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, frighten, alarm, terrify.

terrītō, āre, frighten, terrify.

terror, ōris, m., alarm, panic, terror.

tertius, a, um, third.

testāmentum, l, n., will.

testimōnium, l, n., proof, evi-dence, testimony.

testis, is, m., witness.

testu-dō, -dinis, f., testudo, shel-ter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.

Tentomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonī, ōrum, or Teutones, um, the Teutones, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

tignum, l, n., beam.

Tigurinus, a, um, Tigurine; m. plur. as subst., Tigurinī, ōrum, the Tigurinī, one of the four divi-sions or cantons of the Helvetii.

timeō, ere, uī, fear, feel or have fear, be anxious, be afraid.

timidē, adv., timidly; non timide, fearlessly.

timidus, a, um, full of fear, frightened, cowardly.

timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.

Titurinus, ī, m., Quintus Titurinus Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieuten-ants.

Titus, ī, m., Titus, a Roman prae-nomen.

tolerō, āre, avi, ātum, bear, en-dure, hold out, sustain.

tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum, raise; take away, remove, destroy, do away with, put an end to; in pass., be elated.

Tolōsa, ae, f., Toulouse, a city in the southern part of the province.

Tolōsātes, um, m. plur., the peo-ple of Toulouse.

tormentum, l, n., torture; engine (for throwing missiles).

torreō, ēre, uī, tostum, scorch.

tot, indeclinable, *so many*.

totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.

tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all*; often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether*.

trabs, **trabis**, f., *beam*.

trā-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender: pass on; haul down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.

trā-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin, lance*.

trahō, ere, traxi, tractum, *drag along, draw*.

trāiectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trā-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *pierce, strike*.

trānō, āre, āvi, ātum, *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -tātis, f., *stillness, calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.

Trānsalpīnus, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps* (from Rome).

trān-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēsum, *climb over; cross over, board*.

trānsducō, see **trādūcō**.

trāns-eō, -īre, -ī (-ivi, -itum), *cross, cross over, pass through, go or come over; migrate; pass, go by*.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring over, transfer*.

trāns-figō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, *pierce*.

trāns-fodiō, ere, -fodi, -fossum, *pierce through*.

trāns-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *step over or across; cross*.

trānsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trānsjiciō, see **trajiciō**.

trānsmarīnus, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across*.

trāns-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *transport, take across*.

trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum, *carry, lead, bring or take over*.

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, *living across the Rhine* (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., *those across the Rhine*.

trānstrum, ī, n., *cross-beam, thwart*.

trānversus, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Trebōnius, ī, m., *Caius Trebonius*, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight.

trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*.

trepidō, āre, āvi, ātum, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.

trēs, tria, *three*.

Trēverī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Treveri*, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.

Tribōes, um, or **Triboci**, ōrum, *the Triboci*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*, (an officer in the Roman army).

trib-nō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, *grant, give, bestow, have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.

tribūtum, ī, n., *tribute, tax*.

trīdnum, ī, n., *space of three days, three days*.

triennium, ī, n., *three years*.

trīgintā, *thirty*.

trīnī, ae, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.

Trīnobantes, um, *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in Britain.

tripertitō, adv., *in three divisions*.

trīpl-ex, -icis, *triple, threefold*.

trīquetrus, a, um, *triangular*.

trīstis, e, *sad, dejected*.

trīstītia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection*.

truncus, i, m., *trunk.*

tū, tui, thou, you.

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ēri, tutus (or **tutus sum,** *protect, guard, keep safe, maintain.*

Tulingi, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tulingi, a German tribe near the Helvetians.*

Tullius, i, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Tullus, i, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.*

tum, adv., then, at that time: cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

tumultuor, āri, ātus sum, *make an uproar or noise.*

tumultuosē, adv., *noisily, with much disorder.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, ī, m., *mound, rising ground.*

tunc, adv., then, at that juncture.

turma, ae, f., *squadron.*

Turones, um, or Turoni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Turones, a tribe in north-western Gaul.*

turpis, e, disgraceful, base.

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely, shamefully.*

turpitū-dō, -dinis, f., *disgrace.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

tutus, a, um, safe, secure; abl. as adv., tutō (compar. **tūtius**), *safely, in or with safety.*

tuus, a, um, thy, your.

U.

ubi, adv., where: when; ubi primum, as soon as.

ubicumque, adv., wherever.

Ubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ubiī, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.*

ubique, adv., anywhere.

uleiscor, i, ultus sum, *punish, avenge.*

ullus, a, um, any; as subst., any one.

ulterior, ius, comparative, *further, more remote.*

ultimus, a, um, superlative, *farthest, most remote, last.*

ultrā, prep. w. acc, beyond.

ultrō, adv., beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation; ultro citroque, to and fro, hither and thither.

ultus, a, um, from uleiscor.

ululātus, ūs, m., *howling, yell.*

umerus, i, m., *shoulder.*

umquam, adv., ever.

ūnā, adv., at the same time, together, along, jointly.

unde, adv., whence, from which or whom.

undecim, eleven.

undecimus, a, um, eleventh.

undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides.

universus, a, um, all, the whole, entire, in a body; as subst. all together, the whole body.

unquam, adv., ever.

ūnus, a, um, one, a single; alone, only: one and the same; ad unum, to a man.

urbānus, a, um, of or in the city (i.e. at Rome).

urbs, urbis, f., city.

urgeō, ēre, ursi, press hard.

ūrus, i, m., bison, wild ox.

Ūsipes, um, m. plur., *the Ūsipes, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.*

ūsitātus, a, um, customary, common, familiar.

usque, adv., quite up to, until, even, to such a degree.

ūsus, a, um, from utor.

ûsus, ûs, m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity: ex usu, of advantage, advantageous: usu venire, to happen, turn out.*

ut, or uti, *that, in order that, generally best rendered by infin. w. to; w. verbs of fearing, that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both; m. plur., both sides.*

uti, see **ut**.

ûtilis, e, *useful, of use, serviceable.*

ûtilitâs, -tâtis, f., *advantage.*

ûtor, î, ûsus sum, *use, employ, make use of, adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have, w. abl.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

uxor, -ôris, f., *wife.*

V.

Vacalus, î, m., *a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.*

vacatiô, -ônîs, f., *freedom, exemption.*

vacô, âre, âvî, âtum, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, a, um, *empty.*

vadum, î, n., *ford; shoal, shallow.*

vâgîna, æ, f., *scabbard.*

vagor, ârî, âtus sum, *wander, roam about.*

valcô, êre, uî, *be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence; avail, be effective.*

Valerius, î, m., *Valerius, 1. Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. Lucius Valerius Præconinus, a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. Caius Valerius Cæburus, with his two sons Procillus and Domnotaurus, Gauls who became Roman citizens.*

Valetiacus, î, m., *an Aeduan of rank.*

valetû-dô, -dinis, f., *health.*

vallês or vallis, is, f., *valley.*

vallum, î, n., *rampart, wall.*

vallus, î, m., *stake.*

Vangiones, um, m. plur., *the Vangiones, a German tribe on the Rhine.*

varietâs, -tâtis, f., *variety, diversity.*

varius, a, um, *various, diverse, different.*

vastô, âre, âvî, âtum, *lay waste, ravage.*

vastus, a, um, *vast, boundless, immense.*

vâticinâtiô, -ônîs, f., *divination, prophecy.*

vectig-al, -âlis, n., *tax, tribute; revenue.*

vectigâlis, e, *tributary.*

vectorius, a, um, *for carrying; vectorium navigium, a transport-ship.*

vehementer, adv., *severely, strongly, rigorously, desperately, exceedingly.*

vehô, ere, vexî, vectum, *carry, bring.*

vel, 1. conj., *or; vel...vel, either...or; 2. adv.*, *even.*

Velânîus, î, m., *Quintus Velanius, one of Caesar's officers.*

Veliocasses, um, or Veliocassi, ôrum, m. plur., *the Veliocasses, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.*

Vellaunodûnum, î, n., *a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.*

Vellâvî, ôrum, m. plur., *the Vellari, a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.*

vêlôcîtâs, -tâtis, f., *speed, swiftness.*

vêlôciter, adv., *(vêlôcîus, vêlôcissimê), swiftly, quickly.*

vêlox, -ôcîs, *swift, active.*

vêlum, î, n., *sail.*

velut, adv., *just as.*

vēnātiō, -ōis, f., *hunting, hunt, the chase.*

vēnātor, -toris, m., *hunter, huntsman.*

vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *sell.*

Venellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venellī*, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Venetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venetī*, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Venetia, ae, f., *the country of the Venetī.*

Veneticus, a, um, *of or with the Venetī.*

venia, ae, f., *pardon, favor.*

veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *come often, resort, visit.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Veragrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veragrī*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Verbigēnus, ī, m., one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.

verbum, ī, n., *word*; **verba facere**, *speak.*

Vereassivellannus, ī, m., a leading man among the Arverni.

Vercingetor-ix, -igis, m., a leader of the Arverni.

vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, ere, *incline, lie, face.*

vergobretus, ī, m., the title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui.

vērisimilis, e, *probable, likely.*

veritus, a, um, from **vereor**.

vērō, *indeed, in fact*; *but*; often untranslated.

versō, āre, āvī, ātum, *turn about, change*; in pass. as dep., *engage in, be occupied or busied, remain, be.*

versus, ūs, m., *line, verse.*

versus, adv., and prep. w. acc. *preceding, towards.*

Vertico, onis, m., a Nervian.

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn*; **terga vertere**, *to flee, take to flight.*

Verneloetius, ī, m., an Helvetian of rank.

vērus, a, um, *true; right, fair.*

verutum, ī, n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Sequani in eastern Gaul.

vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*

vestigium, ī, n., *footprint, track; spot; moment.*

vestiō, ire, īvī, itum, *clothe, cover.*

vestis, is, f., *clothing, garments.*

vestitus, us, m., *clothing, dress.*

veterānus, a, um, *veteran.*

vet-ō, āre, -ul, -itum, *forbid, order not.*

vet-us, -eris, old, former, long-standing, veteran.

vexillum, ī, n., *flag.*

vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass, annoy; ravage, overrun.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, street, route, journey.*

viātor, -tōris, m., *traveller.*

vīcēnt, ae, a, *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsīmus, a, um, *twentieth.*

vīciēs, adv., *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood*; as collective, *the neighbors.*

vīcis, gen. (nom. not found), f., *change*; in **vīcem**, *in turn.*

victimā, ae, f., *victim.*

victor, -tōris, m., *victor*; as adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victōria, ae, f., *victory, success.*

victus, a, um, from **vinco**.

vīctus, ūs, m., *living, mode of living, life; food.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, ēre, vidi, vīsum, *see*; in pass., *be seen, seem, appear, seem good or best.*

Vienna, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone.

vigilia, *ae, f.*, *watch, watching* (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).

vīginti, *twenty*.

vīnen, *-mīnis, n.*, *twig, willow, osier, wickerwork*.

vinciō, *īre, vīnxi, vinctum*, *bind*.

vinctum, *ī*, a shortened form of *vinculum*.

vincō, *ere, vici, victum*, *conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point*.

vinculum, *ī, n.*, *chain; often in plur., prison*.

vindicō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *claim, assert, defend; in libertatem vindicare, assert the liberty of; vindicare in w. acc., punish*.

vīnea, *ae, f.*, *vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea*.

vīnum, *ī, n.*, *wine*.

violō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *do violence to, harm, injure*.

vir, *virī, m.*, *man; husband*.

virēs, *ium*, from *vis*.

vir-gō, *-ginis, f.*, *maiden*.

virgultum, *ī, n.* (only in plur.), *brush-wood, bushes*.

Viridomarus, *ī, m.*, a leading man of the Aedui.

Viridovix, *-icis, m.*, a leader of the Venelli.

viritim, *adv.*, *man by man, to each*.

Viromandui, *ōrum, m. plur.*, the Viromandui, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

vir-tūs, *-tutis, f.*, *manliness, valor, bravery, courage; rigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality*.

vis, *vīm, vi, plur. vires, ium, f.*, *force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; rigor, energy, influence; number, quantity; plur., strength, powers*.

visus, *a, um*, from *video*.

vitā, *ae, f.*, *life, course of life*.

vītō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *avoid, escape*.

vītrum, *ī, n.*, *wood*.

vīvō, *ere, vixi, vīctum*, *live; w. abl., live on*.

vivus, *a, um*, *alive, living*.

vix, *adv.*, *scarcely, hardly, with difficulty*.

Vocātes, *um, m. plur.*, the Vocates, a tribe in Aquitania.

Vocciō, *-ōnis, m.*, a king of the Norici.

vocō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *call, summon, invite*.

Vocontii, *ōrum, m. plur.*, the Vocontii, a tribe in the province, near the Alps.

Volcae, *ārum, m. plur.*, the Volcae, a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the *V. Tectosages* and the *V. Arecomici*; a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany.

Volcātius, *ī, m.*, *Caius Volcatius Tullus*, one of Caesar's officers.

volō, *velle, volui*, *wish, be willing, desire, want; sibi velle, to want, to mean*.

voluntārius, *a, um*, *voluntary; m. as subst., volunteer*.

voluntās, *-tātis, f.*, *wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will*.

voluptās, *-tātis, f.*, *pleasure*.

Volusēnus, *ī, m.*, *Caius Volusenus*, a military tribune with Caesar.

Vorēnus, *ī, m.*, *Lucius Vorenius*, a centurion with Caesar.

vōs, *plur. of tū*.

Vosegus, *ī, m.*, the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul.

voveō, *ēre, vovi, vōtum*, *vow*.

vōx, *vōcis, f.*, *voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word*.

Vulcānus, *ī, m.*, *Vulcan*, the Roman god of fire and metallurgy.

vulgō, *adv.*, *commonly, generally, everywhere*.

vulgus, *ī, n.*, *the common people, the public, general body*.

vulnerō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *wound*.

vuln-us, *-eris, m.*, *wound*.

vultus, *ūs, m.*, *countenance, expression, look*.

APPENDIX I.

HINTS AND SUGGESTIONS FOR THE TRANSLATION OF CÆSAR'S LATIN.

THE CASES.

1. Nominative ; always the subject (or in agreement with the subject) of an indicative or subjunctive, [rarely of historical infinitive, 36.] N.B.—Occasionally the subject may be placed after the verb in Eng., and 'there' prefixed to the verb ; e.g. *erat difficultas*, 'there was difficulty.'

2. Genitive ; (a) may generally be translated by *of* ;

(b) Often by the Eng. possessive forms ;

(c) Where these do not yield satisfactory sense, translate by *as regards*, for which some preposition, *in, for, from*, etc., may generally be substituted ; e.g. *opinio virtutis*, 'reputation as regards (*i.e.* for) valor' ; *usus belli*, 'experience as regards (*i.e.* in) war.'

(d) With a few words, chiefly neuters used substantively, such as *quid, nihil, tantum, quantum, satis, aliquid, millia*, translate without *of* as though the words were in agreement ; e.g. *aliquid consilii*, 'some prudence,' lit. 'something of prudence.'

3. Dative ; (a) translated generally by *to*, sometimes by *for*.

(b) Sometimes the verb with which the dative is connected is translated freely, not literally, into Eng., and the Eng. verb requires the omission of *to* or *for* ; e.g. *provinciae imperat*, 'he orders the province,' lit. 'he gives orders to the province' ; *nocet navibus*, 'it harms the ships,' lit. 'it is harmful to the ships.'

(c) In a few cases, especially with the words *usus*, *auxilium* and *praesidium*, the dative (which tells the purpose something serves) is to be translated by the Eng. predicate nominative (i.e. without a preposition), or by *as*, (or sometimes by infin. with *to*.)

(d) With the gerundive [41] by *by*.

4. Accusative ; (a) the object of transitive verbs, translate without any preposition.

(b) The subject of an infin. [34], translate as if it were the nominative.

(c) With words or phrases referring to time, translate with or without *for* (telling how long some action has taken).

(d) With words or phrases referring to distance or measurement, translate with or without *for*, (telling how far some one has gone, is distant, or something extends).

5. Ablative ; (a) If connected with a perfect participle also in the ablative and of the same gender and number, these words are without close grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, and this 'ablative absolute construction' may be translated in a variety of ways ; e.g. *magno eorum numero interfec-to, domum reverterunt* (lit. 'a large number of them having been slain, they returned home'), 'having slain, (or) after slaying, (or) on slaying, (or) when they had slain, (or) after they had slain, etc.'; *magis copiis coactis, castra oppugnant* (lit. 'a large force having been collected, they attack the camp'), 'collecting a large force, they attack, etc., (or) they collect a large force and attack, etc.'

A literal translation (into the rare Eng. nomin. absolute) is scarcely ever a good rendering. Translate generally by one of the three following ways :

i. By the Eng. active participle in *ing*, or the Eng. gerund (verbal noun) in *ing* with a preposition, *after*, *on*, sometimes *by*.

ii. By a conjunction, generally *when*, *as*, *after*, sometimes *if*, *although*, *since* ; the verb which follows may often be well turned from Lat. passive to Eng. active voice [23].

iii. By a clause (in the indicative or infinitive as the case may be) of the same grammatical value as the clause with which the ablative absolute phrase is connected ; to couple these similar or coördinate clauses, insert *and*, sometimes *but* ; here also a change to the active voice is often advisable [23].

NOTE.—This ablative absolute construction occurs less frequently with the present participle, or with an adjective or noun in place of a participle. With the present participle, trans. generally by a clause beginning with *while*, sometimes *although*, *as*, *if*, and containing a verb in the progressive form. Where there is no participle, supply *being* between the two ablatives, and this will give the meaning of the phrase and suggest a suitable translation. If a negative occurs in the ablative absolute phrase, translate by *without*.

(b) In most other cases translate by a preposition, *by* or *with*, less frequently *in* or *from*. The sense of the context will generally indicate which to choose.

(c) With words or phrases relating to time, translate by *in*, *on*, *at* (telling either the time when, or the period within which something has happened); sometimes the Eng. preposition may be omitted altogether. With the adverbs *post* or *ante*, the ablative tells how long before or after.

(d) With words denoting a quality, or in some way describing a person or thing just mentioned, translate by *of*. This ablative is connected with a noun not with a verb, and does not occur without some modifier in the ablative.

6. THE PREPOSITIONS.

(The order of frequency in Cæsar is *ad*, *in* with abl., *in* with acc., *ex*, *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *per*, *inter*, *pro*, *propter*, *apud*, *sine*, *post*, *trans*, *ante*.)

A, ab : (a) *by* (so only with passive verbs, to express the personal doer of the act.)

(b) *from*.

(c) *at*, *on*, *in*, (with *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornu*, *frons*, denoting direction).

Ad : (a) *to*, *towards*, or of movement with hostile intent, sometimes *against*.

(b) *with a view to*, for which *for* or *to* may generally be substituted (especially with gerund or gerundive [39, 40]).

(c) *near*, *by*.

Ante : *before*, (generally of time not place).

Apud : *among*, *with*.

Contra : (a) *against*. (b) *over against*, *opposite*.

Cum : *with* [see note to 31].

De : (a) *about, concerning*.

(b) *from* ; especially with *causa*, where it is better to substitute *fōr*.

Ex, (rarely *e*) : (a) *from*.

(b) *of*, (in speaking of part of a larger number, or of a material)

(c) *in, on, at*, (with *pars* denoting direction).

In, with the Accus. : (a) *into, to*.

(b) *against, at, on*, (of a hostile act or movement).

(c) *into the country of*, (with names of native tribes).

In, with the Abl. : (a) *in*, sometimes *on*.

(b) *among, in the country of*.

Inter : (a) *among*. *Inter se* = *one another*, generally with a preposition suggested by the context.

(b) *between*.

Per : *through, by means of, by*.

Post : *after, behind*.

Pro : (a) *before, (of place)*.

(b) *in place of, as, in return for, in accordance with*.

Propter : *on account of, because of*.

Sine : *without*.

Trans : *across, beyond*.

ADJECTIVES.

7. As the adjective (while agreeing in case, gender and number with the word to which in sense it belongs), is often separated from that word (either for emphasis or euphony), it is necessary to be watchful of the indications of agreement afforded by the ending.

8. Sometimes the adjective does not agree with any word, but is used substantively, in the masculine referring to persons, in the neuter to things ; e.g. *omnes*, all ; *reliqui*, the rest ; *alii*, others ; *omnia*, all things, everything ; *multa*, many things, much.

9. In many cases what seems to be an adjective is really an adverb, (the acc. and abl. cases being often used adverbially); e.g. *multum*, *multo*, *plurimum*, *facile*, *facilius*, *subito*, *certo*, *necessario*, *primum*, *unū*.

10. The comparative and superlative forms are often used when no comparison is being made. The superlative is often to be translated by *very* (*exceedingly*, *fully*) with the positive form, and often the positive alone is a sufficient rendering. The comparative is sometimes to be translated by *too*, *rather*, *unusually*, or *considerably*, with the positive form. This applies to adverbs also, as well as adjectives.

THE PRONOUNS.

(These are arranged in the order of frequency of occurrence.)

11. *Qui, quae, quod*; the relative pronoun; regularly the first word in the clause, often preceding conjunctions or prepositions, though coming after them in the Eng. translation.

(a) *who, which, whom, whose*, limiting or defining a noun or pronoun (especially *is* and *hic*), which is called the antecedent.

(b) After a pause (even after a period, and at the beginning of a new chapter), used to carry on the narration; translate by *this, he*, if singular, by *these, they*, if plural. [*Cujus*=*his*, *quorum*=*their*.] Sometimes a conjunction, *and, but, for*, may be used to introduce the sentence. In a few cases, when the pause is a comma, it will be good Eng. to translate by *which*.

(c) With *mitto, praemitto*, and occasionally other verbs, followed by a subjunctive expressing purpose. Translate by infinitive with *to* [29].

(d) Difficulty is sometimes caused by certain peculiarities of the antecedent.

i. The antecedent is often not expressed; *qui* (plur.)—*those who, quod* or *quae* (neuter)—*what*, or sometimes *as*.

ii. The antecedent is often repeated with the relative (especially *pars, res, locus, dies*). Omit in translating.

iii. The antecedent (generally *hic*, sometimes *is*) comes after the whole relative clause. In the Eng. it should precede, sometimes being repeated after the relative clause.

iv. The antecedent is often transferred to the relative clause and takes its case from the relative. (This is generally when the relative clause precedes the words it depends on, or when

the relative refers to words in apposition). Translate by putting the antecedent before the relative clause ; e.g. *quam nacti erant praedum, relinquunt*, (lit. 'what plunder they had got, they leave')—'they leave the plunder which they had got.' Where, however, the relative refers to words in apposition, a literal translation is often good Eng.

12. Is, ea, id ; (a) in agreement with a noun, *that, those*. Where a relative clause follows, *the* is often a good rendering. Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *that*, Eng. would prefer to use *this*.

(b) When not in agreement with a noun ; in sing. *he, him*, if masc., *that, it*, if neut. ; in plur. *they, them*, or if the antecedent of a relative, *those*. N.B.—*Ejus*=*his*, *eorum*=*their*, *ea quae* (neut. plur.)=*what*, *id quod*=*what* or *as*.

13. Hic, haec, hoc ; *this, these*. N.B.—*Haec* (neut. plur.), or *hic* in agreement with *res, rerum, rebus*=*this* (lit. 'these things'). Often *hic* is well rendered by *the following*. Occasionally *hic* in sing. without a noun=*he, him*. Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *this*, Eng. would prefer to use *that*.

14. Se, sese, sui, sibi ; (a) referring to the subject of the verb with which it is connected : translate by *himself, itself*, if that subject is sing. ; by *themselves*, if plural.

(b) But when the verb it is connected with depends closely on a verb or phrase meaning 'to say, order, think, ask, wish, point out, etc.', it will refer to the subject of this latter verb ; translate by *him, it*, if that subject is sing. ; by *them*, if plural.

(c) When *se, sese*, is the subj. of an infin. [34], trans. by *he* or *they*, referring to the subj. of the verb on which the infin. depends.

(d) In long passages of reported speech, the translation of *se* must be settled by the sense required, though as a rule *se* refers to the speaker. Exceptions to the above rules are chiefly of two classes : i. in common reflexive expressions such as *se colligere, se recipere*, to be translated as in (a), or in the phrase *inter se*=one another ; and ii. where the verb with which *se* is connected only indirectly depends on one of the verbs mentioned in (b). In all such cases the translation may easily be decided by the context.

15. Suus, a, um ; (a) *his, his own, or their, their own*, according as the word it refers to (not the word it agrees with) is sing. or

plur. The word *suus* refers to is determined in the same way as with *se* [14, *a, b, d.*].

(*b*) Where not needed for clearness' sake, *suus* is used for emphasis, especially in contrast; trans. by *his, their*, emphasized, or by *his own, their own*.

(*c*) In the plural without agreeing with any noun; *sui* (masc.) = *his* or *their troops, friends, comrades, people, family*; *sua* (neut.) = *his* or *their possessions, property*.

16. *Noster, -tra, -trum*; *our*, in Cæsar = 'of the Romans.' The plural *nostri* without any noun in agreement = *our troops, forces, men*.

17. *Ipse, a, um*; (*a*) if not in agreement with any noun; translate by *he himself, they themselves*, or sometimes *he, they*, emphasized.

(*b*) If agreeing with a noun or pronoun; translate by *himself, themselves*.

18. *Ille, a, ud*; (*a*) contrasted with other persons, just mentioned; translate by *he, they*, emphasized.

(*b*) Referring to persons just mentioned, who are not the subject of the last sentence; *he, they*, often well rendered by *the others, the enemy, the latter*. (Generally in the plural and at the beginning of a new sentence, to mark a change of subject.)

(*c*) In agreement with a noun, *that*.

19. *Idem, eadem, idem*; *the same*.

20. *Quis, quid* (substantival); *qui, quae, quod* (adjectival); the interrogative pronoun: *who, what*.

21. *Quis, quid* (substantival); *qui, qua, quod* (adjectival); indefinite pronoun: (*a*) in agreement with a noun, *any*.

(*b*) Not in agreement with any noun, *anyone, anything*. N.B.—*Quis*, the indefinite, occurs only after *si* and *ne* in Cæsar.

22. *Quisque*; *each* (of several). *Uterque*; *each* (of two), *both, either*. *Aliquis, or aliqui*; *some one, some, something*. *Quisquam*; *anyone, anything*. *Ullus*; *any*. *Quidam*; *a certain one, one, certain*. *Quicumque*; *whoever, whatever*.

THE VOICES.

23. While the Active and the Passive forms of the verb are to be carefully distinguished, it should be noticed that the two voices are merely two ways of viewing the same action, and therefore what Latin expresses in one voice may often be well rendered into Eng. by the other voice. This change is especially frequent in the abl. absol. [5. a.], the impersonal passive construction [24] and the gerundive [40. 41.] Often the subject of the Eng. active must be gathered from the context.

24. With a transitive verb, an act may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice; e.g. 'they sent ambassadors' or 'ambassadors were sent by them.' But with an intransitive verb only the active voice may be used in Eng.; e.g. 'they hesitate.' But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.* such as do not govern an accus.) the passive voice also may be used, expressing e.g. the idea of hesitating, coming, fighting, without mentioning necessarily *who* hesitated, etc.; e.g. *pugnatum est*, 'there was fighting' or 'fighting took place'; *non dubitandum est*, 'there ought not to be hesitating.' Translate such phrases by using the Eng. active, supplying the subject which the context suggests (or which with a gerundive is expressed often by a dative [3. d]); e.g. 'they fought,' 'he must not hesitate.'

THE MOODS AND TENSES.

THE INDICATIVE.

25. Present: translate by the Eng. present tense. Often the present is used for the past, to represent an act more vividly, and as this is commoner in Latin than in Eng. the Latin present may often be translated by the Eng. past.

26. Imperfect: (a) translate in most cases by Eng. past tense, or with negatives by *did*. This will be a correct rendering where our past tense expresses i. thoughts or feelings (the habitual way of thinking, or the thoughts which influence one in thinking over plans, or considering a situation, but not a thought expressing the decision one has come to); ii. a situation, or condition of affairs; iii. an action in progress (going on); iv. an habitual action, a usual state of things, an act often repeated or persisted in.

(b) To express more clearly an action in progress [*a. iii*], translate by *was, were*, with the verbal form in *-ing*, (Eng. past progressive).

(c) To express more clearly an habitual or repeated action [*a. iv.*], translate by *used to*, *would*, or *kept*.

(d) Occasionally, to express an attempted action, translate by *tried to* or *began to*.

27. Perfect : (a) translate generally by Eng. past tense ;

(b) Occasionally by Eng. perfect with *have*, (generally where Cæsar is referring to something he has already mentioned).

28. Pluperfect : translate by Eng. past perfect, with *had*. (But with *cum* = whenever, translate by Eng. past tense.)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

29. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), *ne*, *quo*, or the relative pronoun [*ii. c.*], and expressing purpose or the end in view : (a) translate by *that*, *in order that*, followed by *may* or *might*.

(b) More frequently, and especially after verbs meaning 'to urge, ask, command, advise, persuade,' translate by Eng. infin. with *to*.

30. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), and expressing result ; (a) translate by *that*, sometimes *so that*, followed by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28]. This includes *ut* and subj. after verbs of 'happening.'

(b) By *so as to*, with the Eng. infin.

31. A clause introduced by *cum**, *quod*, the relative pronoun (except as in [29]), a relative adverb, or by any interrogative word : translate by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28], with the following variations :

Often in quoting the words or thoughts of another, the present is best rendered by the Eng. past, and the perfect, by the Eng. past perfect, with *had*.

The imperfect subj. is more frequently to be translated by the Eng. past progressive (*was* or *were* with the verbal form in *-ing*), than the imperfect indic. is.

The pluperfect, especially with *cum*, is often best rendered by the Eng. past tense. The pluperfect with *cum* may generally

* *Cum* the conjunction = *when*, *since*, and *cum* the preposition = *with* are to be carefully distinguished. The latter will be followed always by an ablative. Hence where an abl. does not follow with which *cum* could go, it will be the conj.; if an abl. does follow, it will probably be the prep., but *may* be the conj.

also be rendered by the same translations as are given for the perfect participle [37. *u*]; e.g. *cum vidisset*, = 'having seen, seeing, on seeing,' as well as 'when he saw.'

32. A clause introduced by *si*, *nisi*: translate as though the subj. were an indicative [25-28], but the present is sometimes, and the pluperfect generally, best rendered by Eng. past tense: the imperfect translate by Eng. past tense, or sometimes by *were to*, *should*.

THE INFINITIVE.

33. (*a*) The present inf., active or passive, completing the meaning of a verb; translate by Eng. infin. with *to*, except after *possum* (*can*, *could*), where *to* is omitted. The verbs after which this use of the inf. is most often found are: *possum*, *jubeo* and *coepi*; *consuesco*, *volo*, *conor*, *audeo* and *cogo* also are frequent.

(*b*) After the passive of *dico*, *existimo* and *video*, translate a present infin. by Eng. infin. with *to*, a perfect infin. by *to have*.

34. (*a*) Often the present infin., and regularly the perfect infin., the future infin. and the gerundive with *esse*, are to be translated by a clause introduced by *that* with its verb in the indicative. In such a case the subject of the infin. will be in the accus. case and is to be translated as if it were the nomin.

(*b*) This 'accus. and infin. construction' is found after verbs or phrases meaning 'to state, think, learn, know, perceive, etc.,' of which those most commonly occurring are *dico*, *video*, *existimo*, *arbitror*, *intelligo*, *cognosco*, *certiorem facio* and *demonstro*.

(*c*) Repeatedly with the future infin. act., the gerundive with *esse*, and sometimes with the perfect infin. pass., *esse* is omitted and the infin. appears to be a participle. A future participle in *-rus* in the accus., or a gerundive in the accus. without a preposition, is in Cæsar to be regarded regularly as an infin.

(*d*) Translate the various tenses as follows: the present by *was*, *were*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); the perfect by *had* (Eng. past perfect) or by Eng. past tense; the future by *would*; the gerundive by *should*, *ought*, *must* [41]. [But if the verb of stating, etc. be in the present tense, *was* or *were* should be changed to *is*, *are*; *had to have* and *would to will*.] N.B. — *posse* = *could*, *esse* = *was*, *were*.

35. (*a*) Sometimes the infin. (generally the present) is used as a substantive serving as the subject of some verb. This verb is

generally to be translated with the subject *it*, and the infin. by the Eng. infin. with *to*. If a subject of the infin. is given it should be placed before the Eng. infin. and be preceded by *for*.

(b) This same use of the infin. is with *licet* and *oportet* better translated more freely; e.g. *licet eis venire* = 'they may come'; *oportet eos venire* = 'they ought to (or should) come.'

36. The present infin. sometimes in spirited narrative does not depend on any verb, and is to be translated by the Eng. present or past indicative; or if it indicates repeated (incessant) action it may be well rendered by *kept* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*. [The subject of this 'historical infin.' is in the nominative.]

THE PARTICIPLES.

37. The perfect partic. (a) in the nom. case, or in the accus. referring to the subject of an infin., is to be translated, if in the passive voice, by *having been*, *on being*, *after being*, or *being* (e.g. sent); if a deponent, by *having* (e.g. set out) or *on*, *after*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (e.g. setting out), or sometimes, especially with verbs expressing a thought or feeling, by the Eng. partic. in *-ing* (e.g. suspecting).

N.B.—It will sometimes be advisable to translate the partic. in this case by a clause of the same grammatical value as that with which the partic. is connected, joining the two clauses by *and* (or *but*): e.g. *repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt*, 'they were driven back by the cavalry and concealed themselves in the woods,' lit. 'having been driven back they concealed'

(b) In the abl. case in agreement with a noun, the perfect partic. will be translated as in [5. a.].

(c) In other cases translate the perfect partic., if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by the Eng. past partic. passive or by a clause in the indic. (generally the past perfect with *had*) beginning with *who*, *which*; if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning *those who had*.

38. The present partic. may generally be translated, if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by *while*, followed either by the Eng. partic. in *-ing*, or by *was*, *were* with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning with *those who were* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

39. The Latin gerund in *-ndi, -ndo, -ndum*, is to be translated by the Eng. gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*. The gen. is the case most frequently occurring, (especially with *causā* = 'for the purpose'), and is to be translated according to [2. *a.* and *c.*] The accusative often occurs with *ad* = *for* ('with a view to').

(*b*) *Causā* with the gen., and *ad* with the accus. of the gerund express purpose and may often be best rendered by the Eng. infin. with *to*.

40. The gerundive in *-ndus, a, um*, in the gen., the accus. with *ad*, and sometimes the dat. or the abl., is found in agreement with nouns (or rarely pronouns). Although really passive and in agreement, it is to be translated by the active gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*, governing the word with which in Latin it really agrees. For the translation of the gen. and of the accus. with *ad* see [39]. The dat. is to be translated by *for*. The abl. is either used with a prep., especially *in*, or expresses 'means,' to be translated by *by*.

41. The gerundive in *-ndus, a, um* in the nom., or in the accus. without a prep. is used with the verb *sum*, though after verbs of *thinking* and *deciding* the infin. *esse* is generally omitted. Thus used, the gerundive and *sum* are to be translated by *should, ought, must, or had to*. A literal rendering would be in the passive voice, but it is generally better to use the active in Eng. The subject of this active verb will either be found in a dative connected with the gerundive [3. *d.*], or will more often be readily supplied from the context.



APPENDIX II.

TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH TO LATIN.

I.—SUGGESTIONS AND GENERAL REMARKS.*

1. Case of Nouns and Pronouns without Prepositions.

- (a) **subject** of a verb : **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin., and **dat.** with *ought*, *must*, expressed by the gerundive (as in § 8. b)
- (b) **object** of a verb : **acc.**; but **abl.** after *utor*, and **dat.** after *impero*, *praesum*, *persuadeo*, *resisto*, etc.
- (c) indicating **time** : **abl.**, time when, or within which; **acc.**, time how long.
- (d) indicating **distance** or **extent** : **acc.**; but **abl.** with idea of surpassing or separation.
- (e) after verb **to be** ; **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. w. subject accus., and **dat.** of nouns meaning *aid*, *advantage*, *hindrance*.
- (f) after verbs **to be made**, **be chosen**, **become**, **seem**, **be thought** : **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. with subject accus.
- (g) words in **apposition** : in the same case.
- (h) **nom.** of **address** : the **voc.**
- (i) phrase used **absolutely** : **abl. absol.**, or **cum** clause.

* These suggestions deal entirely with usages commonly occurring in Caesar's Latin, and are intended either for help in the translation of sentences or passages based on Caesar, or for the purpose of rapid review. Being largely rules of thumb, they will not of course take the place of a systematic or complete statement of the rules of syntax.

2. Case of Nouns and Pronouns with Prepositions.

NOTE.—Latin avoids joining two nouns by a preposition. In such a case, if *as regards* can be fairly substituted for the preposition, use the *gen.*; otherwise a clause (chiefly relative).

about,	=concerning,	de.
against,	w. verbs of motion, =in opposition to,	in w. acc. contra.
at,	telling time when, expressing hostile act, =near (of place),	abl. in w. acc. ad.
by,	personal agent, w. pass., =by means of, telling time when,	[dive. a, ab; but dat. w. gerun- abl; but per of persons. abl.
for,	telling time how long, telling extent of space, =with a view to,	acc. acc. ad; but in w. acc. with words of time.
	of motion towards, w. 'reason' (<i>causa</i>), telling purpose to be served or persons concerned,	ad. de. dat.
from,	w. verbs of taking away.	a, ab; but ex, if=out of. dat.
in,	telling time when, telling place where, telling direction in which, telling direction to which, =in regard to, telling manner,	abl. in w. abl. a, ab. in w. acc. abl. [no modifier, abl; but cum if noun has in w. acc.
into,		
of,	denoting a part, =concerning, giving qualities, character- istics, =belonging to, or w. verbal nouns,	gen.; or ex with numerals and adjectives of num- ber, but de w. <i>pauca</i> . de. abl. or gen.; (always gen. of number).
on,	telling time when, telling place where, telling direction in which,	gen. abl. in w. abl. a, ab.
through,		per.
to,	w. verbs of motion, =with reference to, of the person concerned, or the indirect object,	ad; but in w. acc. of motion so as to be in a place. dat. dat.
with,	=together with, =by means of, telling manner,	cum. abl. abl.; but cum if the noun has no modifier

3. Pronouns.

(a) **who, what, which, whose, whom :**

i. after verbs = *ask, learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see decide, quis, quae, quid*, w. subjunctive. [what (substantive) = *quid* or *quae* ; which (of two) = *uter*.]

ii. Referring to an antecedent expressed or necessarily understood, *qui, quae, quod*, w. indic. ; but w. subj. if expressing another's words or thoughts. [what (substantive) = *ea quae* or *id quod*.]

(b) **he, him ; they, them**,—i. In a clause depending on a verb = *say, order, think, ask, wish, point out*, if referring to the same person as the subject of that verb, *sui, sibi, se (sese)*.

ii. In other cases, *is*, or if emphatic by contrast *ille* ; when there is no contrast and the same persons have been prominently referred to in the preceding sentence, *qui*, beginning the clause.

(c) **his, their**,—i. unless emphatic, not expressed if the omission would cause no obscurity.

ii. otherwise *suus* in such cases as b. i. above, and *ejus, eorum* in other cases.

(d) **that**,—*is* ; or if emphatic by contrast *ille*.

(e) **this**,—*hic* ; or referring to something prominently mentioned in the preceding sentence, *qui*.

(f) **himself, themselves**,—*ipse*, if purely for emphasis sake ; *se*, if used reflexively.

(g) **his own, their own**,—*suus*, referring to persons already mentioned.

(h) **any**,—i. after *si, ne, nisi, num* ; *quis, quid* (substantival), *qui, qua, quod* (adjectival).

ii. = even one, in negative sentences or with *vix, sine, quisquam, quicquam* (substantival), *ullus, a, um* (adjectival).

iii. = every one, *quivis*.

(i) **each**,—*quisque*, of several ; *uterque*, of two.

(k) **some**,—*aliquis* = some or other ; *nonnulli* = a few ; *quidam* = a certain ; *alii . alii* = some . others.

4. Infinitive with To.

- (a) expressing purpose, or the end in view ;—
 ut (or ne for negative clauses) w. subj.,
 or qui w. subj. after verbs of sending,
 or for short phrases ad or causa w. gerund or
 gerundive.

N.B.—After *urge, ask, command* (except *jubeo*), *advise, persuade, try* (except *conor*), use *ut* (or *ne* for negative clauses) w. subj. of purpose.

- (b) completing the meaning of a verb, especially after *order* (if *jubeo*) *begin, be accustomed, wish, try* (if *conor*), *venture, compel, resolve, seem* ;—pres. infin.
 (c) after verbs=*promise, hope* ;—accus. w. fut. infin.
 (d) after *such as* or *so as* ;—ut w. subj.

5. Subordinate Conjunctions.

- (a) *that*,—indicating purpose, *ut, ne, quo*, w. subj.
 indicating result and w. verbs=*happen, ut* w. subj.
 after verbs=*state, think, learn, know, perceive, accus.*
w. infin.
 after verbs=*fear, ne* (or *ut*=that not) w. subj.
 (b) *when, after, as, since, if, although*,—i. in a *short*
 clause referring to a time *previous* to that of the
 clause on which it depends :
 (i) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is transitive,*
abl. absol. (in passive voice).
 (ii) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is deponent,
perf. part. in agreement.
 (iii) if Eng. is pass. and Latin verb is transitive,*
perf. part. in agreement.
 ii. otherwise : *when, after, cum* w. subj. (rarely *ubi* or
postquam w. ind.)
as, since, cum w. subj. ; (sometimes *quod* w. ind.)
if, si ; if not, nisi.
although, etsi.
 (c) *because*,—*quod* w. ind. ; but w. subj. if expressing
 another's statement or thought.
 (d) *while*,—*dum* (w. pres. ind. in ordinary narrative).
 (e) *until*,—*dum* w. ind. ; but w. subj. if one's purpose or
 object is involved.
 (g) *lest*,—*ne* w. subj.
 (h) *whenever*,—*cum* w. ind. (perf. or pluperf. § 6. a.)

* A transitive verb in Latin is one which in the active voice takes an object in the accus. case.

6. Tenses, where the mood has already been decided.

[Latin is far more logically correct than English in its tenses, especially in indicating the relation of a principal and a dependent clause.]

(a) Indicative.

- i. English **progressive past** tense = Latin **imperf.** ;
(but w. *dum*, see 5. *d.*)
- ii. English **simple past** tense = Latin **perfect** ; but **imperfect** w. verbs = *think, know, feel*, or when indicating a condition of things, a situation, or an habitual action ; and **pluperf.** w. *when-ever* or *whoever*.
- iii. English **present** tense in clauses w. *whenever* or *whoever*, = Latin **perfect**.

(b) Subjunctive.

- i. Clauses of **purpose**, **present** if depending on verb in *pres.*, *ful.*, or *perf.* (= English *perf.* w. *have*); **imperf.** if depending on verb in *imperf.*, *pluperf.*, or *perf.* (= Eng. *simple past*).
[NOTE.—After the *historical present* either *pres.* or *imperf.* may be used.]
- ii. Clauses of **result**, the same tense as in English, except that Latin **imperfect** is generally used for Eng. *past* tense.
- iii. In all other cases (*e.g.* w. *cum*, *si*, *quod*, or *pronouns*), the *same* tense as in English, except that the English *simple past* is the Latin **imperfect**, unless it refers to a time *previous* to that of the clause on which it depends, when the **pluperf.** is used ; in the same case the **perf.** is used for Eng. *simple pres.* (Test by substituting *had* or *have*.)

(c) Infinitive (in accus. w. infin. construction).

Change the Eng. words so as to get what was actually said or thought, and take the corresponding tense of the infin. ; that is :—

If referring to the *same* time as verb of stating, thinking, etc., **present**.

If referring to time *before* that of verb of stating, thinking, etc., **perfect**.

If referring to time *after* that of verb of stating, thinking, etc., **future**.

For *would have* use *fuisse* w. partic. in *-urus*

7. Participles and Gerund (or Verbal in -ing).

- (a) The **past participle** with *having*,
or the **present participle** if = past part. with *having*, or a
clause with *since*, *after*, or *as*,
or the **gerund** (or verbal in -ing) preceded by *on*, *after*,
are to be translated as follows :
If the Latin verb is *intransitive*, by *cum* w. subj.
If the Latin verb is *transitive*,
- i. Eng. *passive voice*, by Latin perf. part. pass.
in agreement.
 - ii. Eng. *active voice* in *long* clauses, by *cum* w. subj.
 - iii. Eng. *active voice* in *short* clauses, by perf. part.
pass. in abl. absol., or by perf. part. depen-
nent in agreement.
- (b) The **present participle** is almost invariably to be trans-
lated as in *a* above ; in other cases by
pres. part. in agreement, in *short* phrases,
qui or *dum* clause, in *long* phrases.
- (c) The **gerund** (or verbal in -ing).
- i. after *of* or other prepositions replaceable by *as*
regards, gen. of gerund or gerundive con-
struction.
 - ii. after *for* (= *with a view to*) by *ad* w. acc. of
gerund or gerundive construction.
 - iii. after *on*, *after*, see *a* above.

8. Miscellaneous.

- (a) It is often of advantage to translate by a different voice.
- (b) **Ought, must**, and equivalent phrases are generally to
be translated by the **gerundive** with *sum*, the
Latin verb being always *passive*, and, if intransi-
tive, used impersonally. The person who *ought* to
or *must* do something will be in the **dative**. [*Debeo*,
oportet and *necesse est* w. the infin. are much rarer.]
- (c) **Can, could**, = *possum* w. pres. infin.
- (d) **As**, w. words = *aid*, *garrison*, *guard*, etc., implying the
purpose served, expressed by the **dat.**
after *the same* = *qui* or *ac*.
where *as* is repeated, by *correlatives*, e.g. as great
as, *tantus quantus*.
in phrases like 'as great as possible' by *quam* w.
superlative.
- (e) Treat clauses with **where, why, how**, etc., as in § 3. *a*.

- (f) It with the verb *to be* where the real subj. follows, and there as an introductory adverb, are not expressed in Latin.
- (g) Where a verb is compounded with a preposition (*e.g. ad, ab, ex*), this preposition cannot at the same time govern a noun.
- (h) The adjectives **more, any, enough, no, and thousand** (except *one thousand*) agreeing with a noun are expressed by the neuters *plus, quicquam, satis, nihil* and *millia* followed by the noun in the **genitive**.
- (i) Where English has a number of co-ordinate clauses, translate those which lead up to some final result, or which state previous or attendant circumstances, by participles, or if of some length by subordinate clauses. In other words *reduce* the number of verbs connected by *and, but, so, etc.* [*e.g.* He gives orders to collect a large force and to attack the camp, = *imperat ut magnis copiis coactis castra oppugnet.* They had sent ambassadors and sued for peace, but yet made war on Caesar = *cum missis legatis pacem petissent, bellum Caesari intulerunt.*

II. —LIST OF WORDS MOST COMMONLY OCCURRING IN CAESAR.

(Arranged in Order of Frequency.)

qui	magnus	legio	cognosco	equitatus
in	facio	dies	oppidum	dico
sum	non	civitas	finis	numerus
is	possum	habeo	consilium	sed
-que	quod	reliquus	legatus	per
et	neque, nec	si	proelium	flumen
ad	cum (<i>conj.</i>)	bellum	ille	do
hic	hostis	miles	eques	etiam
se	locus	mitto	mille	tantus
a, ab	castra	ne	navis	constituo
omnis	cum (<i>prep.</i>)	copia	unus	homo
e, ex	pars	causa	idem	alius
ut, uti	noster	video	quam	quis (<i>inter-</i>
atque	de	appello (<i>are</i>)	iter	<i>rog.</i>)
res	ac	venio	jubeo	summus
suus	ipse	exercitus	tempus	interficio

longus	propter	accido	revertor	magnitudo
multitudo	pugno	apud	singuli	nuntio
populus	ubi	pono	tertius	occupo
prope	circiter	quidem	timor	reduco
inter	imperium	spatium	usus	trado
arma	nullus	acies	agmen	accedo
pro	alter	aut	conor	circumvenio
proficiscor	frumentum	ita	domus	dum
existimo	periculum	quo (<i>adv.</i>)	genus	dux
relinquo	nihil	adduco	intermitto	egredior
duo	silva	post	minus	eo (<i>verb.</i>)
recipio	contineo	ratio	mons	exterus
tamen	contra	regio	paro	facultas
contendo	annus	sine	perterreo	fossa
nuntio	spes	arbitror	confirmo	frater
auxilium	utor	finitimis	efficio	ordo
obses	ibi	quantus	injuria	pax
fuga	discedo	telum	pons	potestas
multus	teneo	complures	transduco	progredior
virtus	impetus	facile	at	publicus
gero	instituo	fortuna	barbarus	reperio
cogo	conficio	impedio	communis	subsidium
eo (<i>adv.</i>)	impedimen-	princeps	consuetudo	aliquis
impero	tum	ago	deduco	confero
jam	murus	consuesco	interim	defero
animus	salus	pauci	labor	deligo
fero	tum	sustineo	sequor	frumentarius
peto	manus	demonstro	una	modus
quis (<i>indef.</i>)	provincia	duco	amicitia	polliceor
volo	adventus	munio	audio	prae-ficio <i>place</i>
ante	certus	collis	natura	praesum <i>he</i>
celeriter	consisto	conjicio	priusquam	quisquam
longe	hiberna	dimitto	subito	supero
ager	nam	tres	auctoritas	supra
capio	nox	uterque	autem	undique
coepi	opus	committo	itaque	agger
praesidium	prohibeo	concilium	medius	centurio
superior	signum	fides	posterus	cohortor
transeo	cohors	vallum	sic	latus
totus	fere	colloco	turris	obteneo
passus	intelligo	exspecto	audeo	opinio
primus	quisque	novus	celeritas	quin
convenio	pes	nuntius	defendo	nullus
accipio	vis	porta	equis	vereor
pervenio	absum	pugna	item	

APPENDIX III.

EXERCISES BASED ON BOOK V

PART I.—CHAPTER I. SIMPLIFIED AS A PRELIMINARY EXERCISE FOR BEGINNERS.

1.—Domitio et Claudio consulibus,¹ Caesar ab hibernis in Italiam discedit. Hoc quotannis facere consueverat.² Legatos legionibus³ praefecerat. His legatis⁴ imperat ut⁵ hieme naves aedificarent veteresque naves reficerent.

2.—Earum navium modum formamque demonstrat. Ad⁶ celeritatem onerandi,⁷ subductionesque facit naves humiles. Naves facit humiliores quam eas quibus⁸ in nostro mari utimur.⁹ Naves facit humiliores quod¹⁰ magnos ibi fluctus non fieri¹¹ cognoverat. Propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus¹² magni ibi fluctus fiunt. Ad⁶ onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam¹³ naves facit latas. Naves paulo latiores facit quam eas quibus⁸ in reliquis utimur⁹ maribus.

3.—Hae omnes naves actuariarum¹⁴ fiunt. Hanc¹⁵ ad rem humilitas multum adjuvat.

4.—Multa¹⁶ sunt usui¹⁷ ad armandas¹³ naves. Ea¹⁶ ex Hispania apportari jubet.

5.—Ipse conventus Galliae citerioris peragit. Ipse, conventibus¹⁸ peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur.⁹ A Pirustis finitima pars provinciae vastabatur. Provinciam incursionibus vastari¹¹ audebat.¹⁹

6.—Cum in Illyricum venisset,²⁰ civitatibus²¹ milites imperat. Milites certum in locum convenire jubet.

7.—Hac re nuntiata,¹⁸ Pirustae legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. Legati eum docent, eas res publico consilio non factas¹¹ esse. Pirustae parati sunt omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere.

8.—Percepta oratione¹⁸ legatorum Caesar obsides imperat. Caesar obsides ad²² certam diem adduci jubet. “Nisi ita feceritis,²³ bello civitatem persequar.”²⁴

9.—Obsides ad diem adducti sunt, ut²⁵ imperaverat. Arbitros inter civitates dat. Arbitros dat, qui²⁶ litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

NOTES.

1. ‘D. and C. (being) consuls’; freely, ‘in the consulship of D. and C.’ For the construction see App.5.a.x.
2. Pluperf. ‘had become accustomed’ = ‘was accustomed.’
3. Do not use ‘to’ in translating this dative; see the Vocabulary.
4. *Impero* takes a dative of the person to whom orders are given. App.3.b.
5. *Ut* and subjunctive after *impero* are to be translated by Eng. infinitive with ‘to.’ App.29.b.
6. *Ad* = ‘with a view to,’ or ‘for.’
7. The gerund = Eng. verbal noun in -ing; App.39; the genitive here to be rendered by ‘in’ not ‘of’; App.2.c.
8. Translate abl. without any preposition: *utor* takes the abl. where we might expect an object in the acc.
9. A deponent verb, passive in form, but with active force.
10. The conjunction, not the neuter relative.
11. Accus. and infin. construction; translate by a clause beginning with ‘that’; *fluctus* is subject of *feri*, which here = ‘are caused.’ App.34.a.d.
12. *Minus magni*, ‘less large’ = ‘smaller.’
13. *Ad...transportandam*, translate ‘for transporting, etc.’; the gerundive construction, App.40. So *ad armandas*.
14. Predicative adjective with *fiunt*, which here = ‘are made.’
15. *Hanc* agrees with *rem*, which here = ‘purpose.’
16. Add ‘things’ in the Eng. translation, App.8.
17. Translate the dative here by ‘of’; App.3.c.
18. The ablative absolute, App.5.a.; translate clauses in 5 and 8 as in App.5.a.i. (using ‘after’); the clause in 7 as in App.5.a.ii.
19. Translate by Eng. simple past tense; App.26.iv.
20. Translate subjunctive as you would the same tense of the indicative. App.31.
21. With *imperat* = ‘he demands,’ translate dat. by ‘from’ or ‘of’; compare note 4 above.
22. *Ad* here = ‘by.’
23. Literally, ‘you shall have done’; translate by Eng. simple present.
24. Future indicative; a deponent verb, compare note 9 above.
25. *Ut* here with indicative = ‘as.’
26. *Qui* and subjunctive of purpose, to be rendered by Eng. infinitive with ‘to,’ or more literally, ‘who are to.’ App.11.c.

PART II.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

1.—1. Caesar Brutum navibus, quas ex finitimis civitatibus convenire jusserat, praeficit, et in Venetos proficisci jubet. 2. Provinciae quam maximum potest militum numerum (*number*) imperat. 3. Eo omnes, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, conveniunt. 4. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides, diemque huic rei constituit. 5. Omnia deerant (*were lacking*), quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui.

2.—1. His rebus cognitis, legiones equitesque revocari (*to be recalled*) jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur. 2. Labieno in continenti cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit (*came*). 3. Ibi (1.2.)* cognoscit sexaginta naves eodem (*to the same point*), unde (*from which*) profectae erant, revertisse. 4. Reliquas naves paratas (1.7.) atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. 5. His deductis, quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit.

3.—1. Ex omnibus civitatibus, quae defecerant, exercitum magnasque copias coegerat. 2. Repulsi (*driven back*) ab equitatu, se in silvas abdididerunt. 3. Ab omnibus civitatibus legati veniunt, qui pacem (*peace*) et amicitiam petant. 4. Nonnulli sunt, quorum auctoritas (*influence, nom.*) apud (*with*) plebem plurimum valet. 5. Galliae totius factiones (*parties*) sunt duae; earum alterius principatum tenent (*hold*) Aedui, alterius Arverni. Hi de potentatu (*supremacy*) inter se contendebant. 6. Omnibus rebus perterriti, et celeritate (1.2) adventus nostri et discessu suorum, legatos mittunt. 7. Remi ad eum legatos mittunt qui dicerent (*dico, ere, to say*) se suaque (*and their possessions*) omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere.

4.—1. Quod Divitiaci summam (*very great*) in se voluntatem et egregiam fidem (*loyalty*) cognoverat (= *perspexerat*), verebatur (3.5.) ne animum offenderet (*he should hurt*). 2. Gravius fero, quod merito populi Romani eae res non acciderunt (*have happened.*) 3. Caesar, principibus civitatis ad se evocatis, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit (= *continuit*, 3.6.) 4. Tanta (*so great*) erat ejus auctoritas in Gallia, ut omnes gratiam atque amicitiam (3.3) peterent (3.5.) 5. Legatos mittit ad Boios qui de suo adventu (3.5.) doceant (1.7.), hortenturque ut in fide (*loyalty*) maneant.

5.—1. Ea re constituta Commiuncum equitatu custodis (*guard*) loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

* The figures indicate in what chapter and section the word *ibi*, which is not found in this chapter, has previously occurred.

2. Tanta (*so great*) tempestas coorta est (*arose*), ut naves cursum tenere non possent sed (*but*) eodem unde erant profectae rejicerentur. 3. Omnes equites, quindecim millia numero, convenire jubet.

6.—1. Nuntii (*messengers*) quos ad Caesarem miserant in conspectu militum necabantur. 2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ad ejus propinquos imperium defertur. 3. Cognoverat Dumnorigem esse magna apud (*among*) plebem (3.6.) gratia (4.4.), cupidum rerum novarum. 4. Dixit hoc esse Galliae commune consilium. 5. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem, eo consilio ut copias sine metu traduceret.

7.—1. His rebus constitutis (5.1) nactus idoneam ad navigandum (5.2.) tempestatem, equites in ulteriorem (*further*) portem (5.1.) progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi (*follow*) jussit. 2. Hoc proelio (*battle*) nuntiato, Suebi, qui ad Rhenum venerant, domum reverti coeperunt. 3. Hunc impeditum hostes circumstant. 4. Aedui cum se ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 5. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari jubet; ipse ad naves revertitur.

8.—1. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud (*with*) Ciceronem gerantur. 2. Hostes prosequi (*follow up*) non potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerunt. 3. Itaque (7.3.) re frumentaria provisa, milites nominatim evocat (4.2.) 4. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus (7.4.), paulo (*a little*) post (*after*) mediam noctem naves solvit. 5. Ex locis superioribus in litus telum (*weapon*) adigi (*be hurled*) poterat.

9.—1. His cognitis rebus (7.1.), rem frumentariam providet (8.1.), castris idoneum locum deligit (*chooses*). 2. Ventum et aestum (8.2.) uno tempore nactus secundum (*favorable*), sublatis (*from verb=raise*) ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano (*level*) litore naves constituit (*moored*). 3. Ita (*thus*) uno tempore longas (8.4.) naves aestus complebat (*fill*), et onerarias (*transports*) quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas (*storm*) afflictabat (*wreck*.) 4. Castris egregie munitis, easdem copias praesidio navibus reliquit; ipse eodem inde (5.1.) redierat (*redeo=return*) proficiscitur. 5. Praesidium cohortium duodecim pontis (*ponts=bridge*) tuendi (8.1.) causa ponit (*stations*), magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat (*strengthens*). Ei loco praesidioque Volcatium praeficit.

10.—1. Fugientes usque (*even*) ad flumen (3.4.), ubi (*where*) copiae hostium conseruerunt (9.1.), persequuntur, multosque interficiunt (7.9.) 2. Multis navibus fractis (*frango=wreck*), reliquae, funibus ancoris reliquisque armamentis (*tackle*) amissis

(*amitto* = *lose*), erant ad navigandum inutiles (*useless*). 3. Tanto (*so great*) incommodo accepto, se abdiderat.

11.—1. Obsidibus acceptis (10.5), exercitum reducit (*leads back*) ad mare, naves invenit (5.2.) refectionas. 2. Interea (*mean-while*) Commius reliquique, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et non longius (*farther than*) mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus consistunt (9.1.) 3. His quam longissime (*longe* = *far*) possent progredi (10.2.) jussis, pontem (*bridge*) reficere coepit. Celeriter (*quickly*) effecto (*efficio* = *finish*) opere, legionibusque traductis (6.5.) et loco castris idoneo delecto, reliquas copias revocavit. 4. Qui cum ad flumen venisset quod Remos a Treveris dividit, castra muniri jussit.

12.—1. Has regiones Menapii incolebant, et agros, aedificia vicosque (*villages*) habebant (*habeo* = *have*). 2. Belgae sunt orti a Germanis, Rhenumque traducti (6.5.) propter (3.6.) agri fertilitatem (*richness*) ibi consederunt (*consido* = *settle*), Gallosque, qui ea loca incoluerant, expulerunt (9.7.) 3. Neminem (*no one*) postea (8.6.) belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant (*trusted*).

13.—1. Aquitania a Garumna (*Garonne*) flumine ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter (1.9.) occasum (*noun* = *setting*) solis et septentriones. 2. Arduenna silva (3.4.) est totius Galliae (3.1.) maxima, atque a ripis (*banks*) Rheni finibusque (3.4.) Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet, millibusque amplius (*more than*) quingentis in longitudinem patet (*extends*).

14.—1. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. 2. Major pars victus (*food*, 4. *decl.*) in lacte, caseo (*cheese*) carne consistit (*consists*). 3. Pellibus utuntur (12.4.), magna corporis parte nuda (*bare*).

15.—1. Essedarios ex silvis emittebat (*kept sending*) et cum nostris equitibus confligebat. 2. Itaque (*thus*) per medios hostes percurrunt, incolumesque omnes in castra perveniunt (12.2.) 3. Cohortes quae in stationibus erant secum proficisci (11.7.) jussit. 4. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino (*altogether*) generis pugnae imperiti (*inexperienced in*, w. gen.), multis amissis, se ad castra receperunt. 5. Postero die hostes in collibus constiterunt; ipse, triduo (*three days*) intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi (*follow*) coepit.

16.—1. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Cum se inter (*among*) equites insinnaverunt (*have worked their way*), ex essedis desiliunt atque pedibus proeliantur. 2. Caesar consulto equites cedere, seque in castra recipere (15.4.) jubet. 3. Legiones se

absente (7.7.) in itinere (15.1) proelio dimicaturas intellegebat. 4. Equestribus proeliis saepe (7.8.) ex equis (*horses*) desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur. 5. His omnibus diebus, in acie (*line of battle*) dimicare non ausus, equestri proelio contendit.

17.—1. Germani, cum suos (15.2.) interfici viderent, se ex castris ejecerunt (*se ejicere=rush*). 2. Eodem tempore equitatus ad munitiones accedere (*come up*) et reliquae copiae pro (16.1.) castris sese ostendere coeperunt. 3. Ita (*so*) nostri aeriter in hostes impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque (*quickly*) procurrerunt (*rush forward*), ut facultas pila (*javelins*) conjiciendi (*throw*) non daretur. 4. Ad silvas cum Caesar pervenisset (12.2.), neque hostes interim (*meanwhile*) visus esset (8.5.), subito (*=repente*) ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt (*rush out*), et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter (*quickly*) arma (16.1.) ceperunt (*take up*), eosque in silvas repulerunt.

18.—1. Hac re cognita omnem equitatum praemisit; Labienum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. 2. Interim (*meanwhile*) nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis (7.7.) reliquos praecipites in flumen egerunt (17.3.) 3. Flumen Axonam quod est in finibus Remorum exercitum traducit (6.5.), atque ibi (12.5.) castra ponit (*pitches*). Ita (*thus*) latus (13.1) unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebatur (*protect*). 4. Cum tribus legionibus e castris profectus ad eam partem Helvetiorum pervenit (*came up*) quae nondum (*not yet*) flumen transierat; impetu facto, magnam partem eorum concidit (*cut down*); reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas (*nearest*) silvas abdiderunt (9.4.)

19.—1. Spe praedandi adducti (*led*), Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum pervenerant (12.2.) 2. Hac re cognita (18.4.) Caesar mittit equites eodem (5.2.); imperat his ut (1.1.) omnibus locis quam latissime vagentur. 3. Ubi locus silvestris aut (6.2.) palus (*marsh*) impedita spem praesidii (*protection*) offerebat (*presented*), consederat (9.1.) 4. Magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto (*take*), vastatisque omnibus eorum agris, se ad Caesarem receperunt (15.4.)

20.—1. Ab iis nationibus (*tribe*) quae trans Rhenum incolebant (14.1.) missi sunt legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturus, imperata facturos pollicerentur. 2. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni injuria militum prohibitis (*keep*), reliquae civitates legatis missis sese Caesari dedunt. 3. Civitates hortatur (6.4.) ut populi Romani fidem sequantur. 4. Senones, quae est civitas imprimis (*especially*) firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis

(6.1.), Cavarinum, ejus majores (*ancestors*) regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio (1.7.) conati sunt (*attempt; deponent*).

21.—1. Locum castris deligit (11.3.) paludibus silvisque munitum ab Avarico longe millia passuum sedecim. 2. Castris munitis, quae ad oppugnandum usui (1.4.) erant, comparare (4.1.) coepit. 3. Ei, qui longius aberant, clamoribus (*shout*) perterriti (15.4.), cum hostem intra (9.6.) munitiones esse existimarent, sese ex oppido ejecerunt. 4. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum aberat millia passuum octo. Id Belgae oppugnare coeperunt.

22.—1. Alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii (11.8.) tenebat, eruptionem facere conatus (*attempt; deponent*), magno cum detrimento in oppidum repulsus est (17.3.) 2. Castra munire instituit (3.4.), quo facilius (3.6.) repentinos hostium impetus sustineret (18.5.). 3. Bellovaci autem (16.2.) defectione Aeduorum cognita, manus (8.6.) cogere atque bellum parare (8.4.) coeperunt. 4. Tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducti sunt (*bring*), in (*among*) his, Cavarillus, qui post (17.5.) defectionem Litavicii, pedestribus (*infantry*) copiis praefuerat. 5. Caesar, quod tanti (*so great*) motus Galliae exstiterant (*arise*), cum tribus legionibus in his locis hiemare constituit.

23.—1. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace (*peace*) venerunt. His Caesar obsides imperavit, eosque in continentem adduci (4.2.) jussit, quod, propinqua (*being near*) aequinoctii die, hiemi (1.1.) navigationem subjiaciendam (*expose*) non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo (*a little*) post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt, sed onerariae (*transports*) duae eodem portus capere non potuerunt. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites, Morini, spe praedae (12.2.) adducti (3.5.), circumsteterunt (7.9.) 2. His constitutis (5.1.) rebus, tertia fere (8.5.) vigilia naves solvit, et hora (*hour*) diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit.

24.—1. Quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, latius (19.2.) sibi distribuendum exercitum putavit (= *existimavit*). 2. Praesidio (9.1.) impedimentis (*baggage; dat.*) legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat (6.5.) 3. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur (22.1.), Sabinus cum iis copiis quas a Caesare acceperat (*receive*), in fines Venellorum pervenit. 4. His praeerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii (11.8.) tenebat (*held*) earum omnium civitatum quae defecerant (3.3.), ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat (22.1.) 5. Reliquum exercitum Sabino et Cottae legatis in Morinos, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit.

25.—1. Impulsi (*impello*=*instigate*) a principibus (6.4.), ab Aeduis defeecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt (12.2.) 2. Fratres (*brothers*) Litavici, cum comprehendi jussisset, repente (17.2.) ad hostes fugerunt (10.1.) 3. Cum his, propinqui (4.2.) Indutiomari, qui defectionis (22.3.) auctores fuerant, ex civitate excesserunt (19.1.) 4. Jubet media nocte (8.2.) legionem proficisci celeriterque (20.4.) ad se venire. 5. Oppidani (*towns-people*) perterriti (8.6.), comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem (3.6.) concitatum (*stir up*) existimabant (24.6.), ad Caesarem perduxerunt (*bring*), seseque ei dederunt (21.1.)

26.—Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit (*ceased*), atque obviam (*to meet, w. dat.*) Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum (21.2.) Biturigum (*gen. plur.*) oppugnare instituerat (23.2.). Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent, arma tradi (*trado, ere, =surrender*), et obsides dari jubet. Parte jam obsidum tradita, equitatus hostium procul (17.1.) visus est (8.5.) Quem simul atque (3.3.) oppidani (*the towns-people*) conspexerunt (8.2.), arma capere coeperunt. Caesar ex castris equitatum emitti jubet, proelium equestre committit (9.3.) Eorum impetum Galli sustinere (18.5.) non potuerunt, atque multis amissis (15.2.) se ad suos receperunt (15.4.). Quibus repulsis (17.3.) rursus (8.3.) oppidani perterriti (8.6.) sese si dederunt (21.1.)

27.—Locutus est pro (*for*) his Divitiacus: Galliae totius factiones (*parties*) esse duas: harum alterius principatum (3.2.) habere Aeduos, alterius Sequanos. Hi cum inter se multos annos contenderent (3.2.), ab Sequanis Germanos arcessitos esse (13.3.) Horum circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse. Aeduos coactos esse (24.1.) Sequanis obsides dare et jurejurando civitatem obstringere (*bind*) sese neque obsides repetituros (*demand back*) neque auxilium (*assistance*) populi Romani imploraturos (7.8.) Sed pejus (*a worse result*) Sequanis quam Aeduis accidisse (23.3.), propterea quod (16.2.) Ariovistus, rex (22.1.) Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset (*settle*), tertiamque partem agri occupavisset (*seize*), et nunc de (*from*) altera (13.2.) parte tertia Sequanos decedere (*move*) juberet.

28.*—Multis de (4.1.) causis Caesar majorem Galliae motum (5.4.) exspectans (*expecting*), delectum (*levy*) habere (*hold*) instituit (23.2.) Celeriter (26.3.) confecto (2.1.) per legatos delectu, tres legiones ante (*before*) hiemem (1.1.) adductae sunt (4.2.), duplicatusque est (*double*) earum cohortium numerus, quas cum Titurio amiserat (15.1.).

* The exercises from chap. 28 to 41 are adapted from the early chapter of Bk. VI., and give the story of part of Caesar's sixth campaign.

29.—Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut (19.1.) docuimus (28.4.), ad ejus propinquos (4.2.) imperium defertur (6.2.) Illi finitimos (1.5.) Germanos sollicitare (2.4.) et pecuniam (*money*) polliceri (27.10.) non desistunt (*cease*). Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar cum undique (17.5.) bellum parari (3.4.) videret, Nervios ac Menapios adjunctis omnibus Germanis esse in armis, a Treveris Germanos crebris (12.3.) legationibus (21.1.) sollicitari, sibi de bello cogitandum esse (*must think*) putavit (12.6.)

30.—Itaque proximis (29.6.) quattuor coactis (22.1.) legionibus, de improvviso (22.1.) in fines Nerviorum contendit (9.1.), et, magno pecoris (21.2.) atque hominum numero capto, vastatisque agris, eos in deditionem (22.3.) venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. (24.1.) Postero (17.1.) die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque (*forced*) itineribus eo pervenit.

31.—Cognito ejus adventu, Acco jubet in oppida (21.2) multitudinem (27.3.) convenire. Priusquam (27.9.) id effici (19.3.) posset, adesse (29.2.) Romanos nuntiatur. (22.3.) Senones legatos deprecandi (6.2.) causa ad Caesarem mittunt. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos (*to be guarded*) tradit (*hands over*). Eodem (11.7.) Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt. Peragit (24.1.) concilium Caesar, equitesque imperat civitatibus.

32.—Erant Menapii propinqui (*close*) Eburonum finibus, perpetuis (*unbroken*) paludibus (21.2.) silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace (*peace*) ad Caesarem legatos numquam (16.4.) miserant. Caesar totius exercitus impedimenta (31.6.) ad Labienum mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis (2.4.) quinque in Menapios proficiscitur.

33.—Illi nulla (13.6.) coacta (22.1.) manu, in silvas paludesque (21.2.) confugiunt (*flee*). Caesar, partitis (*lit. = having been divided*) copiis, aedificia (12.3.) vicosque (*villages*) incendit (*burns*), magno pecoris (21.2.) atque hominum numero potitur (*gains possession of; verb depon. w. abl.*) Quibus rebus coacti, Menapii legatos ad eum pacis (*peace*) petendae causa mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis Commium cum equitatu custodis (*guard*) loco (5.4.) in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

34.—Dum haec a Caesare geruntur (22.1.), Treveri, magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri (22.1.) parabant (3.4.), jamque (25.3.) ab eo non longius (*further than*) bidui (27.8.) via (*journey*) aberant (27.9.), cum duas venisse legiones missu (27.1.) Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis (*pono = pitch*) castris, auxilia (17.5.) Germanorum expectare constituunt. Labienus, hostium cognito consilio, praesidio (11.7.) quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto,

eum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra (*against*) hostem proficiscitur et, mille passuum intermisso (15.4.) spatio, castra communit (*fortifies*.)

35.—Labienus noctu (9.2.) tribunis (28.3.) militum primisque ordinibus (30.1.) convocatis (4.3.), magno strepitu (*din*) et tumultu (*uproar*) castra moveri (*move*) jubet. His rebus hostibus timoris (33.5.) dedit suspicionem (*suspicion*). Hæc per exploratores (*scouts*) ante lucem ad hostes deferuntur (28.1.) Vix (28.1.) agmen novissimum (32.2.) processerat (*issue forth*), cum Galli iniquo (32.2.) loco proelium committunt.

36.—Tum præmissis (18.4.) paulum (19.1.) impedimentis, “Habetis” inquit (30.1), “milites, quam petistis (33.6.), facultatem (17.4.): hostem impedito (19.1.) atque iniquo (32.2.) loco tenetis (*have*).” Celeriter nostri clamore (33.6.) sublato (*raise*), pila (*spears*) in hostes immittunt (*hurl*). Illi, ubi præter (*contrary to*) spem nostros ad se ire viderunt, impetum ferre non potuerunt ac proximas silvas petierunt.

37.—Quos Labienus equitatu consecutus (*verb depon. = pursue*), magno numero interfecto compluribusque captis, paucis post (*afterwards*) diebus civitatem recepit (*regained*). Nam (34.1.) Germani, qui auxilio (*as aid*) veniebant, percepta (*hear of*) Treverorum fuga, sese domum (7.5.) receperunt. Cum his propinqui (4.2.) Indutiomari, qui defectionis (26.1.) auctores (33.2.) fuerant, ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, qui in officio (4.2.) permanerat (12.2.), principatus (3.2.) ac imperium est traditum (25.5.)

38.—Caesar, postquam (*after*) ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de (4.2.) causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod auxilia (17.5.) contra se Treveris miserant, altera ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum (*retreat*) haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum (16.2.) supra (*abore*) eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem (*bridge*) instituit (23.2.)

39.—Firmo (20.1.) in Treveris ad pontem praesidio (*guard*) relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus (22.4.) oreretur (26.1.), reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Interim fit ab Ubiis certior (37.7.): Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere (22.1.) atque iis nationibus (*tribes*), quæ sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare (*give notice*), ut auxilia (17.5.) peditatus equitatusque mittant. Ubiis imperat, ut crebros (12.3.) exploratores (*scout*) in Suebos mittant, quæque apud eos gerantur (22.1.) cognoscant.

40.—Illi imperata faciunt, et paucis diebus intermissis (15.3.) referunt (*report*): Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii (*news*) de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus copiis quas coegissent, ad extremos (*remotest*) fines se recepisse (37.5.);

silvam esse ibi infinita (12.3.) magnitudine (3.4.) ; ad ejus initium (*edge*) silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum expectare constituisse.

41.—Caesar, postquam (*after*) per Ubios exploratores (*scout*) comperit (= *cognovit*), Suebos sese in silvas recepissee (37.5.), inopiam (24.6.) frumenti veritus (*depon. verb* = *fear*), constituit non progredi longius. Reducto exercitu, partem pontis (*gen., bridge*) rescindit (*tear down*), atque praesidium cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi (S.1.) causa ponit (*station*), magnisque eum locum munitionibus (11.5.) firmat (*strengthen*). Ei loco praesidioque C. Volcatium Tullum praefecit (24.3.); ipse, cum maturescere (*ripen*) frumentum inciperet (39.3.), ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus est per Arduennam silvam.

42.*—Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar in Britanniam proficisci constituit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata (*furnish*) erant auxilia. Si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum (*wage, carry on*) deficeret (*were unsuitable*) tamen magno sibi usui fore (*would be*) arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset (*adco* = *visit*) et loca portusque cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita (*unknown*.)

43.—Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc (*to this place*) naves undique ex finitimis regionibus, et classem, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum (*with the Veneti*) bellum effecerat (*get together*), jubet convenire. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis (*adj.* = *transport*) coactis, naves longas legatis distribuit (*assign*). Decem et octo onerarias naves, quae ex eo loco millia passuum octo vento tenebantur (*detain*), equitibus distribuit. P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum magno praesidio portum tenere (*hold*) jussit.

44.—His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem (*farther*) portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. Ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas (*display*) hostium copias conspexit. Hunc ad egrediendum (*land*) nequaquam (*by no means*) idoneum locum arbitratus,—nam ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi (*hurl*) poterat,—dum (*until*) reliquae naves eo convenirent (*should assemble*), ad horam nonam in (*at*) ancoris exspectavit. Tum ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum (*favorable*), circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco

* The exercises from chap. 42 to 58 are adapted from Bk. IV., and give the story of Caesar's first expedition to Britain. All words not translated have occurred previously in the same sense in Bk. V.

progressus, aperto ac plano (*level*) litore naves constituit (*station*; *trans. abl. by 'off.'*)

45.—At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi (*land*) prohibebant. Erat summa difficultas (*difficulty*), quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi (*except*) in alto (*deep water*) constitui non poterant. Milites nostri, magno et gravi onere (*burden*) armorum oppressi (*weigh down*), simul (*at the same time*) de navibus desiliebant, et in fluctibus consistebant (*take up position*) et cum hostibus pugnabant. Illi autem ex arido (*dry land*) aut paulum in aquam progressi, audacter tela conjiciebant.

46.—Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit (*observe*), naves longas paulum removeri ab onerariis (*transport*) navibus et ad (*on*) latus apertum hostium constitui (*station*), atque inde hostes propelli jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus (*hesitate*), maxime (*chiefly*) propter altitudinem (*depth*) maris, qui (*he who*) decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, 'Desilite' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis (*from volo*) aquilam hostibus prodere (*betray*).'

47.—Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi projecit (*throw*) atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ex navi desiluerunt et hostibus appropinquarunt (*draw near*). Pugnatum est ab utrisque (*both sides*) acriter. Nostri, simul (*as soon as*) in arido (*dry land*) constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis (*follow*), in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt (*put*), neque (*but not*) prosequi poterant, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant.

48.—Hostes proelio superati, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturus quacque imperasset facturos polliciti sunt. Caesar questus (*complain*; *verb depon.*) quod bellum sine causa intulissent, obsides imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem paucis diebus sese daturus dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare (*return*) in agros jusserunt, principesque undique ad Caesarem convenire coeperunt.

49.—His rebus pace (*peace*) confirmata (*establish*), die quarto naves decem et octo, quae equites sustulerant (*take on board*), ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent (*approach*) Britanniae, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem unde erant profectae referrentur (*carry back*), aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae dejicerentur (*drive down*); quae cum ancoris jactis fluctibus complerentur, necessario in altum (*the open sea*) profectae continentem petierunt (*seek, make for*).

50.—Eadem nocte accidit ut esset luna plena (*full moon*), qui dies (*time*) aestus maximos in Oceano (*the Ocean*) efficere (*cause*) consuevit; nostrisque id erat incognitum (*unknown*). Ita uno tempore et longae naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum (*beach*) subduxerat, aestu complebantur, et onerariae (*transport*) naves, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestate afflictabantur (*toss about*).

51.—Compluribus navibus fractis (*wreck*), reliquae cum essent ad navigandum inutiles (*useless*), magna totius exercitus perturbatio (*alarm*) facta est. Neque enim (*for*) naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui.

52.—Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti sunt. Equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegebant, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate (*small size*) cognoverant, quae hoc (*for this reason*) etiam (*still*) erant angustiora (*small*), quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat. Nostris superatis (*trans. by 'if' clause*) aut reditu (*return*) interclusis (*cut off*), neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere et suos clam (*secretly*) ex agris deducere (*bring down*) coeperunt.

53.—At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen, quod obsides dare intermiserant (*neglected*), rebellionem (*renewal of war*) eos facturos suspicabatur (*suspect; depon.*) Itaque frumentum ex agris cotidie (*daily*) in castra conferebat (*gather*), et materia atque aere earum navium, quae gravissime afflictae erant, ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Summo studio milites administrabant (*work*), neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicio interposita erat (*had arisen*), cum pars hominum (*natives*) in agris remaneret, pars etiam (*also*) in castra ventitaret.

54.—Dum ea geruntur, legione ex (*in accordance with*) consuetudine una frumentandi (*get grain*) causa missa, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem (*cloud of dust*) magnum in ea parte (*direction*) videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar cohortes quae in statione erant secum in eam partem proficisci, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius (*some little distance*) a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere animadvertit. Nam nostros, dispersos (*scatter*) et in metendo (*reap*) occupatos, barbari subito adorti erant; paucis interfectis reliquos

perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant (*surround*).

55.—Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris, tempore opportunissimo (*opportune*) Caesar auxilium tulit: namque (*for*) ejus adventu hostes constiterunt (*stop*), nostri se ex timore receperunt (*recover*). Quo facto, ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium alienum (*unsuitable*) esse tempus arbitratus, in castra legiones reduxit. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent.

56.—Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudo peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

57.—Caesar nactus equites circiter triginta quos Commius, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt. Quos nostri secuti, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde (*then*) omnibus aedificiis incensis (*burn*), se in castra receperunt.

58.—Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperaverat, duplicavit (*double*), cosque in continentem adduci jussit. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae (*transport*) dnae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra (*below*) delatae sunt.

PART III.—EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

1.—1. Caesar left Italy for his winter quarters. 2. He is accustomed to put a lieutenant in charge of the legion. 3. He orders Caesar to repair the old vessel. 4. They used a lower ship. 5. On account of the tides the waves were large. 6. Having learned all these things, he held the assizes. 7. He learned that the Pirustae were laying waste the neighboring provinces. 8. The soldiers whom he had demanded were assembling. 9. When he heard that the hostages had been brought, he set out for hither Gaul. 10. Ambassadors are sent to explain that the state will make amends.

2.—1. When the ships had been launched, he visited all the winter-quarters. 2. He orders those who have charge of the army to return. 3. He pointed out what had been done. 4. Within twenty days, thirty vessels had been equipped. 5. He leaves six hundred thousand soldiers and one thousand eight hundred ships. 6. This passage is very convenient. 7. He could not set out for these territories because there was the greatest scarcity of ships.

3.—1. He points out that this state is strong in infantry. 2. As soon as they revolted, he began to collect an army. 3. Learning of Caesar's approach, they prepared for war. 4. They pointed out what had been done among the Remi. 5. Having collected large forces of infantry and cavalry, they revolted from the Roman people. 6. This forest extends from the centre of Gaul to the River Rhine. 7. They are afraid lest the common people, influenced by some nobles, fall away and revolt from Caesar. 8. We were unwilling to desert Caesar, fearing that we could not easily keep the common people true to their allegiance. 9. The state is in your power, and if Caesar will grant permission, I will come to him, and entrust my fortunes to his protection.

4.—1. They know why he is summoned by the leading men. 2. He is annoyed at being compelled to bring hostages. 3. They thought that everything had been made ready. 4. Indutiomarus had great influence among the leading men. 5. They urged Cingetorix to spend the summer among us. 6. It is very important that he should remain faithful. 7. Although he has remained faithful, he is unfriendly to the Treveri.

5.—1. As all the ships had been driven back, he was unable to set out. 2. He had learned that the rest of the hostages had reached Gaul. 3. Leaving the cavalry, which had assembled from the whole of Gaul, he set out with four legions. 4. The ships having been driven back by storms, and being unable to keep their course, had returned.

6.—1. Seeing that all hope was lost, he begged to be put to death. 2. Several report to Caesar that Dumnorix was indignant at this. 3. Being hindered by religious scruples, he does not venture to remain in Britain. 4. Having conferred the royal power upon Dumnorix he urged the Aedui to send ambassadors. 5. In accordance with the oath they sent ambassadors to gain their request. 6. He will take across to the continent all who are desirous of a change of government. 7. Being unaccustomed to sailing they fear being taken across to Gaul.

7.—1. Having sent the cavalry to bring them back, he returned home. 2. Learning their plans, he takes care that the folly shall go no further. 3. Having followed Dumnorix, they found out all his plans. 4. Without the knowledge of Dumnorix, the Aedui had decided that their departure must be postponed. 5. Having got suitable weather the cavalry had embarked in Caesar's absence. 6. Thinking that his authority was being disregarded, he restrained Dumnorix by whatsoever means he could. 7. I am free and belong to a free state.

8.—1. Leaving two legions on the higher ground, he left the shore. 2. Having secured provisions, he set sail at sunset. 3. Large bands of the enemy had assembled to defend the shore. 4. He left in Britain the same number of legions with which he had set sail. 5. He will find out what is being done in that part of the island. 6. Although all the cavalry had hidden themselves, more than two thousand soldiers were in sight. 7. Having reached the island, they found that the enemy had left the heights the previous night. 8. He left two vessels to find out in what part of the island was the best landing place.

9.—1. After the battle had been begun, our forces caught sight of the mound which the enemy had thrown up. 2. Having followed the enemy too far, they received a few wounds. 3. Caesar left the third legion to guard the camp. 4. He ordered the soldiers to cut down the trees and throw up a mound. 5. The barbarians began to hinder our men from fortifying the camp. 6. Having encamped in a suitable place, he ordered the cavalry to find out where the enemy had hidden themselves. 7. The forces had been repulsed because they had not formed a *testudo*. 8. He found out that they had put Atrius in command of the cavalry.

10.—1. On the previous day Atrius had been sent to announce that the ships were in sight. 2. They brought word that a great storm had arisen. 3. As almost all the ships have been wrecked, great loss has been received. 4. The ships which had not been able to withstand the violence of the storm were cast ashore.

11.—1. Recalling the cavalry, Cæsar orders the legions to return to the sea. 2. He wrote to Labienus to summon workmen and repair the ships. 3. Although the rest of the ships can be repaired, yet about forty have been lost. 4. Leaving the same garrison as before, he returned to the continent. 5. Labienus, whom he had placed in charge of the legion, had ordered as many workmen as possible to be chosen. 6. It is a matter of great labor, so that the ships cannot even be drawn up

on shore. 7. After spending ten days on the continent, he set out for the states on the coast. 8. The forces, on assembling, judged it best to hand over the chief command to Cassivellaunus.

12.—1. Those who were born in the island inhabit the interior. 2. Those who inhabit the coast began to make war. 3. The cold is less severe than in the interior. 4. They had crossed over from Gaul to till the land.

13.—1. Some think that the days are very short in these islands. 2. The other island, which we found was called Ireland, lies towards the west. 3. On the other side some smaller islands lie off the coast. 4. Bringing the ship to land, they saw that this side was shorter by half.

14.—1. Those who dwelt in the coast-districts were more civilized. 2. They all have the head shaved. 3. They stain the skins, in which they are clad, a blue color. 4. They have nothing except milk and flesh.

15.—1. Driving the cavalry to the woods, they slay several. 2. They made an attack on the two legions so (*ita*) fiercely that our men were driven back. 3. Rushing out of the woods, they made an attack on our men. 4. Cæsar sent two legions to reinforce the cohort which was on guard. 5. Having burst boldly through the midst, they take up their position between the legions. 6. Two tribunes were slain while off their guard.

16.—1. Our men perceived that the enemy had leaped down from their chariots and were fighting on foot. 2. When our men left the standards, the enemy ventured to pursue them. 3. We perceived that they never fought in close order. 4. Having arranged outposts, they ventured to fight on foot. 5. This brings the same danger to those who are fighting and to those who are relieving them.

17.—1. Sending out the cavalry, they give no opportunity of either gathering together or departing. 2. When they had rallied from their flight they leaped down from their chariots. 3. Leaping down from their chariots, they suddenly made an attack on the cavalry which Cæsar had sent to pursue them. 4. When they had begun to forage, the enemy suddenly showed themselves. 5. Repelling the cavalry, they slew a large number of them.

18.—1. They observed that the river could be crossed on foot. 2. Having drawn up his forces he orders the cavalry to be sent in advance. 3. He learned that the legions had followed with such speed that the enemy had been unable to cross the river. 4. When he observed this, he ordered the forces to be drawn up.

5. Having come to the banks of the other river, which were protected by stakes, he sends forward all the cavalry.

19.—1. Having laid waste all the fields, he dismissed his forces. 2. He learned that Cæsar was marching with four legions. 3. He did not allow the legions to leave the line of march. 4. He will prevent our cavalry from laying waste the fields or doing harm to the people. 5. They learned that he had laid waste the fields and was going to send away the charioteers. 6. When he had gathered the cattle into wooded places, he allowed the soldiers to engage with the enemy's cavalry.

20.—1. He promises to protect them from wrong. 2. They ask (him) to come to that state. 3. Having demanded hostages, he promised to send them an army to protect them. 4. A young man whose father the Trinobantes had slain surrenders to him. 5. Having promised to send the corn, he demands hostages of the Trinobantes. 6. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar in Gaul to ask him to come quickly.

21.—1. After slaying a large number of the enemy, he set out for the purpose of attacking the town. 2. He learned from the Britons whom he had seized that the town was protected by a wall. 3. Another town, which is not far distant, is excellently fortified. 4. The Trinobantes, having been protected from all injury, send an embassy to Cæsar. 5. The Britons were accustomed to avoid an inroad. 6. He learns that many who have rushed out of the town have been seized.

22.—1. While the forces were being collected, messengers were sent to the regions which are near the sea. 2. He orders the kings to collect all their forces. 3. He ordered Commius the Atrebatian not to winter in Gaul. 4. Having attacked the naval camp, he decided to lead back his forces to the continent. 5. He orders his men to make a sally. 6. He perceived that the lands were being laid waste, and many losses received. 7. When they decided what to do, they forbade the soldiers to injure the leader of the Trinobantes. 8. The king who rules over Britain had decided to winter in the naval camp. 9. He understands that they have not paid the tribute to Cæsar.

23.—1. It happened that he had two ships, and that the equinox was near at hand. 2. It happened that the ships in which he had caused the army to be led back had been lost in a storm. 3. He decided to wait for the vessels which he had caused to be repaired. 4. On leading the army back to the sea, he found that the ships had been driven back. 5. As very few soldiers had been landed, he waited until (*ad*) the second watch. 6. He set

sail with all the ships, lest he should wait in vain for a calm. 7. A great calm followed, so that the ship, which had the sixty captives on board, was brought over in safety.

24.—1. He ordered the legion, of which Cicero was in command, to fortify the winter quarters. 2. Having easily enrolled five cohorts, he ordered the ships to be drawn up on shore. 3. They had been compelled to lead these legions against the Treveri. 4. Over the chief part of this state he had placed Cicero in command. 5. They think that this state is under Cæsar's sway. 6. He ordered the army to be stationed among the Eburones, until he had enrolled more cohorts. 7. The legions which he gave to Cotta to lead into winter quarters had been enrolled in the previous year. 8. After waiting until he thought the army had been distributed, he decided to send the other lieutenant to Gaul.

25.—1. Cæsar was afraid that the matter might be reported. 2. They informed Cæsar that the state had revolted. 3. He ordered the position of his ancestors, who had held the royal power, to be restored to Tasgetius. 4. Setting out with the third legion, he orders the enemies of Tasgetius to be seized. 5. They were informed that Cæsar had reached Belgium.

26.—1. They said they wished to meet Ambiorix. 2. We can by this means settle the dispute very quickly. 3. The cavalry are coming forth to attack. 4. After bringing in corn they mounted the rampart. 5. Although a sudden revolt had arisen, he wished the corn to be brought in. 6. Taking up arms, they shouted out for our men to come to the camp.

27.—1. This tribute from which you have freed us, we were accustomed to pay to Cæsar. 2. They have kept the hostages in slavery, because they cannot resist the common people. 3. They are so inexperienced as to promise to attack Cæsar's winter quarters. 4. He advised Cæsar to cross the Rhine. 5. They had trusted to be able to recover their liberty. 6. The Rhine can be crossed very easily. 7. He did this that no legions might be led out of the state. 8. He promised to come to Cæsar's aid. 9. Having led out a large band, they crossed the Rhine before the Gauls could take thought for their safety. 10. He will be present within fifty days. 11. Adopting this plan, he sends one legion to Spain, the other to the Rhine. 12. His intimate friends were accustomed to speak after this fashion. 13. He confesses that he cannot conquer the forces of the Roman people. 14. This is the cause; this is the day. 15. He promises to requite Cicero.

28.—1. They thought the matter should be reported to Cæsar. 2. What can be more shameful than to be alarmed by what the enemy have said? 3. He pointed out that the winter camp must be fortified. 4. War must be made on this humble state. 5. They think that the soldiers will act rashly and leave the state. 6. Although they do not venture to say this, they believe that the Roman people will make war on the Eburones. 7. Although they were not hard pressed, many wounds had been inflicted. 8. He thought they ought to assemble. 9. On the advice of several centurions, he pointed out that these plans should be adopted.

29.—1. If larger bands assemble, some disaster will be received. 2. If you adopt the plan of setting out for the winter quarters, you must rest your safety in speed alone. 3. If they were to kill Tasgetius, we should receive a great loss. 4. If larger forces should assemble, Gaul would not be brought under Cæsar's sway. 5. If the Rhine were near at hand there would be some opportunity for persuading them. 6. If they had rested their safety in speed, they would have reached Italy without any danger. 7. If Tasgetius was put to death, they were not present. 8. If they have combined with the Romans, we have come too late.

30.—1. They said that if anything happened, they would perish with hunger. 2. He said that if they were to perish, the rest would demand an account from Sabinus. 3. Each side wishes to prevail. 4. Sabinus is not the man to wish to terrify you. 5. "If you will allow it, Romans," said he, "they will perish by the sword."

31.—1. Cotta was persuaded by Sabinus. 2. They persuaded each that matters were in the greatest danger. 3. He persuaded them not to set out from the winter camp. 4. They could not perceive (*sentio*) what the soldiers were leaving. 5. They begged him not to go. 6. He asked (*quaero*) why they had remained. 7. They had been compelled to set out at midnight. 8. Whether we go or stay, we shall all agree.

32.—1. The enemy, having suddenly disclosed itself, began battle in a large valley. 2. Perceiving that the battle had begun, they set an ambush. 3. Learning of his approach, he stationed two thousand Romans in ambush. 4. When the battle had begun, our men had been hard pressed by the enemy.

33.—1. It generally happens that those who show no forethought are compelled to adopt a plan of that sort. 2. Although they could not leave the baggage, he ordered the cohorts to be

arranged. 3. This plan should not be adopted, because the soldiers seem to be leaving their standards. 4. After exhorting the soldiers, he ordered our men to form a circle. 5. It happened that they were more eager for battle. 6. Those who blame Cotta, think that he showed no foresight in arranging the cohorts. 7. A commander-in-chief is accustomed to arrange what is to be done by each soldier. 8. Everything seemed to be filled with shouting.

34.—1. Whatever is left, will be reserved for us. 2. As often as the Romans attack, the enemy yield. 3. In whatever direction they betook themselves, the Romans would pursue them. 4. He ordered instructions to be given not to injure anyone. 5. He observed in what direction they had betaken themselves. 6. He ordered the cohorts to hurl their weapons and not to run forward. 7. He observed that our line was equal in number.

35.—1. After returning to the place he had left, he received many wounds. 2. Whenever the enemy fled, they hurled their weapons. 3. Making an attack they surrounded those who were coming to aid the eighth cohort. 4. While they are returning, they are surrounded and slain. 5. They fought bravely; they flee quickly; this will be carefully observed. 6. Neither Cotta nor his son had been wounded. 7. Both cohorts had begun to leave their post. 8. They wish to surround the cohort which stands nearest.

36.—1. The interpreter asked to be spared. 2. They refused to send an interpreter. 3. He wishes to leave the fight. 4. He hopes to have an interview with Ambiorix. 5. I shall not go to enemies that are in arms. 6. Sending an interpreter, he answered that he did not wish to injure Ambiorix. 7. Cotta cannot be injured.

37.—1. Being ordered to do the same, he commands (*impero*) the centurions to throw away their arms. 2. Being informed of this matter, they order the eagle-bearer to be killed. 3. While the enemy were making an attack on the first rank, a large portion of the other soldiers slipped away. 4. Having reached the camp, they raised a yell. 5. He was ordered to throw away his arms and approach nearer.

38.—1. Setting out with a large part of the cavalry, he surprised the army which was wintering among the Nervii. 2. He urges the Nervii to put the lieutenant to death and to surprise the legion. 3. It is no trouble to punish the Romans for the wrongs which we have received. 4. He urged the Nervii not to let slip the opportunity of surprising the legion.

39.—1. It happened that the soldiers had been cut off by the cavalry. 2. Having collected a large band, they sent out messengers to all their allies. 3. They are confident that, by cutting off the cavalry, they will gain a victory. 4. Those who are bringing the report to the legion will be cut off by the retainers of the Eburones.

40.—1. For twenty days they had been compelled to blockade all the roads. 2. Filling up the trench, they attack the camp. 3. Great rewards have been offered if we raise the towers by night. 4. The next day a letter was sent to Cicero. 5. They bring in the timber which seems to be needed for the fortification. 6. Although they had filled the trench with incredible speed, no time is left for rest.

41.—1. The Germans have crossed the Rhine ; Cæsar's winter quarters have been attacked. 2. It is not the custom of the Roman people to send ambassadors to the enemy. 3. They hope for no protection from the Roman people. 4. Cicero may hold a conference with the leading men, if he wishes. 5. We shall set out in whatever direction we wish. 6. He said that they had obtained whatever they asked for. 7. He answers that he is unwilling to give permission. 8. My feelings towards Cæsar are such that I hope he will set out without fear.

42.—1. They are striving to surround the winter camp with towers. 2. In the previous year they could not find this out. 3. They had built a tower twenty-three feet high. 4. Having cut the sods around, they began to build a tower. 5. After finishing the fortifications they surrounded the wall with a thousand towers.

43.—1. So great a wind arose that the huts quickly caught fire. 2. The enemy did not venture to hurl stones and javelins. 3. After burning the tower, they began to withdraw from that spot. 4. So great was the number of towers that the enemy did not venture to enter. 5. He was aware that the soldiers were being hard pressed by the enemy. 6. As the fire was carried about by the wind, all the towers began to burn. 7. Not only did they bring up towers and scale the walls, but they began to burn the huts. 8. They were unwilling even to fight. 9. After putting to death all who had entered, they withdrew the cohort. 10. On the third day, being hard pressed by the enemy, they withdrew from the ramparts.

44.—1. He asks (*rogo*) Vorenus why he hesitates, or what opportunity of lending aid he is waiting for. 2. After slaying both, he returned to the legion. 3. Advancing against the

enemy, he hurls his dart at Pulio. 4. The enemy, following in a body, slay several. 5. While attempting to speak, he is surrounded and slain. 6. He thought that it could not be decided which was to be preferred. 7. As the legion was closely packed, no opportunity was given for hurling weapons. 8. "This day," he says, "will decide which is the braver." 9. The battle rages fiercely. 10. The enemy, while following too eagerly, are surrounded by the first legion. 11. The centurions were the salvation of the legion. 12. After attempting to retreat, they drew their swords and advanced without the rampart. 13. The other seems to be the bravest of all the centurions.

45, 46.—1. He persuaded the rest of the cavalry to set out and to come to him. 2. They were ordered to carry the despatch to the nearest winter quarters. 3. Crassus was sent to collect the cavalry. 4. They promised to march into the country of the Bellovaci. 5. He set out at once with two thousand horsemen in order to reach the camp without danger. 6. He wrote to Cicero to wait for the eleventh legion. 7. We are unable to flee to Gaul. 8. Cæsar is not to be persuaded. 9. He writes to the quaestor that he is to bring the legion the next day. 10. The danger was so great as to make it impossible for us to persuade the other messenger.

47, 48.—1. They fear that Cæsar is near at hand with all his forces. 2. They were informed that the enemy had been unable to withstand the attack of our men. 3. As he had left all the corn there, he put Cicero in charge of the winter camp. 4. When he learned the enemy's plans, he wrote that he would set out with the third legion. 5. It happened that they were not able to come. 6. He led all the cavalry out of the camp, that the enemy might not encamp in the country of the Nervii. 7. Although they had not been able to withstand our attack, as we have shown, yet they had not rested all hope of safety in flight. 8. When he had exhorted the soldiers not to fear the danger, he set out with all the legion. 9. When he had advanced a mile he encamped. 10. When the letters were intercepted they were brought to Cæsar.

49, 50.—1. He knew that the forces which the Gauls were awaiting had not yet assembled. 2. The cavalry, with whom the enemy had begun battle, were ordered to retire. 3. They had found out how great was the danger. 4. They tried to find out in what direction he had marched. 5. He informed Cæsar that the camp the cavalry had fortified had been contracted as much as possible. 6. He advised the scouts, whom he was

sending out, to cross the stream. 7. He advised the Gauls to hasten to the camp with all the forces that had assembled. 8. They point out how great an opportunity is afforded. 9. Thinking that the Gaul who was bearing the despatches to Cæsar had crossed the valley, they began a cavalry battle. 10. They thought that the valleys might be crossed with little danger. 11. He ordered the forces which were hastening towards the enemy, to encamp in as level a spot as possible.

51, 52.—1. If they order anyone to hurl weapons, we shall lead across the cavalry. 2. Anyone may approach. 3. Having slain a large number, they reach the camp without any danger. 4. Some hurl weapons, others block up the gates. 5. Some of our men were slain. 6. He praises the valor of each centurion. 7. We do not wish to cross over to them. 8. They think no one can resist them. 9. He ordered the centurion himself to approach. 10. The soldiers console themselves. 11. They learned that he had reached the legion that day. 12. He orders the cavalry to set out with him. 13. He points out that he fears to make a sally.

53, 54.—1. At midnight a shout was raised at the camp. 2. He ordered them to come to him at once. 3. He led the legion back to camp. 4. He remained in Gaul for three days. 5. They attempted to hurl their darts at our men. 6. He set out with the thirteenth legion for Gaul in the next winter. 7. He tried to find out in what direction they had been sent out by Sabinus. 8. He was informed of their departure by messengers. 9. He asked for what reason they had come by night. 10. He brought (*fero*) aid for the legion. 11. The time was suitable (*idoneus*) for attacking. 12. They were about three miles from that place. 13. They are strong (*valeo*) in cavalry. 14. He had fled from the camp. 15. His brother was (a man) of great valor. 16. He had come with incredible speed. 17. Several of the leading men had been put to death. 18. He will lead his forces against the Treveri. 19. On the next night he led the legions back into the camp. 20. He had found out about the change. 21. This had happened on the march.

55, 56.—1. Having sent ambassadors and promised money, they persuaded the Germans to prepare for war. 2. They collect their forces for the purpose of crossing the Rhine. 3. Perceiving that forces were wanting, they began to collect an army. 4. After killing all the leading men, they had begun to lay waste the lands of the enemy. 5. Coming to the camp, he pointed out what he wished done. 6. No opportunity had been given of

assembling. 7. Promising to send ambassadors to Cæsar, he advances across the Rhine. 8. Those promising to follow his allegiance are given the opportunity of departing. 9. Being unable to cross the Rhine, they began to attack the camp. 10. Advancing from their own territories, they began to lay waste the neighboring states. 11. Summoning cavalry from all the states, he set out for the Rhine. 12. On reaching the Rhine, he called a council of the leading men. 13. Time is lacking for finishing these matters.

57, 58.—1. The opportunity ought not to be lost. 2. Whenever they approached the gate our men would hurl their weapons. 3. He could not put the enemy to flight. 4. Labienus should have no fear. 5. Messengers should have been sent and cavalry summoned. 6. He said that all the forces must disband. 7. He answers that the cavalry may return to Ganl. 8. They had to return. 9. He had been informed that they would put to death all the Romans they caught. 10. Labienus ought to have sent out all the cavalry. 11. He might have escaped. 12. This cannot be done. 13. They would not approach.



APPENDIX IV.

CONTINUOUS EXERCISES BASED ON BOOKS V. AND VI.

PART I.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

1.—Posteaquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas esse et ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab exploratoribus cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in finibus Remorum, transire maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit : castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum muniri jubet.

altitudo *height.*

mature *hasten.*

pars *side.*

pons *bridge.*

2.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis qui de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit : nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse. Eo media nocte Caesar duas cohortes subsidio oppidanis mittit ; quorum adventu hostes discesserunt.

diu *long.*

finis *end.*

nisi *unless.*

oppidanus *townsman.*

3.—Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit, et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset.

Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit.

commeatus....	<i>supplies.</i>	promoveo...	<i>move forward.</i>
intercludo.....	<i>cut off.</i>	sub.	<i>at the foot of.</i>
mons	<i>mountain.</i>	ultra	<i>beyond.</i>
praeter	<i>past.</i>		

4.—Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sescentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Eo circiter hominum sedecim millia cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Caesar, munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

commeatus....	<i>supplies.</i>	prohibeo.....	<i>keep.</i>
diu....	<i>long.</i>	triplex	<i>triple.</i>

5.—Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus, in posterum diem oppugnationem differt, et, quod pons in flumine Ligere erat, veritus ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerim traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

Cenabenses.	<i>the people of Cenabum.</i>	excubo	<i>keep watch.</i>
differo	<i>postpone.</i>	intromitto...	<i>send in.</i>
diripio	<i>sack.</i>	potior(w.abl.)	<i>gain possession of.</i>
excludo.....	<i>prevent.</i>	silentio	<i>silently.</i>

6.—Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant, hortenturque ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis, ad Boios proficiscitur. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, oppugnare instituit, idque biduo circumvallavit, tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, jumenta produci, quingentos obsides dari jubet. Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit.

animus.	<i>spirit.</i>	confero . . .	<i>collect.</i>
circumvallo . .	<i>invest.</i>	fides	<i>allegiance.</i>
commeatus...	<i>supplies.</i>	supporto	<i>bring up.</i>

7.—Celeriter coacto exercitu Vercingetorix Lucterium, summum hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Ejus adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittant subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur, legatque nostris renuntiant se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse.

audacia . . . *boldness.*

perfidia *treachery.*

de *in accordance with.* renuntio *report.*

8.—Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari jubet. Parte jam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma jumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt.

antecedo . . . *go before.*

ignosco *forgive.*

claudio . . . *close.*

intromitto . . . *send in.*

compleo . . . *man.*

obviam (w. dat.) *to meet.*

confero . . . *collect.*

oppidanus . . . *townsman.*

conquiro . . *collect.*

positus *situated.*

9.—Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit. Hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

ago *hold.*

praepono *put in command.*

incolo . . . *live.*

restituo *renew.*

postulo . . *require.*

tergum verto . . . *turn the back, i.e. take to flight.*

10.—Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est ascensum facilem esse. Tertia vigilia T. Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus summum jugum montis ascendere jubet. Ipse quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, Considius, quem cum exploratoribus praemiseraat, ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri.

accurro	<i>run up.</i>	qualis	<i>of what sort.</i>
jugum	<i>summit, ridge.</i>	renuntio . . .	<i>report.</i>
mons	<i>mountain.</i>	sub	<i>at the foot of.</i>
occupo	<i>seize.</i>	teneo	<i>hold.</i>

11.—Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse.

abstineo	<i>refrain.</i>	pro viso	<i>as seen.</i>
denique	<i>at length.</i>	prope	<i>near.</i>
multo die	<i>late in the day.</i>	subduco	<i>lead off.</i>

12.—Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, cum quisque domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequenti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt.

concido*slay.*

13.—Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab

defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum aetis aggere jacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt.

ago.....	<i>bring up.</i>	opus.....	<i>siege work.</i>
ex itinere...	<i>on the march, (i.e. offhand).</i>	recipio....	<i>recover.</i>
expugno...	<i>take.</i>	vacuus....	<i>empty.</i>
jacio	<i>throw up.</i>	vineae....	<i>siege-shed.</i>

14.—Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Quo proelio sublatis, Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat; ita dies circiter quindecim fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis millibus interesset.

alienus....	<i>unfavorable.</i>	quini	<i>five (each).</i>
intersum ...	<i>be between.</i>	seni.....	<i>six (each).</i>

15.—Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplementum, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cujus adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam, atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit, nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

influo.....	<i>drain into.</i>	scientia.....	<i>knowledge.</i>
magnopere..	<i>greatly.</i>	supplementum.	<i>reinforcements.</i>
nuper.....	<i>late.</i>		

16.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggredierentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt,

Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

aggredior.....	<i>attack.</i>	expecto.....	<i>wait to see.</i>
castellum... ..	<i>fort.</i>	interscindo....	<i>destroy.</i>
commeatus	<i>supplies.</i>	minus	<i>not.</i>
expugno	<i>take by storm.</i>	neutri.....	<i>neither side.</i>

17.—Fugato omni equitatu Vercingetorix copias, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit, protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi jussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsī, adhortatus ad laborem milites, circumvallare instituit.

circumvallo ...	<i>invest.</i>	pello	<i>defeat.</i>
fugo.....	<i>put to flight.</i>	perspicio.....	<i>examine.</i>
patior.....	<i>allow.</i>	quantum.....	<i>as far as.</i>

18.—Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur: cujus collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subleebant. Ante id oppidum planicies circiter millia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interjecto spatio oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant, fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant.

editus	<i>elevated.</i>	praeduco...construct	<i>in front.</i>
expugno....	<i>take.</i>	radix	<i>spur.</i>
interjicio... (in pass.)	<i>intervene</i>	sub	<i>beneath.</i>
maceria	<i>wall.</i>	sublno	<i>wash.</i>
planicies....	<i>plain.</i>		

19.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare; conjurandi has esse causas: primum quod vererentur, ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur;

deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, qui populi Romani exercitum hiemare et inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Q. Pedium legatum misit.

commoveo.....	<i>disturb.</i>	item.....	<i>also.</i>
conjuro.....	<i>conspire.</i>	moleste fero..	<i>be annoyed.</i>
deinde.....	<i>then.</i>	sollicito.....	<i>instigate.</i>
inveterasco.....	<i>become established.</i>		

20.—Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque ex parte geratur, cognoscit; laborantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo maxime contendere conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium expectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. Alii tela conjiciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis invicem integri succedunt.

convenit....	<i>it is fitting.</i>	occurro.....	<i>occur.</i>
finis.....	<i>end.</i>	perfringo....	<i>break through.</i>
invicem.....	<i>in turn.</i>	subeo.....	<i>come up to the wall.</i>
laboro.....	<i>be in difficulty.</i>	utrique.....	<i>both sides.</i>
obtineo.....	<i>maintain.</i>		

21.—Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe comeant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt.

commeo.....	<i>visit.</i>	lingua.....	<i>language.</i>
continenter...	<i>continually.</i>	minime.....	<i>by no means.</i>
effemino.....	<i>weaken.</i>	pertineo....	<i>tend.</i>
humanitas...	<i>refinement.</i>	praecedo....	<i>surpass.</i>
incolo....	<i>..dwell, inhabit.</i>		

22.—Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, regni

cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur.

angustus....	<i>narrow.</i>	perfacilis....	<i>very easy.</i>
contineo....	<i>hem in.</i>	potior.....	(w. abl.) <i>gain.</i>
cupiditas....	<i>eager desire.</i>	praesto.....	<i>be superior.</i>
dives.....	<i>rich.</i>	pro	<i>in proportion to, considering.</i>
fio	<i>result.</i>	vagor.....	<i>roam about.</i>
induco.....	<i>lead.</i>		

23.—Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, quae erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceret. Caesar ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum.

animus . . .	<i>mind; (mihi est in animo = I intend.)</i>	matureo....	<i>hasten.</i>
delibero	<i>consider.</i>	rescindo ...	<i>destroy.</i>
intercedo....	<i>intervene.</i>	sumo	<i>take.</i>
maleficio....	<i>wrong-doing.</i>	ulterior....	<i>farther.</i>
		voluntas....	<i>consent.</i>

24.—Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiaverunt, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

commeatus . . .	<i>supplies.</i>	praedico.....	<i>assert.</i>
mediocriter	<i>in a slight degree.</i>		

PART II.—EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

1.—They do as they are bid, and suddenly making a sally from all the gates, give the enemy no opportunity of either learning what was being done or of rallying. The very men who had begun to have hopes of getting possession of the camp, they surrounded and cut down. Out of a number of thirty thousand men they slew more than a third, and put the panic-stricken survivors to flight, not suffering them to halt even on the higher ground. Having thus routed all the forces of the enemy, they return to the camp and their own fortifications.

2.—At the same time Fabius receives the submission of several states, demands hostages, and is informed by letter from Rebilus of what is going on among the Pictones. On the receipt of this news he sets out to bring aid to Durnatius. Dumnaeus, learning of Fabius' approach, despairs of his safety, if he is compelled at the same time to withstand the Roman army and to be afraid of the people-in-the-town (*oppidani*), and suddenly withdraws from that place with all his troops, and does not think he will be safe unless he leads his forces across the river Liger, which on account of its size had to be crossed by means of a bridge.

3.—Cæsar observing that the enemy for several days would not stir from their camp, which was protected by a marsh and the nature of the ground, and that the camp could not be assaulted without great loss, and that the place could be invested only by a larger army, sends despatches to Trebonius to summon with all possible speed the thirteenth legion, which was in winter-quarters among the Bituriges under the lieutenant Titus Sextius, and to come to him by forced marches with the three legions. He himself sends the cavalry which he had summoned from the Remi and the other states, to protect the foraging parties and to resist the sudden inroads of the enemy.

4.—Cæsar first sends Brutus with two cohorts, then C. Fabius the lieutenant with additional; finally as the fight went on desperately, he himself brings fresh troops to their support. Having defeated the enemy, he hastens to the point to which he had despatched Labienus, leading out four cohorts from the nearest fort, and ordering part of the cavalry to follow him, and part to attack the enemy in the rear. When neither ramparts nor trenches could resist the enemy's furious attack, Labienus collected all the cohorts and informed Cæsar by messengers what he thought should be done. Perceiving him approaching, and

seeing the cavalry and cohorts which he had ordered to follow him, our men began the battle.

5.—This battle over, in order to pursue the rest of the enemy's forces, he has a bridge built over the Arar and thus leads his army across. The Helvetians were dismayed by his sudden approach, when they found that what they themselves had with the greatest difficulty accomplished in twenty days, he had done in a single day, and sent envoys to him. When Cæsar demanded hostages from the enemy, Divico, the leader of the embassy, answered, "The Helvetians have been so trained (*instituto*) by their ancestors as to be accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages." Having given this answer he withdrew.

6.—The Gauls did not cease throughout the entire winter to despatch envoys across the Rhine, urge the states to take up arms and declare that a considerable portion of our forces had been destroyed. To induce the Germans to become their allies they promised to give them the best land in all Gaul, and assured them that the Romans would easily be conquered. Yet no state could be persuaded to cross the Rhine. Notwithstanding this reluctance to tempt fortune further, the Gauls began to get troops together and make preparations for the spring campaign. Hearing of these designs Cæsar proceeds at once from Italy to the seat of war and writes to Labienus to raise three thousand men and send him the two legions which had been in winter-quarters for four months.

7.—Having conquered the most warlike tribes, and perceiving that there was no longer any state to resist him, but that some were abandoning the towns to avoid his rule, he determines to send out his army in several directions. The twelfth legion under Marcus Antonius the quaestor he joins with himself; Caius Fabius, his lieutenant, he sends with fifteen cohorts to the most distant part of Gaul, hearing that certain states there were in arms, and not thinking that Rebilus who was in that neighborhood had a sufficiently strong force. Labienus is sent word to come to him, but the fifteenth legion which Labienus had been wintering with, is sent to the province to protect the colonies (*colonia*) of Roman citizens, that no disaster might befall them. He himself sets out to lay waste the country of Ambiorix.

8.—When these troops had mustered, he sets out against the Bellovaci, and establishes his camp in their country. Squadrons of cavalry are sent out to catch some people from whom he might learn the enemy's designs. These bring back word that a few were found in the houses, and these not men who had

stayed behind to till their land, but men who had been sent back as spies (*speculari*=to reconnoitre). Cæsar questions these to find where the main-body of the Bellovaci are posted, and what are their intentions, and learns that all the Bellovaci capable of bearing arms, had collected in one place, as well as the Aulerci and Atrebatæ; that the place they had chosen for their camp was in a wood surrounded by a marsh, and that all their baggage they had placed in the more distant forests.

9.—The attack lasted three hours, when the assailants fell back to their fortified camp, with seventeen warriors wounded. Champlain, although wounded, was urgent however to renew the attack; while the Hurons, crestfallen and disheartened, refused to move from their camp unless the five hundred allies, for some time expected, should appear. They waited five days in vain, beguiling the interval with frequent skirmishes, in which they were always worsted; then began hastily to retreat, carrying their wounded in the centre, while the Iroquois, sallying from their stronghold, showered arrows on their flanks and rear.—*Parkman*.

10.—Three plans were proposed: first, to remain where they were and fortify themselves; next to push overland for St. Augustine and attack the invaders in their entrenchments; and, finally, to embark and assail them by sea. The first plan would leave their ships a prey to the Spaniards; and so, too, in all likelihood, would the second, besides the uncertainties of an overland march through an unknown wilderness. By sea, the distance was short and the route explored. By a sudden blow they could capture or destroy the Spanish ships, and master the troops on shore before reinforcements could arrive, and before they had time to complete their defences.—*Parkman*.

11.—The Spaniards crossed over the Mississippi at a point above the mouth of the Arkansas. They heard of a country towards the north where maize could not grow because the vast herds of wild cattle devoured it. They penetrated so far that they entered the range of the roving prairie tribes; for one day, as they pushed their way with difficulty across great plains, they met a band of savages who dwelt in lodges of skins, subsisting on game alone, and wandering perpetually from place to place. Finding neither gold nor the South Sea, for both of which they had hoped, they returned to the banks of the Mississippi.—*Parkman*.

12.—The English army began to cross the bridge, Cressingham leading the van. That took place which Landin had fore-

seen. Wallace suffered a considerable part of the English army to pass the bridge, without offering any opposition; but when about one half were over, and the bridge was crowded with those who were following, he charged those who had crossed with his whole strength, slew a very great number, and drove the rest into the River Forth, where the greater number were drowned. The remainder of the English army who were left on the southern bank of the river, fled in great confusion, having first set fire to the wooden bridge, that the Scots might not pursue them. Cressingham was killed in the very beginning of the battle.—*Scott.*

13.—On a sudden, while the battle was obstinately maintained on both sides, an event happened which decided the victory. The servants and attendants on the Scottish camp had, as I told you, been sent behind the army to a place afterwards called the Gillies' [*Servants'*] hill. But when they saw that their masters were likely to gain the day, they rushed from their place of concealment with such weapons as they could get, that they might have their share in the victory and in the spoil. The English, seeing them come suddenly over the hill, mistook this disorderly rabble for another army coming to sustain the Scots, and, losing all heart, began to shift every man for himself.—*Scott.*

14.—As before stated, these Borders were inhabited by tribes of men, forming each a different clan, as they were called, and obeying no orders, save those which were given by their chiefs. The attachment of the clansmen to the chief was very great; indeed they paid respect to no one else. In this the Borderers agreed with the Highlanders, as also in their love of plunder, and neglect of the general laws of the country. But the Border men wore no tartan dress, and served almost always on horseback, whereas the Highlanders acted always on foot.—*Scott.*

15.—The Gauls had an unusually able leader, whom Latin historians call Brennus. He had brought a great host of Gauls to attack Clusium, a Tuscan city, and the inhabitants sent to Rome to entreat succour. Three ambassadors, brothers of the noble old family of Fabius, were sent from Rome to intercede for the Clusians. They asked Brennus what harm the men of Clusium had done the Gauls, that they thus made war on them. Brennus made answer that the injury was that the Clusians possessed land that the Gauls wanted, remarking, that it was exactly the way in which the Romans themselves treated their neighbors.—*Yonge.*

16.—Those adverse winds had done William more favor than

he guessed, for they had delayed him till Harold had been obliged to quit his post of observation in Sussex, and go to oppose the Northmen at York, and thus there was no one to interfere with the landing of the Normans. The troops were landed first, then the horses, and lastly the carpenters, who set up at once three wooden forts. After dinner William ordered all the ships to be burnt, to cut off all hope of return. He continued for several days at Guernsey, exercising the troops and viewing the country. [*Harold warned of the invasion.*] At dawn Harold and all his men were marching southward, sending a summons to the thanes and franklins of each county as he passed, to gather to the defence of the country.—*Yonge.*

17.—Arminius found among the other German chiefs many who sympathised with him in his indignation at their country's abasement, and many whom private wrongs had stung yet more deeply. There was little difficulty in collecting bold leaders for an attack on the oppressors, and little fear of the population not rising readily at those leaders' call. But to declare open war against Rome, and to encounter Varus' army in a pitched battle, would have been merely rushing upon certain destruction. Varus had three legions under him, a force which cannot be estimated at less than fourteen thousand Roman infantry. He had also eight or nine hundred Roman cavalry, and at least an equal number of horse and foot sent from the allied states.—*Creasy.*

18.—The effect of this victory was to make Germanicus resolve on retreating to the Rhine. He himself, with part of his troops, embarked in some vessels on the Ems, and returned by that river, and then by sea; but part of his forces were entrusted to a Roman general named Caecina, to lead them back by land to the Rhine. Arminius followed this division on its march, and fought several battles with it, in which he inflicted heavy loss on the Romans, captured the greater part of their baggage, and would have destroyed them completely, had not Inguomerus, a confederate German chief, insisted on assaulting the Romans in their camp, instead of waiting till they were entangled in the difficulties of the country, and assailing their columns on the march.—*Creasy.*

19.—The Armada set sail from the Tagus on the 29th of May, but near Corunna met with a tempest that drove it into port with severe loss. It was the report of the damage done to the enemy by this storm which had caused the English court to suppose that there would be no invasion that year. But, as already mentioned, the English admiral had sailed to Corunna, and

learned the real state of the case, whence he had returned with his ships to Plymouth. The orders of King Philip to the Duke de Medina Sidonia were, that he should, on entering the channel, keep near the French coast, and, if attacked by the English ships, avoid an action and steer on to Calais Roads, where the Prince of Parma's squadron was to join him.—*Creasy*.

20.—The Britons after an unsuccessful stand at the foot of the river, retired into the woods, where they had made themselves a fortress with felled trees. The weak defence was easily stormed; the Britons were flying; the Romans were preparing to follow; when messengers came to tell Cæsar that a gale had arisen again, and the fleet was lying wrecked upon the shore. The army was halted. He rode back himself to the camp, to find that forty of his vessels only were entirely ruined. The rest were injured, but not irreparably. They were hauled up within the lines of the camp. He took the best mechanics out of the legions; he sent across to Labienus for more and directed him to build fresh transports. The men worked night and day, and in little more than a week Cæsar was able to rejoin his troops and renew his march.—*Froude*.

21.—The tribes from the eastern counties made their submission, and at Cæsar's orders supplied him with corn. Cæsar marched on to St. Alban's itself, then lying in the midst of forests and marshes, where the cattle, the Cassi's only wealth, had been collected for security. St. Albans and the cattle were taken; Cassivelaunus sued for peace; the days were drawing in, and Cæsar, having no intention of wintering in Britain, considered he had done enough, and need go no further. He returned as he had come. The Kentish men had attacked the camp in his absence, but had been beaten off with heavy loss. The Romans had sallied out upon them, killed as many as they could catch, and taken one of their chiefs.—*Froude*.

22.—Sabinus, being the most exposed, had, in addition to his legion, a few cohorts lately raised in Italy. Cæsar, having no particular business to take him over the Alps, remained with Trebonius attending to general business. His disposition of troops had been carefully watched by the Gauls. Cæsar, they supposed, would go away as usual; they even believed that he had gone; and a conspiracy was formed in the north to destroy the legions. The instigator of the revolt was Indutiomarus. The Eburones, a large tribe of German race occupying the country between Liège and Cologne, had given in their submission; but their strength was still undiminished, and Indutiomarus

prevailed on their two chiefs, Ambiorix and Catuvoleus, to attack Sabinus and Cotta. If one Roman camp was taken, Indutiomarus calculated that the country would rise ; the others could be separately surrounded, and Gaul would be free.—*Froude*.

23.—As soon as it became known that two Roman generals had been cut off, the remnants of the Aduatuci and the Nervii were in arms for their own revenge. The smaller tribes along the Meuse and Sambre rose with them ; and Cicero, taken by surprise, found himself surrounded before he had a thought of danger. The Gauls, knowing that their chances depended on the capture of the second camp before assistance could arrive, flung themselves so desperately on the entrenchments that the legionaries were barely able to repel the first assault. The assailants were driven back at last, and Cicero despatched messengers to Cæsar, to give him notice of the rising.—*Froude*.

24.—He had hoped for Labienus' presence also ; but Labienus sent to say that he was surrounded by the Treveri, and dared not stir. Cæsar approved his hesitation, and with but two legions, amounting in all to only seven thousand men, he hurried forward to the Nervian frontier. Learning that Cicero was still holding out, he wrote to him in Greek, that it might be unintelligible if interrupted, to tell him that help was near. Meanwhile the besiegers learned that Cæsar was at hand, that he had but a handful of men with him. By that time their own numbers had risen to sixty thousand, and leaving Cicero, they moved off to envelop and destroy their great enemy. Cæsar knew by his spies that Cicero was no longer in immediate danger, and there was thus no occasion for him to risk a battle at a disadvantage to relieve him.—*Froude*.

25.—Thus reinforced, Cæsar, before the grass had begun to grow, took the field against the tribes which were openly disaffected. The first business was to punish the Belgians, who had attacked Cicero. He fell suddenly on the Nervii with four legions, seized their cattle, wasted their country, and carried off thousands of them to be sold into slavery. Returning to Amiens, he again called the chiefs about him, and, the Seine tribes refusing to put in an appearance, he transferred the council to Paris, and, advancing by rapid marches, he brought the Senones and Carnutes to sue for pardon. He then turned on the Treveri and their allies, who, under Ambiorix, had destroyed Sabinus.—*Froude*.

26.—It happened that after Cæsar recrossed the Rhine two thousand German horse had followed, and were then plundering

between Tongres and the river. Hearing that there was a rich booty in the camp, that Cæsar was away, and that only a small party had been left to guard it, they decided to try to take the place by a sudden stroke. Cicero, seeing no sign of an enemy, had permitted his men to disperse in foraging parties. The Germans were on them before they could recover their entrenchments, and they had to form at a distance and defend themselves as they could. The gates of the camp were open, and the enemy were actually inside before the few maniples who were left there were able to collect and resist them.—*Froude*.

27.—Some of the cohorts who were outside, and had been for a time cut off, made their way into the camp to join the defenders, and the Germans, who had come without any fixed purpose, merely for plunder, gave way and galloped off again. They left the Romans, however, still in the utmost consternation. They thought that German cavalry could not be so far from the Rhine, unless their countrymen were in force behind them. Cæsar, it was supposed, must have been surprised and destroyed, and they and every Roman in Gaul would soon share the same fate. Cæsar returned on the day which he had fixed and not unnaturally was displeased at the disregard of his orders.—*Froude*.



In indirect questions use subjunctive

Causa takes the Genitive

Gratia " " "

comprehendo ignem to take fire

Cum since with subjunctive

" when " Indicative.

pecus. oris a herd of cattle

pecus. udis ahead.

1. He is accustomed to depart for home.
2. He has three ships built.
3. He ordered the lieutenant to have two ships built.
4. They were lower ships.
5. He ordered the lieutenant to be put in command of the legions.
6. When he heard this news he departed.
7. Ambassadors were sent to explain

Adaptation requiring constant
change, progress, and maintenance
of our physical, mental, and
moral condition and their opposites

